R



RANGE ROVER VELAR

OWNER'S HANDBOOK

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Publication Part No. LRL 10 02 65 181

Introduction

ABOUT THIS HANDBOOK

Please take the time to study all of the owner literature supplied with your vehicle as soon as possible.

IMPORTANT

The information contained in this handbook covers all vehicle derivatives and optional equipment, some of which may not be fitted to your vehicle. Due to printing cycles, this handbook may include descriptions of options before they become generally available.

The vehicle options, hardware and software, are designed for the market in which the vehicle is intended for original sale. If the vehicle is to be registered or used in another geographical area, it may need modifications to suit local requirements. Jaguar Land Rover Limited is not responsible for the cost of any modifications. Warranty conditions may be affected.

The information contained in this publication was correct when it went to print. Subsequent vehicle design changes may result in a supplement being added to the literature pack. The digital handbook can be viewed at: **www.ownerinfo.landrover.com** and is updated with the latest available information.

In the interest of development, the right is reserved to change specifications, design or equipment, at any time, without notice and without incurring any obligations. This publication, or part thereof, may not be reproduced or translated without our approval. Errors and omissions excepted.

SYMBOLS USED IN THIS HANDBOOK

Safety warnings indicate either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury.

Cautions indicate either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of damage to your vehicle.

The recycling symbol identifies those items that must be disposed of safely in order to prevent unnecessary damage to the environment.

The disposal symbol identifies those items that must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from your retailer/ authorised repairer or your local authority.

The personalisation symbol identifies those features that can be adjusted, disabled, or enabled by your retailer/authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017.
All rights reserved.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEOS

Throughout this handbook are a selection of QR codes which, when scanned using a smartphone app, will connect the smartphone to relevant instructional videos.

Note: *These videos are best viewed using a high-speed internet or 4G connection.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

R

Contents

Introduction....2
Controls overview....7
Entering the vehicle....9
Exiting the vehicle....23
Front seats....30
Rear seats....35
Head restraints....38
Steering wheel....42
Seat belts....44
Child safety....49
Airbags....59
Instrument panel....66
Warning and information lamps....73
Exterior lights....82
Interior lights....89
Wipers and washers....91
Mirrors....94
Garage door opener....96
Windows....100
Storage compartments....103
Load carrying....106
Towing....113
Starting the engine....131
Auto stop/start....135
Transmission....137
Suspension....141
Brakes....149
Stability control....155
Hill descent control (HDC)....158
Speed limiter....161
Cruise control....166
Adaptive cruise control....168
All terrain progress control (ATPC)....176
Driving programs....180
4x4i....186
Driving aids....191
Touch screen - Home....202
Touch screen - Extra features..209
Touch screen - Settings....211
Media....213
AM/FM radio....221
DAB radio....224
Portable media....227
Television....238
Headphones....241
Rear seat screens....243
Climate and comfort....246
Parking features....259
Phone....273
Bluetooth®....281
Navigation....282
Voice control....296
InControl....298
Web browser....309
Connectivity....311
Fuel and refuelling....313
Maintenance....323
Vehicle cleaning....330
Fluid level checks....336
Vehicle battery....345
Fuses....350
Tyres....358
Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)....366
Tyre repair system....369
Wheel changing....374
Vehicle recovery....382
After a collision....385
Vehicle labels....387
Technical specifications....389
Service....399
Warranty....405

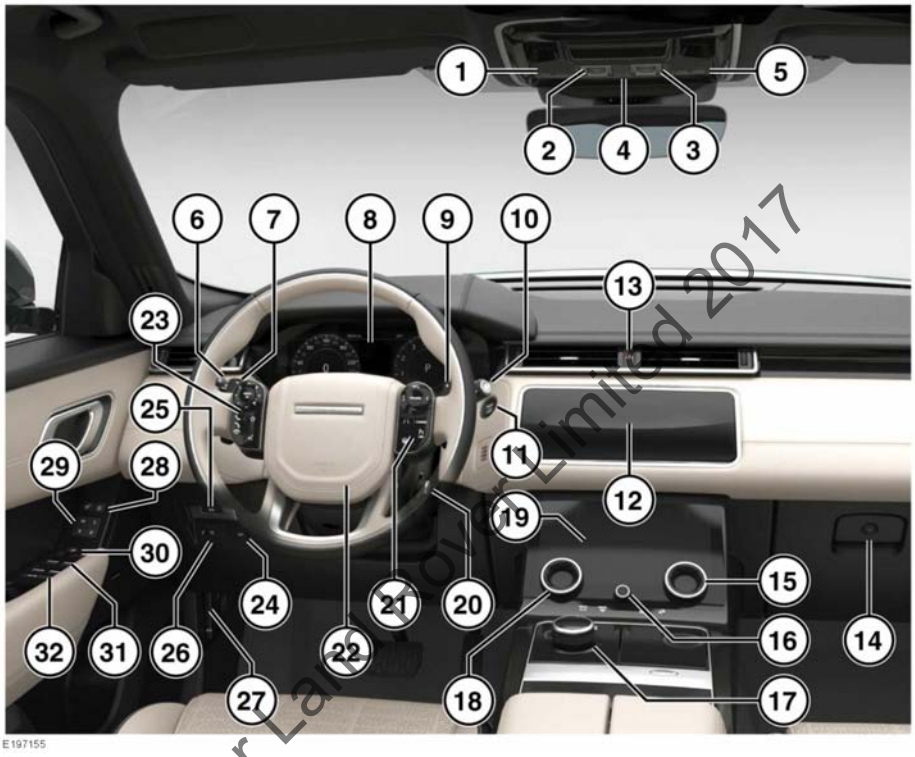
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Contents

Roadside assistance.....412
Type approval.....415
Index.....429

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

DRIVER CONTROLS



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Note: *Information in brackets refers to the page where additional information can be found.*

1. Optimised roadside assistance call (**299**).
2. Sunroof (**100**).
3. Roof blind (**100**).
4. Front interior lights (**89**).
5. SOS emergency call (**299**).
6. Exterior lights and trip computer control (**83**/**69**).
7. Paddle shift down (**137**).
8. Instrument panel (**66**).
9. Paddle shift up (**137**).
10. Wash/wipe control (**91**).
11. Engine START/STOP (**131**).
12. Touch screen (**202**).
13. Hazard warning lights.
14. Glovebox.
15. Climate controls, seat temperature and massage, terrain response operation, and advanced tow assist (**246**/**253**/**253**/**180**/**116**).
16. Audio power button and volume (**213**).

Controls overview

17. Gear selector (**137**).
18. Climate controls, seat temperature and massage, terrain response operation, and advanced tow assist (**246**/**253**/**253**/**180**/**116**).
19. Touch screen (**204**).
20. Steering column adjuster (**42**).
21. Lane departure warning, adaptive cruise control, cruise control, speed limiter, and heated steering wheel (**195**/**168**/**166**/**161**/**43**).
22. Horn.
23. Audio controls, phone, instrument panel menu, and voice control (**216**/**278**/**68**/**296**).
24. Tailgate release (**15**).
25. Electric Parking Brake (EPB) (**152**).
26. Instrument illumination: Rotate to adjust.
27. Bonnet release lever (**327**).
28. Doors lock and unlock (**26**).
29. Driver's seat position memory (**33**).
30. Mirror adjustment and power-folding mirrors (**94**).
31. Window controls (**100**).
32. Rear window isolation and child safety locks (**100**/**49**).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Entering the vehicle

⚠ **Any person fitted with an implanted medical device should make sure that the device is kept at a distance of at least 22 cm away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device. Interference may cause the implanted medical device to malfunction, causing serious injury or death. For more information on the locations of the security system transmitters, see 395, SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS.**

⚠ **To prevent accidental or unauthorised operation, never leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. The vehicle can be operated when the smart key is inside the vehicle.**

Note: *The operational range of the smart key varies considerably, depending on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.*

Note: *If any door, or the tailgate, is unlocked ten times within a short period, the latch is disabled for approximately 1 minute.*

The vehicle is supplied with two smart keys. The smart keys act as remote controls for the locking and alarm system. The smart keys allow the vehicle to be locked, unlocked, and driven without the use of a conventional key. Each smart key also has an emergency key housed behind a slide-off cover. See **12, KEYLESS ENTRY**,**24, KEYLESS LOCKING**, and **131, STARTING THE ENGINE**.

1. Lock: Press to secure the vehicle. The vehicle single locks and all handles retract to the flush position. In some markets, a second press double locks the vehicle. If power-fold mirrors are enabled, they fold in. Press and hold to activate global closing. See **23, SINGLE LOCKING**, **23, DOUBLE LOCKING**, **94, DOOR MIRRORS**, and **26, GLOBAL CLOSING**.
2. Unlock: Press briefly to unlock the vehicle and disarm the alarm. The handles deploy on unlocked doors. The hazard warning lights flash twice to indicate that the vehicle is unlocked and the alarm is disarmed. The interior lights illuminate to assist entry to the vehicle. If power-fold mirrors are enabled, they unfold. Press and hold to activate global opening. See **14, GLOBAL OPENING**.
3. Tailgate: Press briefly to release, open, or close the tailgate. If the vehicle is locked and armed, the vehicle's alarm remains active while the tailgate is open. The intrusion and inclination sensing systems are disabled until the vehicle is closed again. When closing, if the vehicle is already locked and armed, the hazard warning lights flash after a few seconds. The warning lights confirm that the alarm system is re-armed. An audible alert sounds when the vehicle is double locked. See **15, OPENING AND CLOSING THE TAILGATE**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Note: *Make sure the smart key does not remain in the vehicle before closing. The smart key may not be detected if it is placed inside a metal container, or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example, a smartphone, laptop, including when inside a laptop bag, games console, etc. Also, if the vehicle is in an area of localised Radio Frequency (RF) interference, the smart key may not be detected. If the smart key is not detected inside the vehicle, the vehicle allows locking to take place. The vehicle does not automatically unlock. The vehicle now unlocks only with another valid smart key.*

4. Panic alarm:
   - Press and hold for 3 seconds, or press three times within 3 seconds, to activate the horn and the hazard warning lights.
   - Once active for more than 5 seconds, the alarm can be cancelled. Press the button and hold for 3 seconds, or press three times within 3 seconds.
   - The panic alarm also cancels if a valid smart key is present when the **START/STOP** button is pressed.
5. Headlights:
   - When approaching the vehicle during darkness, press to switch on the headlights for approach illumination. Press again to switch approach illumination off.
   - The approach illumination preset delay period is 30 seconds. The delay period can be configured via the **Vehicle Settings** to provide illumination lasting between 0 and 120 seconds. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.
6. Emergency key access: Slide open the side cover to release, then remove.
7. Emergency key blade: Remove and unfold.
8. Keyless unlock: Press to unlock and disarm the vehicle. Door handles deploy on unlocked doors. A handle in the deployed position indicates an unlocked door.

   Note: *A handle in the retracted flush position indicates a locked door or a vehicle speed above 8 km/h (5 mph).*
9. Keyless single lock: Press the lock button on the door handle to single lock the vehicle. All door handles retract to the flush position. A handle in the retracted flush position indicates a locked door or a vehicle speed above 8 km/h (5 mph). See **23, SINGLE LOCKING**.

   Note: *A handle in the deployed position indicates an unlocked door.*
10. Keyless double lock: After single locking, press the lock button on the door handle again within 3 seconds to double lock the vehicle. See **24, KEYLESS LOCKING**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

11. Emergency door unlock: If the smart key and keyless entry fail to open the vehicle, insert the key blade into the lock barrel behind the driver's door handle. To access the lock barrel, push on the front end of the handle, which presents the rear of the handle. Pull the handle out to the deployed position to give access to the lock barrel.
    - To unlock, turn the key blade towards the front of the vehicle and release.

    Note: *The alarm sounds until the smart key's unlock button is pressed or the smart key is positioned correctly inside the vehicle. See* ***132, ENGINE START BACKUP****.*
    - To lock, turn the key blade toward the rear of the vehicle and release.

      Note: *The operation locks all of the doors, but does not arm the alarm.*

Note: *A replacement smart key can be obtained only from a retailer/authorised repairer. The retailer/authorised repairer requires proof of identification and ownership.*

Note: *Notify a retailer/authorised repairer immediately if a smart key is lost or stolen.*

SINGLE AND MULTI-POINT ENTRY

To unlock the vehicle and disarm the alarm system, press the smart key's unlock button. The vehicle unlocks in one of two ways:

1. Single-point entry: Unlocks the driver's door only. A second press is required to unlock the remaining doors and the tailgate.
2. Multi-point entry: Unlocks all of the doors and the tailgate on the first press.

To change from single- to multi-point entry, or vice versa, press the smart key's lock and unlock buttons simultaneously for 3 seconds. The hazard warning lights flash twice to confirm the change.

Single- and multi-point entry may also be set via the **Vehicle Settings** menu. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: *If an audible warning sounds when the vehicle is unlocked, there may be a fault with the alarm sensors. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.*

KEYLESS ENTRY

The key system uses RF transmissions that could interfere with implanted medical devices. Any person fitted with such a device should make sure that the device is kept at a safe distance of at least 22 cm away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device. The radio frequencies and field strengths used by the keyless entry system operate well within required medical standards for radiated emissions. In rare circumstances interference may cause an implanted medical device to malfunction.

For information concerning the location of the security system transmitters, see **15, SMART KEY SYSTEM TRANSMITTERS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Note: *The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example a smartphone laptop, including when inside a bag, or games console etc.*

Note: *Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting keyless entry, keyless locking, or push button starting.*

Note: *The smart key needs only to be on the driver's person, or in a non-metallic bag or briefcase. The smart key does not need to be exposed or handled.*

The keyless entry sensor is located on the inner surface of the door handle. Grip and pull the door handle to open the door. The vehicle unlocks, the alarm system disarms, and the hazard warning lights flash twice to confirm unlocking. If the power-fold mirrors are enabled, the mirrors fold out.

Keyless entry allows the vehicle to be opened if a smart key is within 1 m of the door handle or the tailgate button.

Note: *When single-point entry is the current security setting and a door other than the driver's door is opened first, all of the doors unlock.*

After entering the vehicle, and all of the doors are closed, a scan is made of the interior for a valid smart key. If a valid smart key is not detected, the instrument panel displays the message **Smart Key Not Found**. If this situation occurs, use a valid smart key to carry out the engine start backup procedure. See **132, ENGINE START BACKUP**.

The security system fitted to the vehicle is Thatcham category 1 approved and meets EU regulations 116.

ACTIVITY KEY

Note: *Locking preference settings are retained when locking or unlocking the vehicle using the activity key, e.g., single or multi-point entry. See **12, SINGLE AND MULTI-POINT ENTRY** and **14, GLOBAL OPENING**.*

The activity key is a security wrist strap devised to support activities, e.g., swimming, when the smart key would be obtrusive or difficult to keep secure. The activity key is waterproof to a depth of 30 m and is shockproof.

While the activity key is worn on the wrist, the smart key can remain inside the vehicle. When the activity key is activated, the vehicle locks, the alarm system arms, and any smart key remaining inside the vehicle is disabled.

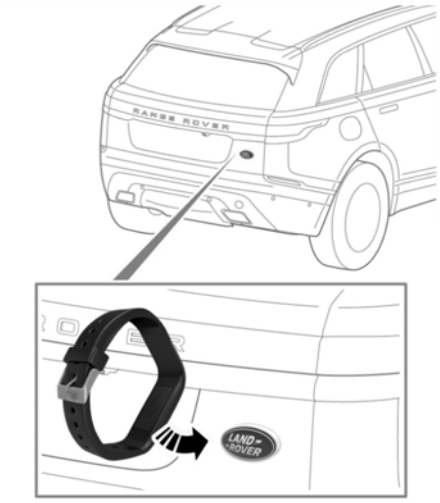
Activity key: Locking

Note: *If the tailgate of a locked vehicle is opened using the smart key, or gesture tailgate, an audible alert may sound when re-closing the tailgate. Should this occur, fully unlock the vehicle before attempting to close the tailgate.*

Note: *When the vehicle is locked with the activity key, any valid smart key remaining inside the vehicle is disabled. Any valid smart key outside the vehicle remains enabled.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Entering the vehicle



E194967

The ignition must be switched off. After exiting the vehicle and closing the last open door, the antenna for the activity key activates for 30 seconds. The antenna is located to the left of the tailgate's Land Rover badge. The user has this time to place the activity key wrist strap against to the left of the tailgate's Land Rover badge. When the security pairing is complete, the vehicle locks and arms the alarm system. The hazard warning lights flash to confirm. If power-fold mirrors are enabled, they fold in.

Note: *If a locking attempt is unsuccessful, an audible alert sounds. Check that all of the doors and the tailgate are closed, and that the ignition is switched off.*

Activity key: Unlocking

Note: *When the vehicle is unlocked with the activity key, any valid smart key inside the vehicle re-enables.*

Note: *Only the activity key initially used to lock the vehicle can re-enable a disabled smart key(s).*

When returning to the vehicle, press the tailgate release button to reactivate the antenna. The antenna activates for 30 seconds, allowing the user to place the activity key wrist strap against the left of the tailgate's Land Rover badge. When the antenna recognises the activity key, the vehicle unlocks and disarms the alarm system. The hazard warning lights flash to confirm. If the power-fold mirrors are enabled, they unfold.

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO

E203905

https://goo.gl/XEFNfC

GLOBAL OPENING

Note: *Global opening can be enabled and disabled via the* ***Vehicle Settings*** *menu. See* ***68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU****.*

To unlock the vehicle and open all of the windows simultaneously, press and hold the smart key's unlock button for 3 seconds.

To cancel global opening, press any of the buttons on the smart key.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

CONVENIENCE MODE

When the driver's door is opened using either the smart key or keyless entry, the vehicle's electrical system initiates convenience mode. The following systems become functional:

- Seat position memory.
- Seat and steering column adjustment.
- Interior and exterior lighting.
- Instrument panel.
- Auxiliary power socket.

STEERING COLUMN LOCK

The steering column lock locks and unlocks in conjunction with the vehicle's locking system. The steering column lock also locks automatically, after a time delay, when the ignition is switched off and the smart key is removed from the vehicle.

During vehicle recovery, a smart key must remain inside the vehicle so that the steering column lock remains unlocked.

If the steering column lock malfunctions, the instrument panel displays the message **Steering Column Locked**. If this occurs:

1. Lock and then unlock the vehicle using the smart key.
2. Try again to unlock the steering column lock. Turn the steering wheel gently to the left and right.

   Note: *The steering column lock malfunctions if the steering column is under load. If the vehicle is parked with the steering on full lock, the steering wheel position may inadvertently press a front tyre against a kerb, etc.*

If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

SMART KEY SYSTEM TRANSMITTERS

Keep any implanted medical device at least 22 cm away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and device. Interference may cause the implanted medical device to malfunction, potentially causing serious injury or death. More information on the locations of the security system transmitters can be found in the technical specifications section.

See **395, SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS**.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE TAILGATE

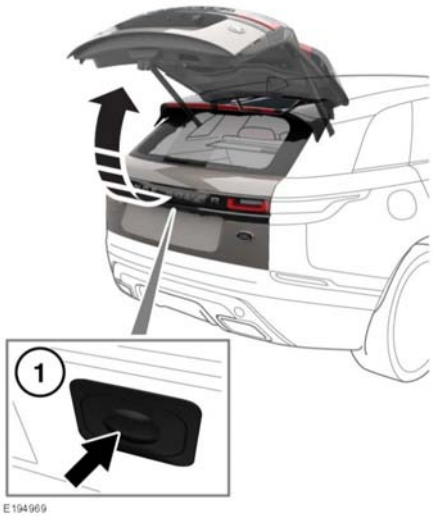
While the tailgate is open, the locking latch is exposed. Do not attempt to manually close the latch, as it may also automatically 'soft close' and trap items or body parts.

Make sure there is sufficient space above and at the rear of the vehicle, before operating the tailgate. Insufficient opening space may result in damage to the vehicle.

Do not operate the tailgate if a cycle rack is fitted to the tailgate. Remove any cycles and/or racks before operating the tailgate.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Entering the vehicle



1. External tailgate release button: Press to release and then lift the tailgate to open.

Note: *The external tailgate release button operates if all of the doors are unlocked and the gear selector is in the Park (P) position. The external tailgate release button operates differently when the gear selector is in the Neutral (N) position. In this position, operation begins only if all of the doors are unlocked and the ignition is in convenience mode or switched off. The external tailgate release button does not operate if the gear selector is in any other position.*

The tailgate can also be released using the following methods:

1. The interior tailgate release button.
2. The tailgate release button on the smart key.

Note: *The tailgate does not release if the vehicle is travelling at, or above, approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).*

Closing the tailgate: As the closing tailgate approaches the closed position, it soft-closes to the fully closed position. If the vehicle was previously locked, the alarm re-arms. The hazard warning lights flash to confirm the alarm status. An audible confirmation may also sounds.

Note: *If a valid smart key cannot be detected within 1 m of the rear of the vehicle, an audible warning sounds. The warning sound indicates a mislock and the tailgate re-opens after approximately 3 seconds.*

Note: *If the smart key remains inside the vehicle when the vehicle is locked and the alarm is set, an audible warning is given. The warning indicates a mislock and the tailgate re-opens after approximately 3 seconds. The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example a smartphone, laptop, including when inside a bag, games, console etc.*

Note: *Make sure the tailgate is fully closed before leaving the vehicle unattended. Visible and audible warnings indicate if the vehicle is locked and the alarm armed. If there are no visible or audible warnings upon closing the tailgate, the vehicle may be unprotected.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

OPENING AND CLOSING THE POWERED TAILGATE

Before operating the tailgate, make sure that anyone in the vicinity does not have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Note that the soft-close action does not incorporate object detection. Death or serious injury could occur, even with an object detection system.

While the tailgate is open, the locking latch is exposed. Do not attempt to manually close the latch, as it may also automatically soft-close and trap items or body parts.

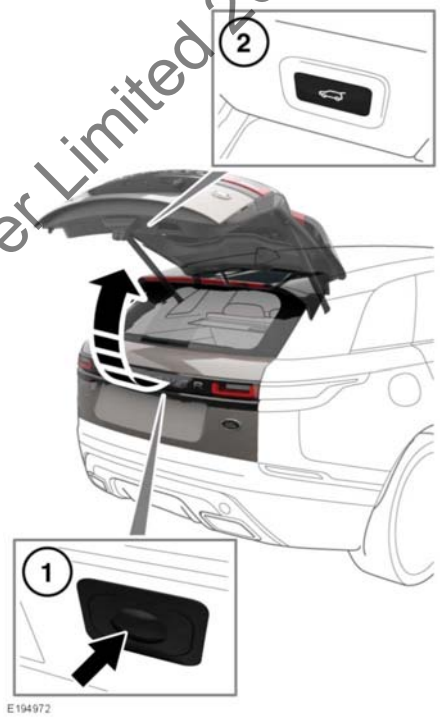
Make sure there is sufficient space above and at the rear of the vehicle before operating the tailgate. Insufficient opening space may result in damage to the vehicle.

Do not operate the tailgate if a cycle rack is fitted to the tailgate. Remove any cycles and/or racks before operating the tailgate.

Note: *If a valid smart key is not detected within 1 m of the rear of the vehicle, the tailgate does not power-close. An audible warning sounds to indicate a mislock.*

Note: *If the tailgate is closed manually, the vehicle searches for a valid smart key. If no smart key is detected within 1m of the rear of the vehicle, or a smart key remains inside the vehicle, an audible warning sounds. The warning indicates a mislock and the tailgate re-opens after approximately 3 seconds.*

Note: *If the smart key remains inside the vehicle when the vehicle is locked and the alarm is set, an audible warning sounds. The warning indicates a mislock and the tailgate re-opens after approximately 3 seconds. The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example a smartphone laptop, including when inside a bag, games, console etc.*



To operate the powered tailgate:

1. External tailgate release button: Press to open, stop, reverse direction, or close the tailgate.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Note: *The external tailgate release button operates if all of the doors are unlocked and the gear selector is in the Park (**P**) position. The external tailgate release button operates differently when the gear selector is in the Neutral (**N**) position. In this position, operation begins only if all of the doors are unlocked and the ignition is in convenience mode or switched off. The external tailgate button does not operate if the gear selector is in any other position.*

2. Internal tailgate button: Press to close or stop the tailgate.

The tailgate can also be opened or closed using the following methods:

1. The internal tailgate release button.
2. The tailgate release button on the smart key. The powered inner tailgate also operates when the smart key is used.

Note: *The tailgate does not open if the vehicle is travelling at, or above, approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).*

After the tailgate has opened to its set height, it can be manually raised or lowered. If the tailgate fails to open or close correctly, close it manually and then press the tailgate release button again.

As the closing tailgate approaches the closed position, it soft-closes to the fully closed position. If the vehicle was previously locked, the alarm re-arms. The hazard warning lights flash to confirm the alarm status. An audible confirmation may also sound.

Note: *If a tailgate release button is pressed while the tailgate is opening or closing, all movement stops. However, if a button is pressed during the soft door close stage, the request is ignored.*

Object detection while opening: If an object is detected that would interfere with the tailgate opening, tailgate movement stops. Remove any obstructions and press the tailgate release button again to open.

Object detection while closing: If an object is detected that would interfere with the tailgate closing, tailgate movement stops. The tailgate then reverses to the fully open position, if able to do so. An audible warning sounds to indicate a mislock. If the tailgate is open, remove any obstructions and press the tailgate release button again to close the tailgate. If the tailgate is not open, press the tailgate release button to open the tailgate and remove any obstructions. Once the obstructions have been removed, press the tailgate close button to close the tailgate.

Note: *If a valid smart key is not detected within 1 m of the rear of the vehicle, the tailgate does not power-close. An audible warning sounds to indicate a mislock.*

Note: *If the tailgate is closed manually, the vehicle searches for a valid smart key. If no smart key is detected within 1m of the rear of the vehicle, or a smart key remains inside the vehicle, an audible warning sounds. The warning indicates a mislock and the tailgate re-opens after approximately 3 seconds.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Note: *If the smart key remains inside the vehicle when the vehicle is locked and the alarm is set, an audible warning sounds. The warning indicates a mislock and the tailgate re-opens after approximately 3 seconds. The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example a smartphone laptop, including when inside a bag, games, console etc.*

TAILGATE OPENING HEIGHT

The maximum opening height for the tailgate can be set as required. Setting a maximum height is useful in parking areas with very low roofs, or just for ease of use.

To set the maximum opening height:

1. Open the tailgate to the position required as the maximum height. Press any tailgate release button to stop movement at the required position. The final position can be achieved manually, if required.
2. Make sure the tailgate is stationary for at least 3 seconds.
3. Press and hold the tailgate release button until a long tone from the tailgate system is heard to set the required opening height.

   Note: *The tailgate closes automatically, the required height has not been set. Repeat the process, making sure that all steps are adhered to.*
4. Press the tailgate release button to close the tailgate. Open the tailgate again to check that it opens to the required height.

Repeat the process to reset the maximum opening height. When the tailgate reaches its current programmed height, manually move it to the fully open position. Press and hold the button.

The tailgate may lose its position memory if there are multiple object detections, or if the battery voltage is low. Powered operation may also be inhibited.

To reset the tailgate:

1. Manually close the tailgate.
2. Press the tailgate release button.
3. Allow the tailgate to power fully open or to the previously set position.
4. Press and release the close button.
5. Allow the tailgate to power-close fully. The tailgate's programmed memory is restored.

GESTURE TAILGATE

Make sure that the standing area is stable and not slippery before performing the kick movement.

Do not make contact with the vehicle's exhaust. The vehicle's exhaust may be hot and can cause injury.

Make sure that there is sufficient space above and at the rear of the vehicle before operating the tailgate. Insufficient opening space may result in damage to the vehicle.

Do not operate the tailgate if a cycle rack is fitted to the tailgate. Remove any cycles and/or racks before operating the tailgate.

Note: *The gesture action is a smooth kick and return motion, not a swipe motion.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Note: *If the ignition is switched on, the tailgate operates but the direction indicators do not flash.*

Note: *A valid smart key must be within 1.2 m of the tailgate. The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example, a smartphone, laptop, including when inside a laptop bag or games console. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting hands-free operation of the powered tailgate.*

Note: *Certain conditions may affect the performance of the sensors, and movement beneath the bumper may not be detected. If this should happen, use the interior tailgate release button or the smart key's tailgate release button. Check the operation of the gesture tailgate when the vehicle is in a new location.*



Sensors are positioned within the outer parts of the rear bumper. The sensors recognise movement of a foot below the bumper level and allow automatic opening or closing of a powered tailgate.

To operate the gesture tailgate approach the vehicle and perform a smooth kick and return motion. The kick should last between 1 and 2 seconds and take place within one of the vehicle's two sensor areas, as illustrated. When a valid kick movement is recognised by the vehicle, the direction indicators flash and the tailgate operates.

Unintentional opening: In exceptional circumstances, and if the smart key is within 1.2 m of the tailgate, the powered tailgate may open unintentionally due to the following:

- Car washing or high pressure cleaning.
- Moving objects beneath the rear bumper sensors.
- While changing a rear road wheel.
- While fitting snow chains to the rear wheels.

DEPLOYABLE SIDE STEPS

The deployable side steps are set, via the touch screen, in **Extra Features**, to **On** or **Off**. See **209, EXTRA FEATURES**.

The vehicle remembers the set status and a change to the status can be made at any time. When set to **On**, and the side steps are activated, information displays on the touch screen.

The deployable side steps are full length steps that are stowed below the side sills and under the vehicle. When a door is opened, the side step on that side of the vehicle deploys. If doors on both sides are opened, both side steps deploy.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Note: *The deployable side steps do not deploy when the vehicle is travelling at more than 5 km/h (3 mph). If the side steps are already deployed, they stow automatically when the vehicle's speed exceeds 5 km/h (3 mph).*

Note: *The deployable side steps return to their previous position if an obstruction is encountered during operation. If this occurs, the touch screen displays a warning. Remove the obstruction before operating the side steps again.*

After a side step is deployed, automatic operation is activated when the following conditions occur;

- Stows 5 seconds after both doors on that side of the vehicle are closed.
- Stows immediately when a transmission drive gear is selected.

When the vehicle is unlocked from the outside, the side steps deploy if the touch screen settings status is set to **On**. Operation of the side steps on one or both sides of the vehicle is dependent on the following unlocking status;

- The smart key is set to single-point entry, on the first press of the smart key, the side step deploys on only the driver's side. A second press also deploys the passenger side step.
- The smart key is set to multi-point entry, both side steps deploy.
- Keyless entry deploys both side steps.

When the smart key or keyless entry is used to open the vehicle, and subsequently no door is opened, the side steps automatically stow after 1 minute.

The side steps can be deployed indefinitely to facilitate access to the roof, cleaning or accessing the jacking points. On the **Deployable Side Steps** screen, select **Roof access**. The side steps deploy and remain in this position until **Roof access** is deselected. The deployed position deactivates automatically, and returns to the **On** setting, if the vehicle's speed exceeds 5 km/h (3 mph), or if the vehicle's doors are locked.

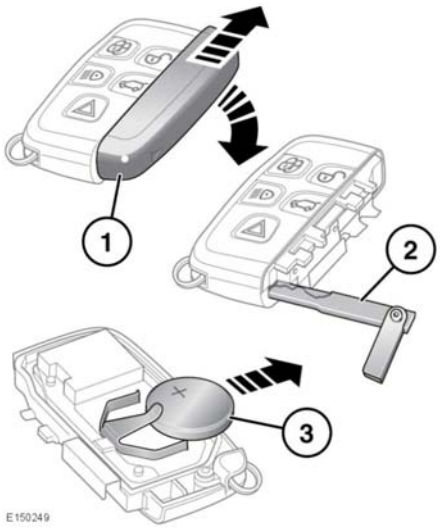
DRIVE-AWAY LOCKING

Drive-away locking automatically locks all of the doors when the vehicle reaches a set speed. The drive-away locking feature can be enabled or disabled via **Vehicle Settings** in the instrument panel menu. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: *After drive-away locking has taken place, press the unlock or lock button to override the feature for the current journey. The unlock and lock buttons are located on the inside of the front doors. See **26, DOOR LOCKS AND HANDLES**.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

SMART KEY BATTERY REPLACEMENT



When the battery needs replacing, there is a significant decrease in the effective range and the instrument panel displays **Smart Key Battery Low**.

To replace the battery:

1. Slide the cover in the directions of the arrows to remove.
2. Use the emergency key blade to separate the smart key's body.
3. Fit a new and unused CR2032 type battery, available from a retailer/ authorised repairer, with the positive (+) side upward.

Note: *Avoid touching the new battery. Moisture or oil from fingers can reduce battery life and corrode the contacts.*

Note: *If the low battery warning does not extinguish, it indicates that the replacement battery is not in a new or unused condition.*

Refit the parts in reverse order, making sure that the parts click securely into place.

Battery disposal: Batteries contain harmful substances and must be disposed of correctly. Seek advice on disposal from a retailer/authorised repairer and/ or the local authority.

SMART KEY CARE

To prevent accidental or unauthorised operation, never leave the smart key unattended in the vehicle. Never leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. The vehicle can be operated when the smart key remains inside the vehicle.

Note: *The Radio Frequency (RF) used by the smart key may be used by other devices, e.g., medical equipment. Use of these devices may prevent the smart key from operating correctly.*

Do not expose the smart key to extremes of heat, dust, or humidity. Do not allow the smart key to came into contact with fluids. Do not leave the smart key exposed to direct sunlight.

The emergency key blade number is recorded on an attached label. Peel off the label and keep it safe, but not in the vehicle.

The operational range of the smart key varies considerably, depending on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

SINGLE LOCKING

When exiting the vehicle, always make sure of the following to protect the safety of those inside and outside the vehicle. Park (P) gear is selected. The engine is switched off. The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied. The smart key is removed from the vehicle.

No modifications or additions should be made to the security system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction.

Note: *The single locking setting should be used in circumstances when pets remain in the vehicle, or if a window must be left open, etc.*

Note: *Always secure the vehicle when left unattended. Where possible, always secure the vehicle to the maximum available level of security.*

Note: *In some markets, the full alarm system, including the alarm sensors, is armed when the vehicle is single locked. The alarm sensors can be enabled and disabled, for one alarm cycle only, via the* ***Vehicle Settings*** *menu. See* ***68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU****.*

Briefly press the lock button on the smart key to lock the vehicle and arm the perimetric alarm. The hazard warning lights flash to confirm.

Before attempting to lock the vehicle always make sure of the following:

- The ignition is switched off.
- All of the doors, the windows, the bonnet, and the tailgate are closed correctly.

Single locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors from being opened from the outside. The doors may still be unlocked and opened from inside the vehicle.

Once armed, the alarm activates if:

- The bonnet, tailgate, or a door is opened.
- The engine **START/STOP** button is pressed without a valid smart key present.
- The vehicle's battery is disconnected.
- An attempt is made to disconnect the battery back-up sounder.

DOUBLE LOCKING

Never double lock the vehicle with people, children, or pets inside. In the event of an emergency, occupants would be unable to exit the vehicle and the emergency services would be unable to release them quickly.

Press the lock button on the smart key twice within 3 seconds to double lock the vehicle and arm the full alarm system. The hazard warning lights flash twice to confirm and a double lock tone sounds.

Double locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors from being unlocked or opened from inside or outside the vehicle.

Double locking provides extra security if the vehicle is left unattended. The vehicle cannot be opened by breaking a window and operating the door locks from inside. Additionally, double locking also arms the full alarm system.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Note: *In this state, an open glass area may cause the alarm to sound, due to the movement of air currents. Make sure that all glass areas are fully closed before double locking the vehicle.*

Once armed, the alarm system activates if:

- The bonnet, tailgate, or a door is opened.
- Movement is detected within the vehicle's interior, including air currents.
- The vehicle is sufficiently raised or tilted.

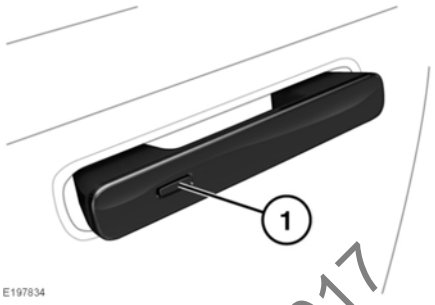
KEYLESS LOCKING

Never double lock the vehicle with people, children, or pets in the vehicle. In the event of an emergency, occupants would be unable to exit the vehicle and the emergency services would be unable to release them quickly.

The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example, a smartphone, laptop, including when inside a laptop bag, games console, etc. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting keyless entry, keyless locking, or push button starting.

Note: *Keyless locking activates only if the smart key is detected outside the vehicle. If no smart key is present, locking does not occur.*

Note: *Loose coins, in the same pocket as the smart key, may also affect its detection.*



The vehicle has deployable door handles.

1. Door lock/unlock button: Press to lock or unlock the vehicle.

Keyless unlocking: To unlock the vehicle without using the smart key, press the button on any retracted door handle to unlock.

The smart key must be in range of the door being unlocked.

The handles automatically deploy on all unlocked doors. The handle operation differs depending on single-or multi-point entry setting.

Smart key unlocking: Press the unlock button on the smart key.

The handles automatically deploy on all unlocked doors. The handle operation differs depending on single-or multi-point entry setting.

When the door handle is in the deployed position, the door is unlocked.

Keyless locking: To centrally lock the vehicle without using the smart key, press the door lock/unlock button on any deployed door handle.

The smart key must be in range of the door being locked.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

The door handle retracts to the flush position. The vehicle is centrally locked. The hazard warning lights flash once to confirm that the vehicle is locked and the perimetric alarm is armed.

To double lock the vehicle using the door handle button, press the door lock/unlock button twice within 3 seconds from any deployed door handle.

The door handle retracts to the flush position. The vehicle is double locked. The hazard warning lights flash twice to confirm that the vehicle is double locked and the perimetric alarm is armed.

Smart key locking: To centrally lock the vehicle via the smart key, press the lock button on the smart key once, without grabbing the door handle. The hazard warning lights flash once to confirm. An audible confirmation, if enabled, may also sound.

To double lock the vehicle via the smart key, press the lock button on the smart key twice within 3 seconds, without grabbing the door handle. The hazard warning lights flash twice to confirm, with a long second flash. An audible confirmation, if enabled, may also sound.

When using keyless locking, the vehicle does not lock when:

- Any door(s) is open.
- The bonnet is open.
- The tailgate is not fully closed.
- The ignition is switched on.

No audible mislock error warning sounds. The hazard warning lights do not flash and the power-fold mirrors, if enabled, do not fold in.

Make sure that the ignition is switched off, and that all of the doors, the bonnet, and the tailgate are closed properly. Lock the vehicle again. If the mislock persists, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

LOCK CONFIRMATION

Note: *If the vehicle is not already locked and armed, press the lock button once to single lock the vehicle. Press the lock button twice within 3 seconds to double lock the vehicle.*

If uncertain about the vehicle's locked and armed status, press the lock on the smart key. With keyless entry, touch an exterior door handle lock sensor. The hazard warning lights flash once to indicate and confirm the current lock status.

MISLOCK

When locking the vehicle with the smart key, a mislock can occur if:

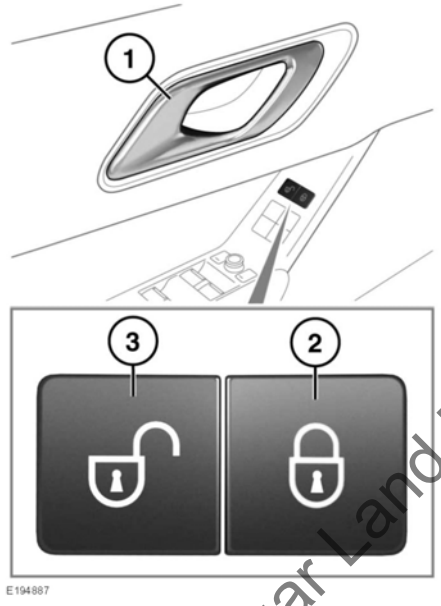
- One or more of the doors, the bonnet, or the tailgate are not fully closed.
- One or more of the doors have failed to lock.
- The ignition is switched on.

If any of the above are present, the vehicle does not lock and an audible mislock error warning sounds. The hazard warning lights do not flash and the power-fold mirrors, if enabled, do not fold in. Check that all of the doors, the windows, the bonnet, and the tailgate are closed properly. Make sure the ignition is switched off and lock the vehicle again. If the mislock persists, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Note: *Operating the interior or exterior door handles while attempting to unlock, lock, or change the child lock status may cause the security system to ignore any requests.*

DOOR LOCKS AND HANDLES



1. Door handle: Pull to unlock or release the door. Operating a door handle on either front door unlocks all of the doors.
2. Lock button: Press to lock. With all of the doors closed, press the lock button to lock all of the doors and the luggage area.
3. Unlock button: Press the unlock button to unlock all of the doors and the luggage area. Alternatively, pull either front door handle (**1**) once to unlock all of the doors.

Note: *If the vehicle is locked with the smart key, operating an interior door handle unlocks only that door. If the door is opened, the alarm sounds.*

Note: *The rear door child safety locks inhibit operation of the rear door lock and unlock buttons. See* ***49, CHILD SAFETY LOCKS****.*

AUTOMATIC RE-LOCKING AND RE-ARMING OF THE ALARM

Note: *If the alarm sensors were previously armed, the sensors are re-armed when automatic re-locking and re-arming of the alarm takes place.*

Note: *If the vehicle was previously double locked, on automatic re-locking and re-arming of the alarm, the vehicle only returns to the single locked state.*

The security system disarms automatically when the vehicle is unlocked with a smart key. However, if the vehicle is not opened within 40 seconds, the security system re-engages the locks and the alarm re-arms. Automatic re-locking and re-arming is a precautionary action to protect the vehicle when it is unintentionally unlocked.

GLOBAL CLOSING

Make sure no children, pets, or obstructions are in any open aperture before operating the global closing feature.

Note: *The global closing feature can be enabled and disabled via* ***Vehicle Settings*** *in the instrument panel menu. See* ***68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU****.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

With all of the doors closed, press and hold the smart key's lock button for 3 seconds to activate the global closing feature. The vehicle single locks and the perimetric alarm arms immediately. After 3 seconds, any open windows close.

Keyless global closing, if enabled, can be used if a valid smart key is on the driver's person, or in a non-metallic bag or briefcase. To operate, touch the door lock button for 3 seconds. The vehicle single locks and the perimetric alarm arms immediately.

Note: *The windows close only while the door lock button is being touched. To fully secure the vehicle, continue to touch the door lock button until all of the windows are fully closed.*

PASSIVE ARMING

When the passive arming feature is enabled, it automatically arms the perimetric alarm system 60 seconds after the driver's door is closed. The smart key must be outside the vehicle.

The ignition must be switched off and all of the doors, the bonnet and the tailgate must also be closed for the passive arming to function.

Passive arming does not lock the vehicle, although access to the loadspace via the interior or exterior release buttons is prevented. A locking fuel filler flap always locks.



Passive arming can be enabled or disabled by a retailer/ authorised repairer.

TILT SENSOR

When the tilt sensor is armed, it detects any change in the vehicle's angle to the ground. When the alarm is armed and the alarm sensors are activated, a significant change in the vehicle's angle activates the alarm.

Note: *The tilt sensor is an alarm sensor. The alarm sensors can be enabled and disabled, for one alarm cycle only, via the* ***Vehicle Settings*** *menu. See* ***68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU****.*

INTERIOR MOTION SENSOR

When armed, the interior motion sensor detects movement within the vehicle's interior, including air currents through open windows.

When the alarm is armed and the alarm sensors are activated, any significant movement within the passenger compartment activates the alarm.

Note: *The interior motion sensor is an alarm sensor. The alarm sensors can be enabled and disabled, for one alarm cycle only, via the* ***Vehicle Settings*** *menu. See* ***68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU****.*

BATTERY BACK-UP SOUNDER

When the security system is armed, the battery back-up sounder activates if:

- The alarm is activated.
- The vehicle's battery is disconnected.
- An attempt is made to disconnect the battery back-up sounder.

DEACTIVATING THE ALARM WHEN TRIGGERED

If the alarm activates, it can be deactivated by any one of the following methods:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

1. Press the unlock button on the smart key.
2. Open a door using keyless entry. See **12, KEYLESS ENTRY**.
3. Press the **START/STOP** button with a valid smart key in the passenger compartment. See **132, ENGINE START BACKUP**.

The cause of the last alarm activation can be displayed in the instrument panel. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

EMERGENCY LOCKING

Note: *Do not leave the emergency key blade in the vehicle at any point during the emergency locking procedure.*

In the event of a fault with the alarm and/or locking system, manually secure the vehicle. Lock all of the doors via the driver's door key barrel.

The emergency key blade is required for this procedure. See **9, UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE**.

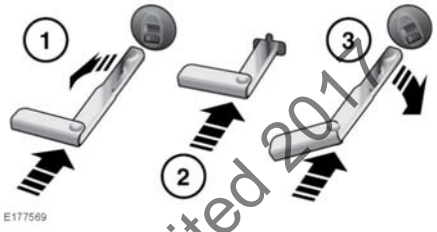
Using the emergency key:

1. Make sure all apertures are closed and insert the emergency key blade into the driver's door key barrel.
2. Turn the emergency key blade 90° clockwise.
3. All of the doors single lock and access to the loadspace is inhibited.
4. Pull the exterior door handles to check that the doors are locked. When doing so, make sure any valid smart keys are at least 2 m away from the doors.

If the issue persists, consult a retailer/ authorised repairer for rectification as soon as possible.

In the event of the battery discharging, each of the doors must be locked manually.

The emergency key blade is required for this procedure. See **9, UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE**.



Using the emergency key:

1. Open a door and locate the emergency lock's access cover on the edge of the door. The cover has an embossed lock icon. Insert the emergency key blade into the cover's slot. Rotate the cover counter-clockwise to first release it, then pull to remove it from the door. Keep the lock's access cover safe.
2. Insert the emergency key blade firmly into the emergency lock. A firm push activates the door's locking mechanism. Remove the emergency key blade.
3. Refit the emergency lock's access cover. Rotate the cover clockwise to secure it firmly.
4. Close the door and check that it is locked.

Repeat the procedure for all other unlocked doors.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

SENSOR FAULTS

If a fault is detected with a security sensor, an audible warning sounds from the alarm when the vehicle is unlocked. If this condition occurs, consult a retailer/ authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Front seats

MANUAL SEATS



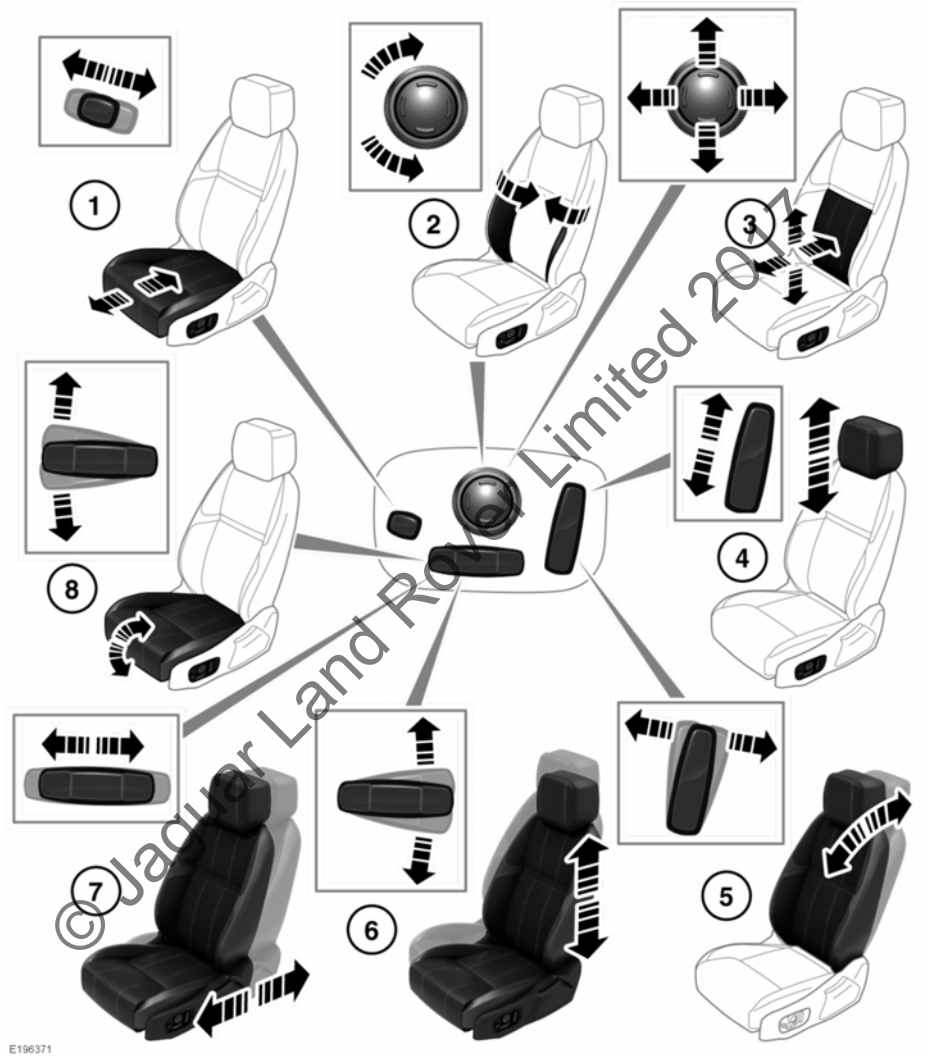
Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. Doing so could cause a loss of vehicle control.

Adjust the position of the manual front seats as follows:

1. Forward and rearward adjustment.
2. Height adjustment.
3. Seatback angle adjustment.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

ELECTRIC SEATS



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. Doing so could cause a loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

To adjust the seats, the smart key must be in the vehicle and the ignition switched on.

Front seats

Adjust the position of the electric front seats as follows:

1. Cushion length.
2. Bolster inflate and deflate.
3. Lumbar support.
   - Press the top of the button to raise the lumbar support.
   - Press the bottom of the button to lower the lumbar support.
   - Press the front of the button to inflate the lumbar support.
   - Press the rear of the button to deflate the lumbar support.
4. Head restraint height.
5. Seatback angle.
6. Seat height.
7. Forward and rearward position.
8. Cushion tilt.

The front head restraints can also be adjusted. See **39, ELECTRIC FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS**.

RESTRICTED FRONT SEAT TRAVEL

If seat movement stops unexpectedly during adjustment, check for and remove any obstructions.

If front seat travel is restricted or obstructed, remove the obstruction and reset the seat adjustment mechanism, as follows:

1. Remove the obstruction.
2. Adjust the seat to the point where movement stopped.
3. Press and hold the switch for at least 2 seconds to override the restriction.

Note: *If no obstructions can be seen, but normal adjustment cannot be carried out without stalling, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer.*

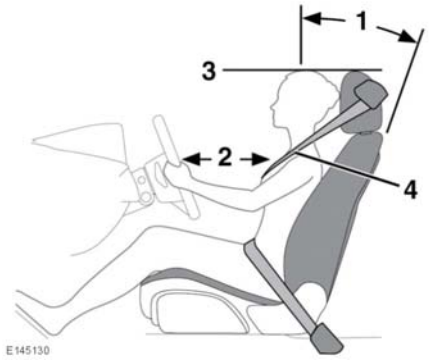
SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

Riding with a reclined seatback increases the chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. Reclining the seat greatly reduces the protection of the restraint system, i.e., the seat belts and air bags. Seat belts must be snug against the hips and chest to work properly. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance that an occupant's hips will slide under the lap belt. The occupant's neck could also strike the shoulder belt. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in the seat, be properly belted, and have the seatbacks in an upright position.

Never adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is moving. Any sudden or unexpected movement of the seat could cause a loss of vehicle control, potentially resulting in an accident.

The seat, head restraint, seat belt, and airbags all contribute to the protection of the user. Correct use of these components gives greater protection. Therefore, always observe the following points:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017



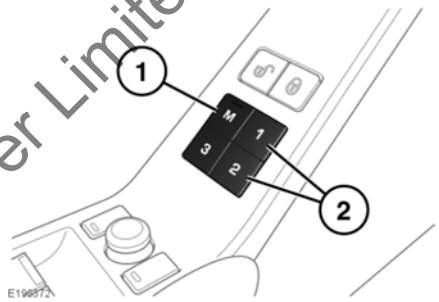
1. Sit in an upright position, with the base of the spine as far back as possible. To achieve optimum benefit of the seat belt in the event of an accident, do not recline the seat excessively.
2. Do not move the driver's seat too close to the steering wheel. Ideally, a minimum distance of 254 mm is recommended between the breastbone and the steering wheel's airbag cover. Hold the steering wheel in the correct position, with arms slightly bent.
3. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centreline of the head.
4. Position the seat belt so that it is midway between the neck and shoulder. Fit the strap tightly across the hips, not across the stomach.

Make sure that the driving position is comfortable, enabling full control of the vehicle.

SEAT POSITION MEMORY

Make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions before activating the seat memory. All occupants should be clear of moving parts to avoid personal injury.

When a preferred seating position has been reached, the settings can be stored for future use. See **42, ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL** and **94, DOOR MIRRORS**.



1. Press the memory store (**M**) button to activate the memory function.
2. Press one of the preset buttons within 5 seconds to store the current settings. The instrument panel displays the message **MEMORY** (**1**, **2** or **3**) **SETTINGS SAVED** to confirm the driver's seat position has been stored. The message is accompanied with a chime.

   Note: *A confirmation message is not displayed in the instrument panel when a front passenger's seat position is stored.*

   Note: *A seat position only stores during the 5 second active period.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

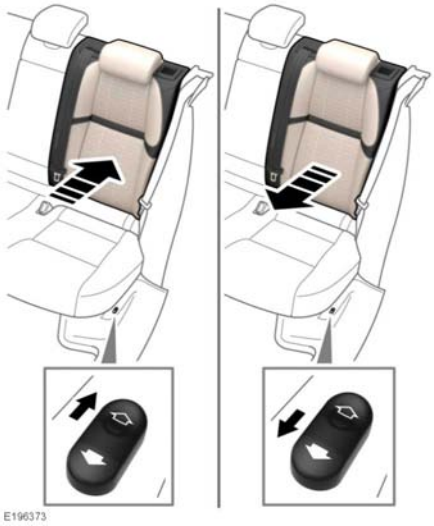
Note: *Any existing settings are over-written when storing a new memory position.*

Press the relevant preset button to recall a stored position. The instrument panel displays the message **MEMORY** (**1**, **2** or **3**) **SETTINGS RECALLED** to confirm the driver's seat position has been recalled.

Note: *A confirmation message is not displayed in the instrument panel when a front passenger's seat position is recalled.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

ADJUSTING THE SEATBACK



Press the rear of the switch to recline the seatback.

Press the front of the switch to move the seatback to the upright position.

FOLDING AND RAISING THE REAR SEATS

Always make sure that objects carried in the vehicle are secured properly. Unsecured items can cause death or serious injury in the event of an impact or sudden manoeuvre.

Never allow passengers to travel in the loadspace under any circumstances. All vehicle occupants should be seated correctly and must wear a seat belt at all times when the vehicle is in motion. Failure to do so could result in serious injury or death in the event of a collision.

Make sure the locking mechanism is fully engaged when the seatback is raised. An unsecured seatback may not properly support an occupant during a collision or sudden stop.

Make sure the seat belts are correctly routed and not trapped behind the seats when raising the rear seatbacks. An incorrectly routed seat belt may not properly restrain an occupant during a collision or sudden stop.

Make sure the head restraints are raised to the correct position before the seats are used by a passenger. The head restraint must be positioned correctly to restrain rearward movement of the head in a collision.

Always take note of the safety warnings and labels attached to the rear seats. The labels give advice on safely folding and raising the rear seats.

Before folding a rear seat, make sure that the seat is not occupied. Make sure that no other occupant has any part of the body on the seat cushion. Make sure no one reaches into the area of the seat being folded. Pay particular attention when one seat is already folded. Reaching into this area creates a risk of entrapment and serious injury.

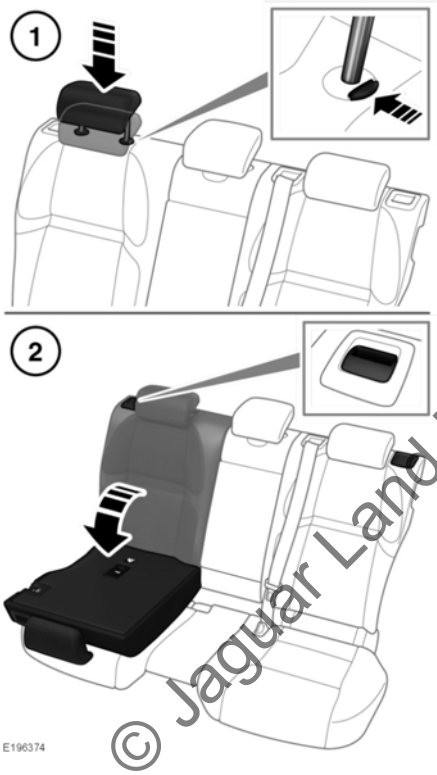
Beware of trapping fingers when raising and lowering the rear seatbacks.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Rear seats

Before folding the rear seats, make sure that all objects have been removed from the seat being folded. Failure to remove any objects may damage the seat.

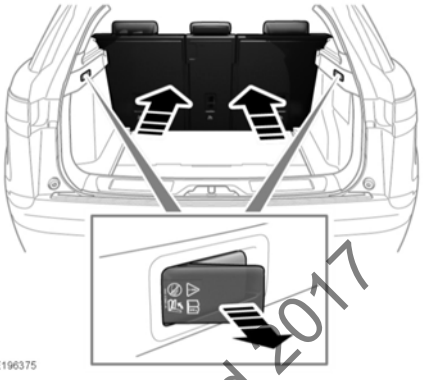
The rear seatbacks can be folded or raised individually.



To fold a rear seatback:

1. Fully lower the head restraint. See **40, REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS**.
2. Pull the seatback release catch and manually lower the seatback.

Seatback release catches are also located in the loadspace.



To lower a rear seatback from the loadspace, pull the appropriate release catch. The seatback automatically folds forward.

To return the rear seatback to the fully raised position, manually raise it into position until it locks firmly into the upright position.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Rear seats

The centre rear seatback can be released separately. Press and hold the button to release. Fold the centre seatback forward.

To raise the centre rear seatback, manually lift the seatback until it locks firmly into the upright position.

Note: *The centre rear seat belt incorporates a locking feature. The locking feature prevents the seat belt from becoming pulled in too far when the seatback is folded flat. The feature can be reset after folding the seatback and returning it to the upright position. To do this, extract the webbing until it stops, then return the webbing a small amount. The seat belt then operates as normal.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Head restraints

HEAD RESTRAINTS OVERVIEW

Head restraints are designed to support the head, not the back of the neck. The head restraint must be positioned correctly to restrain rearward movement of the head in a collision. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.

While stationary, adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centreline of the head. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.

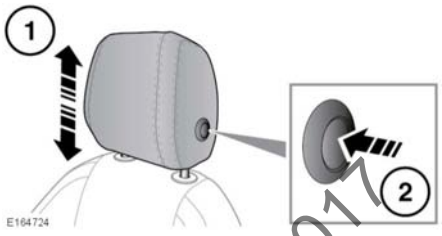
Do not drive or carry passengers with the head restraints removed from occupied seats. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.

Never adjust the head restraints while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so could cause a loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

Always store a removed head restraint securely. In the event of an accident, an unsecured object could cause serious injury or death.

Head restraints are fitted to all front and rear seats.

MANUAL FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS

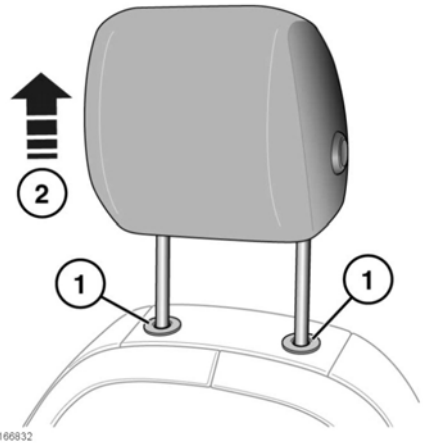


To adjust the manual front head restraints:

1. To raise the head restraint, pull it upward until it clicks and locks into position.

   Note: *Do not try to raise the head restraint further than the third adjustment position.*

2. To lower the head restraint, press the button. Simultaneously press down on the head restraint.



To remove the head restraint, first move it to the fully raised position. Then:

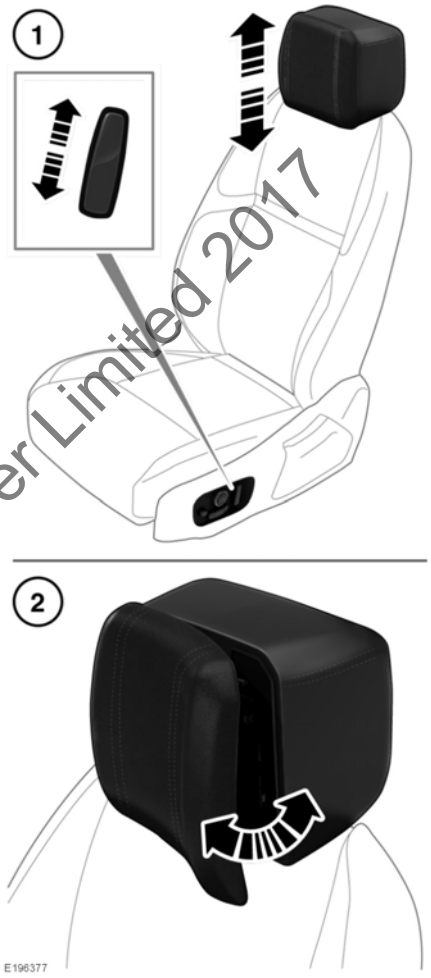
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

1. Press and hold the head restraint stem collars.
2. With the aid of a second person, lift the head restraint out of the seatback.

Always store a removed head restraint securely. In the event of an accident, an unsecured object could cause serious injury or death.

To refit a head restraint, make sure it is facing in the correct direction. Insert the stems of the head restraint into the stem collars, and push the head restraint downward until at least the first click.

ELECTRIC FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS



To adjust the electric front head restraints:

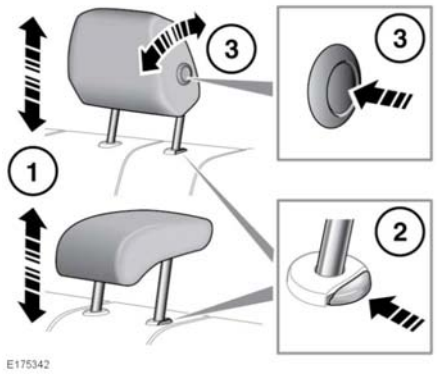
1. Use the switches on the side of the seat cushion to move the head restraint to the required position.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Head restraints

2. Move the head restraint wings manually to the required position.

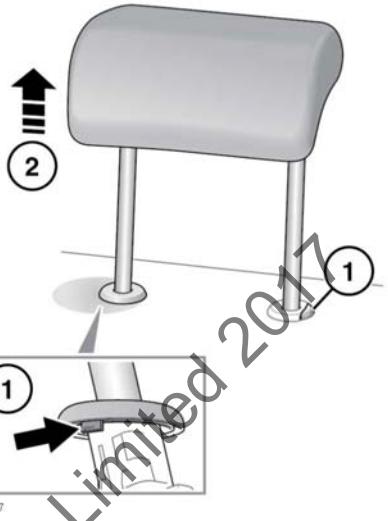
REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS



To adjust the rear head restraints:

1. To raise the head restraint, pull it upward until it clicks and locks into position.
2. To lower the head restraint, press the button on the stem collar. Simultaneously press down on the head restraint.
3. Press the button on the side of the head restraint to change the angle. Simultaneously move the head restraint to the required position.

   Note: *The rear head restraint must be in the upright position when the seat is occupied.*



The rear head restraints can be removed, if required, e.g., to fit larger child seats.

Note: *Two people are required to carry out this operation.*

To remove a head restraint, first move it to the fully raised position. Then:

1. Press the release tag*, located below the stem collar. At the same time, press the button on the other stem collar.
   *To locate the release tag, press down on the seat material in the area shaded on the illustration.
2. A second person is now required to lift out the head restraint.

Always store a removed head restraint securely. In the event of an accident, an unsecured object could cause serious injury or death.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Head restraints

To refit a head restraint, make sure it is facing in the correct direction. Insert the stems of the head restraint into the stem collars, and push the head restraint downward until at least the first click.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

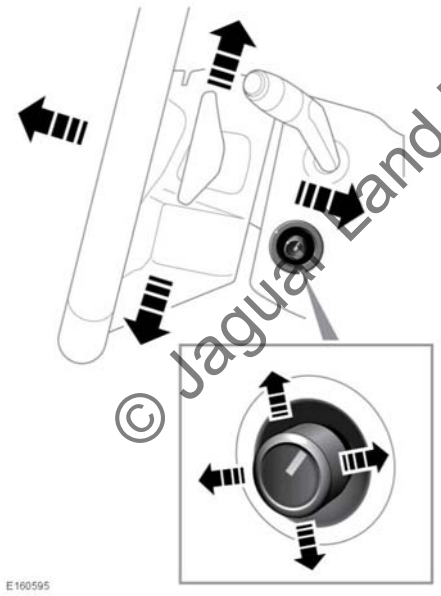
Steering wheel

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

⚠ **Never adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so may cause a loss of control, potentially resulting in an accident.**

⚠ **Do not use steering wheel mounted security devices on vehicles with electrically adjustable steering columns. Movement of the steering column in entry or exit mode could result in damage to the vehicle or possible serious injury or death to the occupant.**

Electrically adjustable steering column



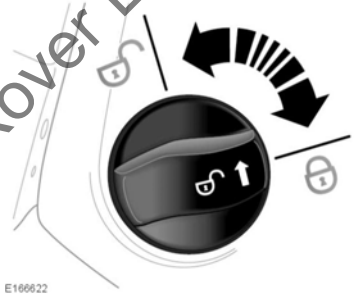
For vehicles with an electrically adjustable steering column, adjust the tilt and reach of the steering wheel as follows:

- Move the control forward or rearward to adjust the reach of the steering wheel.
- Move the control up or down to adjust the tilt of the steering wheel.

Note: *The electrically adjustable steering column continues to move until the control is released or the steering column reaches either of its minimum or maximum positions.*

Using the driving position memory feature to store and recall up to three steering wheel positions along with the seat and door mirror positions. See **33, SEAT POSITION MEMORY**.

Manually adjustable steering column



For vehicles with manually adjustable steering column, adjust the tilt and reach of the steering wheel as follows:

- To unlock the steering column, rotate the control counter-clockwise until the endstop is reached.
- Manually adjust the steering column to the desired reach and tilt positions.
- To lock the steering column, rotate the control clockwise until the endstop is reached.

  Note: *An audible click confirms locking of the steering column.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

ENTRY AND EXIT MODE



E166543

With the steering column control in the **AUTO** position, the steering column moves to provide easier entry and exit from the vehicle.

On opening the driver's door, the system raises the steering column to the highest position, assisting with exit from the vehicle. When the driver's door is closed and the ignition is switched on, the system returns the driver's seat and the steering column to the previous position.

Note: *If the steering column is adjusted during entry or exit operation, automatic movement stops.*

To prevent automatic movement of the steering column, turn the control clockwise to the alternative position.

Note: *If the steering column is in exit mode, the column returns to its previous position when the driver's door is closed and the ignition is switched on.*

HEATED STEERING WHEEL



E194983

To activate the heated steering wheel, press the button. Press again to switch off.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

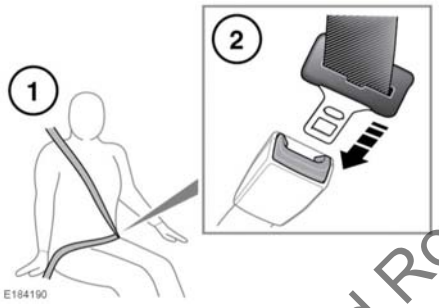
USING THE SEAT BELTS

- Do not use comfort clips or other devices that create slack in the seat belt system. A slack seat belt offers a greatly reduced level of occupant protection in an impact.
- No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack. No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack. A slack seat belt offers a greatly reduced level of occupant protection in an impact.
- Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body. Seat belts should be worn low across the front of the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable. Wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident.
- The seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack seat belt greatly reduces the protection afforded to the wearer. Make sure that any seat belt positioning sliders are adjusted so as not to introduce slack. A slack seat belt offers a greatly reduced level of occupant protection in an impact.
- Belts should not be worn with the straps twisted. A twisted belt may increase the risk of injury in the event of an accident.
- Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant. Placing a seat belt around a child being carried on an occupant's lap is dangerous.
- Riding with a reclined seatback increases the chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. By reclining the seat, the protection offered by the restraint system, i.e., the seat belts and airbags, is greatly reduced. Seat belts must be snug against the hips and chest to work properly. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance that an occupant's hips will slide under the lap belt. The occupant's neck may also strike the shoulder belt. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in the seat, be properly belted, and have the seatbacks in an upright position.
- The airbag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) is designed to add to the overall effectiveness of the seat belts. The SRS does not replace the seat belts. Seat belts must always be worn. Failure to do so greatly increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Seat belts should be worn by all vehicle occupants, for every journey, no matter how short. Failure to do so greatly increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

Never wear just the lap belt or just the shoulder belt of a lap and shoulder diagonal seat belt. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous and may increase the risk of injury.



1. Putting on a seat belt: Draw the belt out smoothly. Make sure that the seat position and the occupant's position on the seat are correct.
   When correctly positioned, the seat belt should cross the collar bone at the mid-point between the neck and the end of the shoulder.
   Where possible, rear seat passengers should adjust the seating position to achieve the same seat belt position.
2. Fastening a seat belt: With the seat belt correctly positioned, place the metal tongue into the nearest buckle. Press it in until a click is heard. Pull on the belt to confirm the buckle is latched correctly.
   To release the seat belt, press the red button.

Note: *When releasing the seat belt, it is advisable to hold the belt before pressing the release button. Doing so prevents the belt from retracting too quickly.*

When a seat belt is not in use, the belt slider can be used to position the metal tongue on the seat belt. The slider allows the user to position the metal tongue for ease of use, and to minimise contact with adjacent trim.

SEAT BELT USE DURING PREGNANCY

Position the seat belt correctly for the safety of the mother and unborn child. Never wear just the lap strap, and never sit on the lap strap while using just the shoulder strap. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous, and may increase the risk of serious injury in the event of an accident or during emergency braking.

Never place anything between an occupant and the seat belt in an attempt to cushion the impact in the event of an accident. An object placed in this position can be dangerous, and reduces the effectiveness of the seat belt in preventing injury.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Seat belts

Seat belt adjustment during pregnancy: Position the lap strap comfortably across the hips and beneath the abdomen. Place the diagonal part of the seat belt between the breasts and to the side of the abdomen.

SEAT BELT PRE-TENSIONERS

The seat belt pre-tensioners only activate once, and then must be replaced. Failure to replace the pre-tensioners reduces the effectiveness of the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) in the event of an accident. The risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident is then increased. The seat belts and pre-tensioners must be checked and, if necessary, replaced after an impact by a retailer/authorised repairer.

The seat belt pre-tensioners activate in conjunction with the SRS to provide additional protection in the event of a severe frontal impact. The seat belt pre-tensioners automatically reduce any slack in a seat belt. As a result, forward movement of a front seat occupant or an outboard rear seat occupant is reduced.

Note: *The rear centre seat is not fitted with a seat belt pre-tensioner.*

SEAT BELT SAFETY

A seat belt should be replaced if the webbing becomes frayed, contaminated, or damaged. Damage to the seat belt can greatly reduce its effectiveness in reducing the risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

Even if damage is not obvious, it is essential to replace the entire seat belt assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact. Damage to the seat belt can greatly reduce its effectiveness in reducing the risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

Take the vehicle to a retailer/ authorised repairer immediately if any seat belt damage, wear, cuts, or impaired operation is noticed. Do not use the vehicle if the seat belts cannot be operated correctly. In an impact, the seat belts cannot be relied upon and may present an increased risk of serious injury or death.

Seat belts should be inspected or replaced by qualified personnel only. All replacement parts should be, at least, the same specification as the vehicle's original equipment. Replacement parts not of the same specification cannot be relied upon and present an increased risk of serious injury or death in a severe impact. If in doubt, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

Do not attempt to service, repair, replace, modify, or tamper with any part of the vehicle's seat belts. Doing so may render the seat belts ineffective and increase the risk of serious injury or death in a severe impact.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Care must be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. Contaminated seat belts may not operate correctly in an impact and cannot be relied upon.

When using seat belts to restrain items other than occupants, make sure the belts are not damaged or exposed to sharp edges. Damage to the seat belt can greatly reduce its effectiveness in reducing the risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

Hard, fragile, or sharp items should not be placed between the occupant and the seat belt. In an impact, pressure on such items can cause them to break, which in turn may cause death or serious injury.

Each seat in the vehicle has a dedicated seat belt. Each seat belt is designed for an individual seat occupant, aged older than 12 years or with a body mass greater than 36 kg. Occupants with a lower age, or a lower body mass, should use an appropriate child restraint. See **51, CHILD SEAT POSITIONING**.

The front row seat belts and outboard second row seat belts are equipped with a load limiter. The load limiter helps to regulate the over-tension of a seat belt in a severe impact, to help reduce the possibility of injury to the occupant.

SEAT BELT CHECKS

Contact a retailer/authorised repairer immediately if any of the seat belts fail to meet the following criteria. A damaged or incorrectly operating seat belt presents an increased risk of serious injury or death in a severe impact.

Note: *If the vehicle is parked on an incline, the seat belt mechanism may lock. The locking mechanism is a safety feature. The belt should be gently eased out from the upper anchorage.*

The seat belts should be inspected regularly to check for fraying, cuts, or wear to the webbing. Also the condition and security of the mechanism, buckles, adjusters, and mounting points should be checked.

- With the seat belt fastened, give the webbing near the buckle a quick upward pull. The buckle must remain securely locked.
- With the seat belt unfastened, unreel the seat belt to the limit of its travel. Check that it unreels smoothly with no snatches or snags. Allow the belt to fully retract, again checking for smooth operation.
- Partially unreel the seat belt, then hold the tongue plate and give a quick forward pull. The mechanism must lock and prevent any further unreeling.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

SEAT BELT REMINDER

The front and rear seat belt reminder system warns the driver when the seat belt of an occupied seat is not fastened. The system also warns the driver when the seat belt of an occupied seat is unfastened during a trip.

Seat belt reminder commences when the vehicle is in motion and the driver's seat belt is unbuckled. Dependent on the market, an audible chime sounds and the warning indicator in the instrument panel illuminates. See **76, SEAT BELT (RED)**.

The visual and audible warnings applicable to the seat belt reminder feature are market dependent, to meet individual market requirements. The warning signals given may also change, depending on whether the vehicle is stationary, or when the vehicle's speed exceeds a predetermined threshold. In certain markets, the seat belt reminder feature also applies to the front passenger seat.

A graphic displayed in the instrument panel indicates which seat belts are fastened at the start of a journey. The graphic also indicates when a seat belt is fastened or unfastened during a journey.



E175060

Each seating position is represented by a passenger icon. The icon colour and symbol indicate the seat belt status:

1. Green: The seat belt, in the indicated position, is fastened.
2. Red: The seat belt, in the indicated position, has been unfastened while the vehicle's ignition is switched on. The indicator turns grey after 30 seconds.
3. Grey: Indicates that the seat belt is not fastened.

Note: *The indicators are displayed for 30 seconds each time there is a status change. For example, a seat belt is unfastened or fastened, or a door is opened and then closed.*

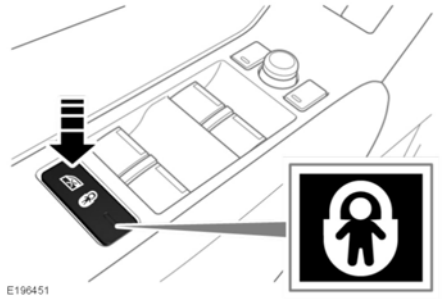
In addition, an audible warning sounds under the following conditions:

- The seat belt of an occupied front seat is not fastened or is unfastened during a journey.
- A rear seat belt is unfastened.

Note: *If a heavy object is placed on the front passenger seat, it may activate the seat belt reminder feature. Therefore, it is recommended that any objects placed on the front passenger seat are secured using the seat belt.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



It is recommended that the rear door interior handles are disabled if children are to be carried in the rear seat positions.

Press the button located on the driver's door to activate the child door locks and inhibit the rear windows. The LED indicator illuminates when active, and the instrument panel displays a message.

To switch off, press the button again. The LED extinguishes, and the instrument panel displays a message.

CHILD SEATS

For optimum safety, children should travel in the rear of the vehicle at all times. Front passenger seat travel is not recommended. However, if it is essential that a child travels in the front (not permitted in Australia), set the vehicle's seat fully rearward. Place the child in an approved forward-facing child seat. Do not use a rearward-facing child seat. An inflating airbag could impact with the seat and could cause serious injury.

Do not use a forward-facing child seat until the child using it is above the minimum weight of 9 kg and is able to sit up unaided. Up to the age of 2, a child's spine and neck are not sufficiently developed to avoid injury in a frontal impact.

Do not allow a baby or infant to be held or carried on the lap. The force of a crash can increase effective body weight by as much as thirty times, making it impossible to hold onto the child. At all times, children should be restrained in age and size appropriate child seats to reduce the risk of death or serious injury in a crash.

Children could be endangered in a crash if the child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle. Always follow the instructions that accompany the child seat carefully.

Children typically require the use of an age and size appropriate booster seat, thereby enabling correct fitment of a seat belt. An appropriate booster seat reduces the risk of injury in a crash. Children could be endangered in a crash if the child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle.

Do not use a child seat that hooks over the seatback. A child seat of this type cannot be satisfactorily secured and is unlikely to be safe for a child.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Child safety

The seat belts fitted to the vehicle are designed for adults and larger children. For safety purposes, it is very important to restrain all infants and children under 12 years of age in a suitable child safety seat. The child safety seat should be appropriate to the age and size of the infant or child.

A child should only travel in the front passenger seat if it is essential and national or state legislation permits it. If this is the case, it is recommended that the following preparations are made before fitting the child restraint:

- Disable the front passenger airbag. See **63, DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG**.
- Adjust the seatback to an upright position to support the child restraint.
- Adjust the front passenger seat fully rearward.
- Adjust the lumbar support to its minimum support position.
- Adjust the seat cushion to its highest position. If cushion front tilt adjustment is possible, adjust it to its lowest position.

Extreme hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.



E145193

The above label is affixed to the passenger's side sun visor. The label warns against the use of a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat, when a front passenger airbag is fitted and operational.



E187567

The above label is affixed to the passenger's side B pillar. The label warns against a child sitting too close to the front seat side airbag.

Never let a child's head rest near to a front seat side airbag, as an inflating airbag can cause serious or fatal injury.

Taiwan only

DO NOT carry babies, infants or children in the front passenger seat.

NEVER use rearward facing child restraint systems on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS injury to the child may occur.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017



E181770

The above label is affixed to the passenger's side sun visor. The label warns against the use of a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat, when a front passenger airbag is fitted and operational.

CHILD SEAT POSITIONING

Crash statistics show that children are safest when properly secured in a child restraint system. The child restraint system should be appropriate for the age and weight of the child, and secured in a rear seating position. Failure to use an appropriate child restraint system greatly increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

Seat belts, or suitable child restraints, should be used by all vehicle occupants, for every journey, no matter how short. Failure to do so greatly increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

Note: *The information contained within the following tables is correct at the time of going to press. However, availability of child restraints may change. Please consult a retailer/authorised repairer for the latest recommendation.*

Note: *The information contained in the following tables may not be applicable to all countries. If there is any doubt regarding the type and fitment of child seats, seek advice from a retailer/ authorised repairer.*

Note: *Ages given are approximate. In case of doubt, the child's weight, not age, should be used when considering an appropriate child seat.*

Note: *The legislation which governs how and where children should be carried when travelling in a vehicle is subject to change. The driver is responsible for making sure that all regulations in force are complied with.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Non-ISOFIX and non-i-Size child seat positioning

Seating positions	Mass group				
	0 = Up to 10 kg 0 to 9 months	0+ = Up to 13 kg 0 to 18 months	I = 9 to 18 kg 9 months to 4 years	II = 15 to 25 kg 4 to 9 years	III = 22 to 36 kg 8 to 12 years
Front passenger seat with airbag on	X	X	UF	UF	UF
Front passenger seat with airbag off*	U	U	U	U	U
Rear outboard seats**	U	U	U	U	U
Rear centre seat**	U	U	U	U	U

U = Suitable for universal category restraints, approved for this mass group.

X = Not suitable for the use of child restraints in this mass group.

UF = Suitable for universal forward-facing child restraints in this mass group. However, it is recommended that children are secured in an approved child seat, secured in a rear seating position.

* Always make sure the passenger airbag has been disabled before using a child restraint in this seating position. See **63, DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG**.

** For vehicles fitted with adjustable second row seats, adjust the seatback to the upright position to support the child restraint.

When using a child seat on the front passenger seat, the seat should be positioned as follows to support the child restraint:

- Fully rearward.
- The seat cushion to its highest position.
- The seatback adjusted to an upright position.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

ISOFIX child seat positioning

Note: *Depending on market specification, ISOFIX anchor points may not be fitted to the front passenger seat.*

Mass group as shown on child restraint	Size class	Fixtures	Second row outboard seats*	Recommended child restraint system
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	X	-
	G	ISO/L2	X	-
0 Up to 10 kg (0 to 9 months)	E	ISO/R1	IL	Jaguar Land Rover - Group 0+ child seat with ISOFIX base or Britax Römer Baby-Safe Plus with ISOFIX base.
0+ Up to 13 kg (0 to 18 months)	E	ISO/R1	IL	
	D	ISO/R2	IL	-
	C	ISO/R3	IL	-
I 9 to 18 kg (9 months to 4 years)	D	ISO/R2	IL	-
	C	ISO/R3	IL	-
	B	ISO/F2	IUF	Jaguar Land Rover - Group I child seat or Britax Römer TRIFIX.
	B1	ISO/F2X	IUF	
	A	ISO/F3	IUF	
II and III 15 to 36 kg (4 to 12 years)	-	-	-	-

IUF = Suitable for ISOFIX forward-facing child restraint systems of a universal category, approved for use in this mass group.

IL = Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems given in the attached list. Approved ISOFIX child restraint systems are those of the specific vehicle, restricted, or semi-universal categories.

X = ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in this mass group and/or this size class.

*For vehicles fitted with adjustable rear seats, adjust the seatback to the upright position.

Note: *ISOFIX anchor points are not provided in the rear centre seating position.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Child safety

Note: *ISOFIX child restraints should be securely attached, following the manufacturer's instructions.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

i-Size child seat positioning

Note: *Depending on market specification, i-Size anchor points may not be fitted to the front passenger seat.*

	Seating position			
	Front passenger	**Rear outboard left***	**Rear outboard right***	**Rear centre**
i-Size child restraint system	X	i-U	i-U	X

i-UF = Suitable for forward-facing i-Size universal child restraint systems only.

i-U = Suitable for forward or rearward-facing i-Size universal child restraint systems.

X = Not suitable for i-Size universal child restraint systems.

*For vehicles fitted with adjustable rear seats, adjust the seatback to the upright position.

Note: *i-Size anchor points are not provided in the rear centre seating position.*

Note: *i-Size child restraints should be securely attached, following the manufacturer's instructions.*

RECOMMENDED CHILD SEATS

Child size and age	**Recommended seats**	
	i-Size and ISOFIX positions	**Non-i-Size and non-ISOFIX positions**
Groups 0 and 0+	Jaguar Land Rover - Group 0+ child seat with ISOFIX base or Britax Römer Baby Safe Plus SHR II with ISOFIX base.	Jaguar Land Rover - Group 0+ child seat or Britax Römer Baby Safe Plus SHR II.
Group I	Jaguar Land Rover - Group I child seat or Britax Römer TRIFIX.	Britax Römer Duo Plus.
Groups II and III	Jaguar Land Rover - Group II and III child seat or Britax Römer KIDFIX XP SICT.	Jaguar Land Rover - Group II and III child seat or Britax Römer KIDFIX XP SICT.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

CHILD RESTRAINT CHECK LIST

Every time a child travels in the vehicle, observe the following:

- Use appropriate child restraints.
- Carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the restraint system.
- Adjust the harness for every child on every journey.
- Make sure that all slack is removed from the adult seat belt.
- Make sure that any seat belt positioning sliders are adjusted so there is no slack in the belt after fastening.
- Always attach the top tether when fitting an i-Size or ISOFIX child seat.
- Always check the security of the child restraint.
- Avoid dressing the child in bulky clothing. Do not place any objects between the child and the restraint system.
- Regularly check the fit and condition of the child seat. Replace child seats and harnesses that show signs of wear immediately.
- Set a good example and always wear a seat belt.
- For child seats fitted with a support leg, adjust the leg so that it rests firmly on the floor.
- The centre rear seat may not be suitable for use with child seats that feature a support leg that rests on the floor. Refer to the child seat manufacturer's information.
- If a head restraint interferes with the fitment of a child restraint, remove the head restraint and store securely. Always refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed. See **40, REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS**.
- When fitting a rearward-facing child seat in the rear, it may be required to move the front seat forward and upward. Care must be taken not to load any part of the child seat when repositioning the front seat. The space available for front seat occupants is reduced by the fitment of a rearward-facing child seat in the rear.

BOOSTER SEATS

In some circumstances, a child may be too large to fit into a child safety seat, but too small to safely fit the vehicle's seat belt. In these circumstances, it is recommended that a booster seat is used for maximum safety. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for the fitting and use of the booster seat. Adjust the vehicle's seat belt to suit.

If the booster seat is fitted with i-Size or ISOFIX connectors, they should be used to secure the seat in conjunction with the seat belt, where appropriate.

FITTING ISOFIX AND I-SIZE CHILD RESTRAINTS

Do not attempt to fit ISOFIX or i-Size child restraints to the centre rear seating position. The anchor bars are not designed to hold an ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint in this position. The child could be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

If removing a head restraint in order to fit a child restraint, always secure the head restraint when storing it. In the event of an accident, an unsecured object could cause serious injury.

Always refit a removed head restraint after the child restraint is removed. The head restraint must be positioned correctly to restrain rearward movement of the head in a collision. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.

WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

If the child restraint is not correctly anchored, there is a significant risk of injury to the child in the event of a collision or an emergency braking manoeuvre.

Both of the outer rear seat positions are equipped to accept ISOFIX and i-Size child restraints.



To fit an ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint:

1. A removable cover, displaying the ISOFIX and i-Size symbol, indicates the position of the ISOFIX and i-Size anchor points.
2. Locate the recess at the top of each access cover. Lightly pull forward to release, and remove. The vehicle's lower anchor points are now accessible.

   Note: *Store the access covers safely. Refit the covers when the child restraint is removed from the vehicle.*
3. Slide the child seat into position. Attach the child seat locking mechanism to the seat anchor points.

Test the security of the child restraint. To do this, attempt to pull the restraint away from the vehicle's seat and twist the restraint from side to side. Even if the restraint appears secure, the anchor points should be checked visually to make sure they are correctly attached.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Child safety

Note: *Always make sure that if an upper tether is provided, it is fitted and tightened correctly.*

Note: *For child restraints fitted with a support leg, adjust the leg so that it rests firmly on the floor.*

FITTING TETHER ANCHORAGE CHILD RESTRAINTS

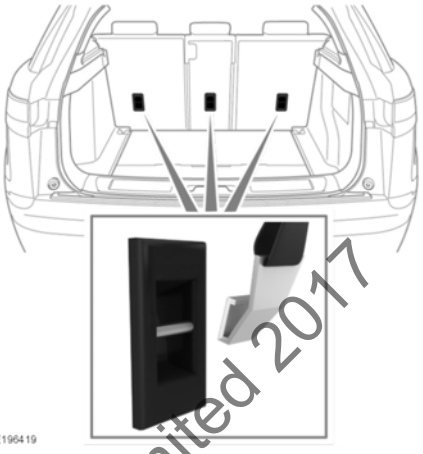
⚠ **Always follow the child seat or restraint system manufacturer's instructions when fitting tether straps.**

⚠ **Always pass the tether strap over the top of the seatback and underneath the head restraint, when fitting a child seat or restraint.**

⚠ **If a child restraint is fitted to the centre rear seat, the centre armrest must be moved to the stored position, in the seat backrest.**

If a head restraint is removed to fit a child seat, make sure it is refitted before the seat is used by a passenger. See **40, REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS**.

⚠ **Always store a removed head restraint securely. In the event of an accident, an unsecured object could cause serious injury or death.**



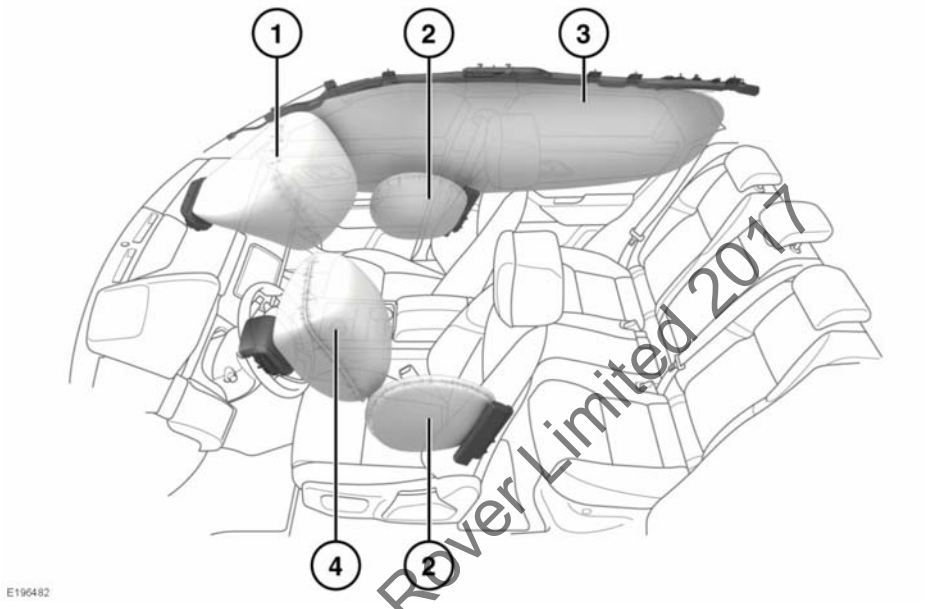
Tether strap anchor points are located behind the second row seats. The anchor points should be used to attach tether straps from a child seat or restraint system.

To fit a tether strap:

1. Fit the child restraint securely in the rear seat.
2. Raise the head restraint.
3. Pass the tether strap over the seatback and beneath the head restraint.
4. Attach the tether strap hook to the anchor point. Make sure the hook is facing towards the back of the seat.
5. Tighten the tether strap according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

AIRBAGS



Airbag locations:

1. Front passenger's airbag.
2. Front seat side airbags.
3. Curtain airbags.
4. Driver's airbag.

Note: *The general location of airbags fitted to the vehicle are marked by the word* ***AIRBAG****.*

High speed impacts may cause serious injury or death, irrespective of the safety features fitted to the vehicle. Always drive with caution and consideration for the vehicle's characteristics, and the road and weather conditions. Do not exceed any speed limits in force.

Seat belts should be worn at all times, by the driver and passengers in all seating positions. The airbag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) cannot provide protection in some types of impact. Under these circumstances, the only protection is provided by a correctly worn seat belt.

Always contact a retailer/authorised repairer if:

- An airbag inflates.
- The front or sides of the vehicle are damaged.
- Any part of the airbag system shows signs of cracking or damage, including the trim covering the airbags.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Airbags

- The amber airbag warning lamp illuminates. See **76, AIRBAG (AMBER)**.

AIRBAG OPERATION

For the airbags to operate correctly, the roof lining and door pillar trims must be in good condition, correctly fitted, and free from obstruction. Any damage, wear, or incorrect fitment should be referred to a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible for examination and repair. An airbag system not operating correctly could result in serious injury or death in the event of a severe accident.

Air bags inflate at high speeds and can cause facial abrasions and other injuries. To minimize the risk of severe injury or death, make sure that all vehicle occupants, including the driver, wear correctly positioned seat belts. All vehicle occupants, including the driver, must sit correctly in the seats and position them as far back as is practical.

Airbag inflation takes place instantaneously and cannot protect against the effects of secondary impacts. Under these circumstances, the only protection is provided by a correctly worn seat belt.

High speed impacts may cause serious injury or death, irrespective of safety features fitted to a vehicle.

The airbag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) cannot provide protection in some types of impact. Under these circumstances, the only protection is provided by a correctly worn seat belt.

Airbags provide additional protection in certain types of collision only. Airbags do not replace the need to wear a seat belt. All occupants, in all seating positions, should always wear a seat belt, whether or not an airbag is present in that seating position.

Airbag deployment is dependent on the rate at which the passenger compartment changes velocity following a collision. Circumstances affecting different collisions, vehicle speed, angle of impact, type and size of object hit, etc., vary considerably and affect the rate of deceleration accordingly.

The airbags and SRS are not designed to operate as a result of:

- Rear impacts.
- Minor front impacts.
- Minor side impacts.
- Heavy braking.
- Driving over bumps and pot holes.

Therefore, it follows that considerable superficial damage to the vehicle can occur, without causing the airbags to deploy.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

AIRBAG OBSTRUCTION

Do not obstruct operation of the airbags by placing any part of the body or any objects in contact with, or close to, an airbag module. If an airbag inflates, objects or any part of an occupant could interfere with the inflation of the airbag. Objects, or any part of the body, could also be propelled inside the vehicle, potentially causing injury to the occupants.

Do not allow passengers or objects to obstruct the operation of the airbags. Do not place objects, or any parts of the body, e.g., feet or knees, in contact with, or in close proximity to, an airbag module. If the airbag inflates, obstructions could interfere with the inflation of the airbag. Any obstructions could also be propelled inside the vehicle, potentially causing injury to the occupants.

Do not place objects between an airbag module and a seat occupant. Objects placed in this position could interfere with the inflation of the airbag or be propelled inside the vehicle, potentially causing injury to the occupants.

Do not use non-approved or accessory seat covers that have not been designed for use with airbags. Non-approved seat covers or accessories could interfere with airbag operation. If in doubt, consult a retailer/ authorised repairer.

Make sure that a gap is maintained between the side of the vehicle, and the head and torso. The gap enables unobstructed inflation of the curtain and seat-mounted side airbags. Failure to maintain a gap may result in injury to the occupant in the event of an accident.

Do not attach or position items on, or close to, the roof lining, front seatbacks, or to an airbag cover. Items in these positions could interfere with the inflation of the airbag or be propelled inside the vehicle, potentially causing injury to the occupants.

Note: *Unauthorised modifications of the vehicle or parts may invalidate the vehicle's warranty.*

Airbags cannot deploy correctly if obstructed. Examples of obstructions are:

- Any part of an occupant's body in contact with, or close to, an airbag cover.
- Objects placed on, or close to, an airbag cover.
- Clothing, sun screens, or other material hanging from grab handles.
- Clothing, cushions, or other material covering seat-mounted airbags.
- Seat covers which are not approved or specifically designed for use with seat-mounted airbags.

The above list is not exhaustive. The driver and passengers are responsible for making sure that the airbags are not obstructed in any way.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Airbags

FRONT AIRBAGS

The front passenger and driver airbags deploy depending on the severity of the frontal impact.

SIDE AIRBAGS

The side airbags are designed to protect the thorax region of the torso. In general the side airbags deploy in the event of a side impact, and then only on the side of the impact.

CURTAIN AIRBAGS

For the curtain airbags to deploy correctly, the roof lining and A pillar trim must be undamaged and fitted correctly. Any damage or suspect fitting should be referred to a retailer/authorised repairer for examination. An airbag system not operating correctly could result in serious injury or death in the event of a severe accident.

The curtain airbags deploy in side impact and rollover events, providing greater protection from serious head injuries.

Note: *Curtain airbags do not inflate as a result of side impacts and rollover events alone. They may deploy in some frontal impacts however.*

AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT EFFECTS

When an airbag inflates, a fine powder is released. Release of fine powder is normal and not an indication of a malfunction. The powder may cause irritation to the skin and should be thoroughly flushed from eyes and any cuts or abrasions. The powder can cause breathing difficulties for asthma sufferers or other people with respiratory problems. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, or get fresh air by opening a window. If breathing problems persist, seek medical attention.

Airbag deployment is accompanied by a very loud noise, which may cause discomfort and temporary loss of hearing.

After inflation, some airbag components are very hot. Do not touch the airbag components until the components have cooled sufficiently as this may result in an injury.

After inflation, the front and seat-mounted side airbags deflate immediately. Deflation provides a gradual cushioning effect for the occupants and also makes sure the driver's forward vision is not obscured.

AIRBAG WARNING LAMP

The warning lamp indicates a potential fault with the vehicle's restraint system, which could result in serious injury or death in the event of a severe accident.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2011

If the warning lamp indicates that a fault is present in the system, do not use a child restraint on the front passenger seat. In the event of a severe accident, serious injury or death could result.

The airbag warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and illuminates as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on. See **76, AIRBAG (AMBER)**.

If any of the following warning lamp conditions occur, the vehicle should be checked by a retailer/authorised repairer immediately:

- The warning lamp fails to illuminate when the ignition is switched on.
- The warning lamp fails to extinguish within 6 seconds of the ignition being switched on.
- The warning lamp illuminates at any time, other than during the bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

When the ignition is switched on, a diagnostic control unit monitors the readiness of the system's electrical circuits. The elements of the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) components include:

- SRS warning indicator.
- Rotary coupler.
- Airbag modules.
- Front and outboard rear seat belt pre-tensioners.
- Front seat belt buckle switches.
- Airbag diagnostic control unit.
- Crash and rollover sensors.
- Airbag wiring harness.
- Airbag status indicator.

DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG

(Not Australia)

The passenger airbag should only be disabled when a child restraint is fitted to the front passenger seat.

Crash test data and statistics show that a correctly fitted child seat in a rear seat is the safest place to restrain a child.

Do not use a child restraint on a seat protected by an operational airbag in front of it. Doing so presents a high risk of death or serious injury to the child in the event of an accident.

Before checking the operational status of the front passenger airbag, switch the vehicle's ignition on. Wait until the warning lamp bulb check period of 8 seconds has elapsed before carrying out any checks.

As soon as the child seat is removed from the front passenger seat, the airbag must be switched on. Failure to do so will put any front seat passengers at greater risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

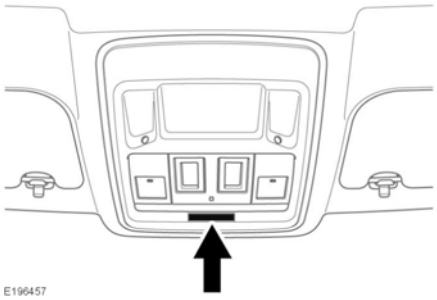
Do not fit a child restraint to the front passenger seat if the airbag warning lamp illuminates continuously with the ignition switched on.

The passenger airbag must be disabled when a rearward-facing child restraint is fitted to the front passenger seat.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Note: *Disabling the passenger airbag is market dependent.*

The passenger's front airbag can be switched on or off via the **Vehicle Settings** instrument panel menu. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.



An airbag status indicator lamp, mounted in the overhead console, displays the operational status of the passenger airbag, as shown in the following table:

Setting	Passenger airbag status	Airbag status indicator
Off.	Disabled.	**PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF**
On.	Activated.	**ON PASSENGER AIRBAG***

* Displays for 60 seconds, then extinguishes.

AIRBAG SERVICE INFORMATION

Phone systems should only be fitted by qualified persons familiar with the operation of, and requirements for, vehicles fitted with a Supplementary Restraint System (SRS). An incorrectly fitted phone system may affect the performance of the SRS. If in any doubt, seek advice from a retailer/authorised repairer.

Do not attempt to service, repair, replace, modify, or tamper with any part of the SRS. Do not attempt to service, repair, replace, modify, or tamper with any wiring or components in the vicinity of the SRS. Doing so may cause the system to trigger or render the system inoperative, either of which may result in serious injury or death.

Do not use any electrical test equipment or devices in the vicinity of any SRS components or wiring. Doing so may cause the system to trigger or render the system inoperative, either of which may result in serious injury or death.

For personal safety reasons, all of the following operations should only be carried out by a retailer/ authorised repairer or a suitably qualified person:
- Removal, or repair, of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any SRS components.
- Fitment of electrical, or electronic, equipment and accessories.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

- Modification to the front or sides of the vehicle's exterior.
- Attachment of accessories to the front or sides of the vehicle.

Always contact a retailer/authorised repairer if:

- An airbag inflates.
- The front or sides of the vehicle are damaged.
- Any part of the airbag SRS shows signs of cracking or damage, including the trim covering the airbags.

DISABILITY MODIFICATIONS

Occupants with disabilities which may require the vehicle to be modified must contact a retailer/ authorised repairer before any modifications are made. Incorrect modifications may result in death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

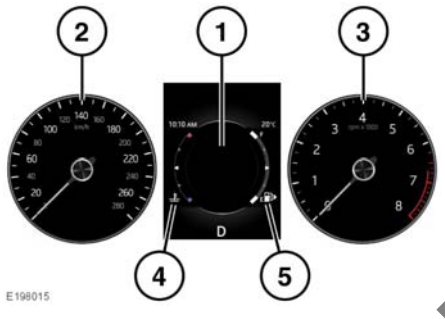
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

INSTRUMENT PANEL

The instrument panel displays information, warnings, and menu options to the driver. See **74, WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS**.

Note: *The vehicle may be supplied with a standard instrument panel or a virtual instrument panel with an interactive driver display.*

Standard instrument panel



The standard instrument panel has hardware speedometer and tachometer dials, i.e., permanently visible.

The standard instrument panel consists of:

1. Message centre, information panel, and instrument panel menu display: Displays information and menu selection options.
   The information panel display is configurable to suit personal preferences. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.
2. Speedometer: Displays the vehicle's current speed.
3. Tachometer: Displays the engine's current speed, i.e., revolutions per minute (rpm).
4. Temperature gauge: Displays the current temperature of the engine.
   If the pointer moves onto the red line, the engine is overheating. In this event, the instrument panel illuminates the engine temperature warning lamp. See **76, ENGINE TEMPERATURE (RED)**.
   If the engine overheats, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits. Allow the engine to idle until the temperature reduces. If the temperature does not reduce after several minutes, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

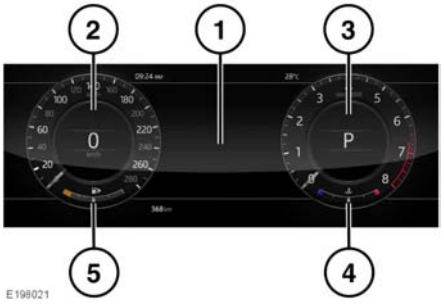
   Serious engine damage occurs if the vehicle is driven while the engine is overheating.

   Note: *In the event of engine overheating, a reduction in engine performance may occur. The Air Conditioning (A/C) system may also cease operation, to reduce the load on the engine and assist with engine cooling.*
5. Fuel gauge: Displays the current level of fuel in the vehicle's fuel tank.
   An arrow head symbol, next to the fuel pump symbol, indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located.
   If the instrument panel illuminates the low fuel warning lamp, refuel the vehicle as soon as possible. See **78, LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)**.
   The approximate travelling distance for the remaining fuel can be viewed via the trip computer's **Range** menu. See **69, USING THE TRIP COMPUTER**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Never allow the engine to run out of fuel. Doing so may cause serious damage to the vehicle's fuel system.

Virtual instrument panel



The virtual instrument panel has software-generated speedometer and tachometer dials, i.e., only visible with the ignition switched on.

The virtual instrument panel's interactive driver display layout is configurable. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: *The displayed information automatically changes position, format, and content amount, for each display layout option.*

The virtual instrument panel consists of:

1. Message centre, information panel, and instrument panel menu display: Displays information and menu selection options.
   The information panel displays are configurable to suit personal preferences. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.
2. Speedometer: Displays the vehicle's current speed.
3. Tachometer: Displays the engine's current speed, i.e., revolutions per minute (rpm).
4. Temperature gauge: Displays the current temperature of the engine.
   If the pointer moves onto the red line, the engine is overheating. In this event, the instrument panel illuminates the engine temperature warning lamp. See **76, ENGINE TEMPERATURE (RED)**.
   If the engine overheats, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits. Allow the engine to idle until the temperature reduces. If the temperature does not reduce after several minutes, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

   Serious engine damage occurs if the vehicle is driven while the engine is overheating.

   Note: *In the event of the engine overheating, a reduction in engine performance may occur. The Air Conditioning (A/C) system may also cease operation, to reduce the load on the engine and assist with engine cooling.*
5. Fuel gauge: Displays the current level of fuel in the vehicle's fuel tank.
   An arrow head symbol, next to the fuel pump symbol, indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located.
   If the instrument panel illuminates the low fuel warning lamp, refuel the vehicle as soon as possible. See **78, LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

The approximate travelling distance for the remaining fuel can be viewed via the trip computer's **Range** menu. See **69, USING THE TRIP COMPUTER**.

Never allow the engine to run out of fuel. Doing so may cause serious damage to the vehicle's fuel system.

INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU

Do not operate the instrument panel controls while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause driver distraction, potentially resulting in an accident, causing serious injury or death.



E200493

The instrument panel's display settings and some vehicle features can be configured via the instrument panel menus. Use the controls mounted on the left side of the steering wheel to display and navigate through the instrument panel menus.

Some instrument panel menus are dependent on the specification of the vehicle. See **66, INSTRUMENT PANEL**.

Operate as follows:

1. Press the **MENU** button to activate the instrument panel menus.

   Note: *The control buttons display changes to suit the context for the available instrument panel menu options. The original button display resumes after closing and exiting the instrument panel menus.*

2. Press the **OK** button to select a highlighted menu item.
   - Press the **∧** button, or the **∨** button, to scroll through the menu list and highlight the required menu. Alternatively, touch and move clockwise to scroll down or touch and move counter-clockwise to scroll up.
   - Press and release the **>** button, or press the **OK** button, to view the sub-list for the highlighted menu. Scroll up or down to the required option.
   - Press and release the **<** button to return to the previous menu.
   - Press and hold the **<** button to close and exit the instrument panel menus.

The displayed menu options are as follows:

- **Phone**.

  Note: *Only available when a phone is connected to vehicles with a virtual instrument panel.*

- **Media**.

  Note: *Only available on vehicles with a virtual instrument panel.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

- **Driver Assistance**.
- **Trip**.
- **Display**. A virtual instrument panel is configurable for different display layouts. Use the **Display Layout** menu to select a **Two dial**, **One dial**, **Full map**, **Media**, or a **Driver Assistance** view.
- **Head-Up Display (HUD)**.
- **Vehicle Settings**.

  Before making any changes to the Vehicle Settings, make sure to read and fully understand the relevant sections and topics of the Owner's Handbook. Failure to do so can lead to serious injury or death.
- **Vehicle Info**.

  Note: *Some* ***Vehicle Info*** *options are only available before the engine starts.*

WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES

Do not ignore warning messages. Take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in death, serious injury, or serious damage to the vehicle.

Note: *If a warning message is manually extinguished, the instrument panel illuminates an amber or red warning lamp until the cause of the message is rectified.*

For information regarding warning messages and any action required, refer to the warning and information lamps section within the Owner's Handbook.

If more than one message is active, each message displays in turn for 2 seconds, in order of priority.

Note: *Messages display in order of importance. High importance warning messages are given the highest priority.*

Displayed warning messages may be accompanied by an audible tone and may also display the handbook symbol. Follow any on-screen instructions and if required, refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. Warning messages display until the detected fault is rectified. A warning message display can be extinguished using the **OK** button on the steering wheel menu control.

Note: *Extinguishing a displayed warning message does not clear or rectify a detected fault.*

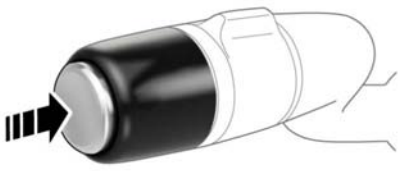
If a persistent fault is detected, the warning message displays each time the ignition is switched on. In this event, follow any on-screen instructions or seek qualified assistance.

TRIP COMPUTER

The trip computer memory stores data for a journey, or a series of journeys, until it is reset to zero.

There are three trip memories available: **Trip A**, **Trip B**, and **Trip Auto**. Use the instrument panel menu to select a trip memory to display in the instrument panel.

USING THE TRIP COMPUTER



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

A short press of 1 second or less, or a series of short presses, of the trip button changes the trip computer display.

The available display options are as follows:

- **Date**.
- **Trip distance**.
- **Average speed**.
- **Average economy**.
- **Instantaneous economy**.
- **Range**.
- **Driving style**.

To reset the selected trip computer value to zero, press and hold the trip button for 2 seconds.

The distance, average speed, and average fuel economy values for **Trip A** and **Trip B** can be reset. Set the trip computer display to show the required trip to reset. Press and hold the trip button until the instrument panel displays the **Resetting** message.

The **Trip Auto** feature resets automatically each time the ignition is switched on. The **Trip Auto** feature cannot be reset manually.

Trips may be added together, to record a continuous journey, or removed. Press the trip button for longer than 1 second, when **Trip Auto** values for distance, average speed, and average fuel economy are displayed. The instrument panel displays either the **Adding last journey** or **Removing last journey** message. Press the trip button for longer than 1 second to select the desired option. The previous trip information is added to, or removed from, the current trip. The new total is displayed. There is no limit to the number of times this can be done before the ignition is switched off.

TRIP DISTANCE

Trip distance is the distance travelled since the last memory reset. The maximum trip distance display is 9 999.9 (km or miles). The trip computer automatically resets the trip distance to zero if the maximum distance is exceeded.

RANGE

The range display shows the predicted distance in miles or km that the vehicle can travel with the current fuel tank level. The reading assumes that the current fuel consumption and driving style remain constant.

TRIP UNITS

The units displayed in the trip computer can be changed via the **Trip** or **Display** instrument panel menus. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: *The temperature display can be changed between* ***°C*** *and* ***°F*** *independently of the trip computer units.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

DRIVING STYLE

The driving style display shows an instantaneous rating for the accelerator pedal position, engine and vehicle speed, and braking behaviour compared to economical driving principles.

The **Eco Data** feature provides more information and guidance to help improve the vehicle's fuel economy. Select **Eco Data** from the touch screen's **EXTRA FEATURES** menu. See **209, EXTRA FEATURES**.

SERVICE INTERVAL INDICATOR

The next oil service interval can be displayed via the **Vehicle Info** and **Next service** instrument panel menus. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: *Dependent on the vehicle's specification, other fluid intervals and capacities may also be displayed.*

The oil service interval displays as a distance left until the service is due. Once the distance is exceeded, the display shows a negative (-) value to indicate that a service is overdue.

HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD)

Note: *The Head-Up Display (HUD) system may take more time to display from start-up in extreme temperatures, to make sure that it always runs at its optimum temperature.*

Note: *The full HUD image may not be viewed correctly while wearing polarised sunglasses.*

Note: *Do not place anything over the HUD unit, which is located on the driver's side between the top of the instrument panel and the windscreen.*

Note: *In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the HUD system when it is safe to do so.*

The HUD system projects some of the information currently displayed in the instrument panel, onto the inside of the windscreen.

To switch the HUD system **On** or **Off**, select the **Enable HUD** option from the **Head-Up Display** instrument panel menu. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The HUD system also displays some instrument panel warning lamps. See **74, WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS**.

To switch **On** or **Off** the vehicle features to be displayed via the HUD system, select **HUD content** from the **Head-Up Display** instrument panel menu. The HUD system only displays the vehicle features that are currently displayed in the instrument panel.

Note: *The position and format of the displayed HUD information varies due to priority and the number of features currently switched on or off.*

Setting the correct HUD position is important. The correct position is dependent on a number of conditions, including the height of the driver and the seat position.

Note: *Before setting the position of the HUD, make sure that the driver's seat is correctly positioned. The HUD level should be set horizontally, within the driver's vision.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

To set the HUD position, select **Position** from the **Head-Up Display** instrument panel menu. Follow the on-screen instructions, then press **OK** to confirm. Preferences are stored using the driver's seat memory store button. See **33, SEAT POSITION MEMORY**.

The brightness of the HUD display is set automatically to suit the current ambient light conditions. To manually adjust the brightness, select **Brightness** from the **Head-Up Display** instrument panel menu. Follow the on-screen instructions, then press **OK** to confirm.

The HUD system is linked to the trip computer unit settings. If the fuel economy display is set to mpg, the HUD is in miles. If the fuel economy display is set to km/h, the HUD is in km. See **70, TRIP UNITS**.

If cleaning is required, follow the cleaning instructions. See **334, CLEANING SCREENS AND DISPLAYS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

OVERVIEW

The following warning and information lamps may illuminate in the instrument panel:


See **75, BATTERY CHARGE (RED)**.


See **75, BRAKE (RED)**.


See **75, CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED)**.


See **75, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (RED)**.


See **75, ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB) (RED)**.


See **76, ENGINE TEMPERATURE (RED)**.


See **76, LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (RED)**.


See **76, LOW OIL PRESSURE (RED)**.


See **76, SEAT BELT (RED)**.



See **76, ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER (AMBER)**.


See **76, AIRBAG (AMBER)**.


See **76, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) (AMBER)**.



See **77, ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS) (AMBER)**.


See **77, BRAKE (AMBER)**.


See **77, CHECK ENGINE (AMBER)**.


See **77, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (AMBER)**.


See **77, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)**.



See **78, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)**.


See **78, EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE (AMBER)**.


See **78, FOLLOW MODE (AMBER)**.


See **78, GENERAL WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)**.


See **78, GLOW PLUGS (AMBER)**.


See **78, LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)**.


See **78, REAR FOG LIGHTS (AMBER)**.



See **78, SPEED LIMITER (AMBER)**.


See **78, TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (YELLOW)**.



See **79, AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (GREEN)**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Warning and information lamps


See **79, AUTO STOP/START (GREEN)**.


See **79, CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)**.


See **79, DIPPED BEAM (GREEN)**.


See **79, DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)**.


See **79, FORWARD ALERT (GREEN)**.


See **79, FRONT FOG LIGHTS (GREEN)**.


See **79, GEARSHIFT (GREEN)**.


See **79, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) (GREEN)**.


See **80, LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (GREEN)**.


See **80, SIDE LIGHTS (GREEN)**.


See **80, TRAILER DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)**.


See **80, HIGH BEAM (BLUE)**.



See **80, ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER (GREY)**.


See **80, LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (GREY)**.



See **80, SPEED LIMITER (GREY)**.


See **80, AUTO STOP/START INHIBIT (WHITE)**.



See **80, AUTO STOP/START OFF (WHITE)**.



See **81, FOLLOW MODE OFF (WHITE)**.

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

Do not ignore warning lamps or indicators. Take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury, or serious damage to the vehicle.

Red warning lamps are for primary warnings. A primary warning must be investigated immediately by the driver or qualified assistance, before continuing.

Amber and yellow warning lamps are for secondary warnings. Some indicate that a vehicle system is in operation, and others indicate that the driver must take action and then seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

Green and blue lamps within the instrument panel indicate a system's status.

LAMP CHECK

Note: *Not all warning lamps are included in the check, e.g., high beam headlights and direction indicators.*

Note: *If a trailer with LED lights is connected to the trailer socket, the bulb check may not be performed.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

A warning lamp bulb check is initiated when the ignition system is switched on. The check lasts for 3 seconds, except for the airbag warning lamp which remains on for 6 seconds. If any warning lamp remains on after this period, investigate the cause before driving.

Some warning lamps have associated messages displayed in the instrument panel.

BATTERY CHARGE (RED)



The battery charge warning lamp illuminates, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on. The lamp extinguishes when the engine is started.

If the lamp remains on or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the battery charging system. The instrument panel displays a warning message. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

BRAKE (RED)

Do not drive if the message LOW BRAKE FLUID is displayed. Check the brake fluid level and top up, as necessary. If necessary, seek qualified assistance before continuing. Driving with low brake fluid can cause increased braking distance or brake failure, and can result in a collision.



The brake warning lamp illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp illuminates while driving, suspect low brake fluid level or a fault with the braking system.

Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits. Check and top up the brake fluid, if necessary. If the lamp remains illuminated, seek qualified assistance before continuing.

CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED)



The critical warning message lamp illuminates when a relevant message displays in the instrument panel.

DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (RED)



The Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) warning lamp illuminates to warn the driver that the level of DEF is seriously low.

The warning lamp also illuminates if the incorrect fluid has been added to the system, or if there is a fault with the system.

The lamp is accompanied by messages in the instrument panel. Follow the on-screen messages, if safe to do so. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB) (RED)



The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) warning lamp illuminates if the EPB is correctly applied.

If the lamp flashes, a fault has been detected. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

ENGINE TEMPERATURE (RED)



The engine temperature warning lamp illuminates when the engine's temperature is too high.

The instrument panel also displays the message **ENGINE OVERHEATING**.

Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits. Seek qualified assistance before continuing.

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (RED)



The red lane departure warning lamp illuminates if the vehicle crosses a lane marking without the appropriate direction indicator being operated.

Illumination of the lamp is accompanied by a vibration, through the steering wheel.

The left or right lane illuminates depending on which lane boundry being crossed.

LOW OIL PRESSURE (RED)



If the low oil pressure warning lamp flashes or illuminates while driving, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits. Switch off the engine immediately.

Check and top up the oil level, if necessary. Start the engine. If the lamp remains illuminated, switch the engine off immediately. Seek qualified assistance before continuing.

SEAT BELT (RED)

Note: *Objects on the front passenger seat may activate the seat belt reminder feature. It is recommended that any objects placed on the front passenger seat are secured using the seat belt. See* ***44, USING THE SEAT BELTS****.*



The seat belt warning lamp illuminates, accompanied by a chime, when the vehicle is in motion and an occupied seat belt is unbuckled.

The lamp extinguishes when the relevant seat belt is buckled.

ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER (AMBER)



The amber adaptive speed limiter lamp illuminates when the adaptive speed limiter feature is switched on.

AIRBAG (AMBER)



The airbag warning lamp illuminates, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on. The lamp extinguishes after 6 seconds.

If the lamp illuminates again, after the bulb check or when driving, there is a fault with the airbag system. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) (AMBER)



The All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) lamp illuminates to confirm that the ATPC system is enabled.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS) (AMBER)

If the Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) and brake warning lamps are illuminated at the same time, do not drive the vehicle until the fault is rectified, as the braking system may not be functioning correctly. This may, in turn, lead to a loss of control, causing an accident. Seek qualified assistance immediately.

It remains the responsibility of the driver to operate the vehicle in an appropriate manner for the prevailing conditions.



The ABS warning lamp illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp remains on, or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the ABS system. Drive with care, avoiding heavy brake pedal application. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

BRAKE (AMBER)



The brake warning lamp illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp illuminates after starting the engine, or while driving, suspect worn brake pads or a fault with the braking system. The vehicle can still be driven with care, but seek qualified assistance urgently.

CHECK ENGINE (AMBER)



The check engine warning lamp illuminates when the ignition is switched on.

The lamp remains illuminated until the engine starts. If the lamp illuminates when the engine is running, an emissions-related fault has been detected. The vehicle remains safe to drive with the lamp illuminated, although qualified assistance should be sought as soon as possible. With the lamp illuminated, the engine may enter limp-home mode. Limp-home mode reduces vehicle performance to safeguard against any further damage to the vehicle.

If the check engine warning lamp flashes when the engine is running, reduce the vehicle's speed as soon as it is safe to do so. Seek qualified assistance immediately.

DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (AMBER)



The Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) warning lamp illuminates to warn the driver that the level of DEF is starting to run low.

The warning lamp also illuminates if the incorrect fluid has been added to the system, or if there is a fault with the system.

The lamp is accompanied by messages in the instrument panel. Follow the on-screen messages, if safe to do so.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)



The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) lamp flashes when the system is active.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

If there is a fault with the system, it remains illuminated and the instrument panel displays **DSC NOT AVAILABLE**.

The vehicle can still be driven, but without DSC assistance. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)



The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) OFF warning lamp illuminates when the system is switched off.

The lamp is accompanied by a chime and a confirmation message in the instrument panel.

EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE (AMBER)



The external temperature lamp illuminates when the external temperature is low enough that ice may be present on the road.

FOLLOW MODE (AMBER)



The follow mode lamp illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is in follow mode.

GENERAL WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)



The general warning and information message lamp illuminates when a non-critical warning message or an information message is available in the instrument panel.

GLOW PLUGS (AMBER)



The glow plug lamp illuminates when the ignition is switched on, to indicate that the glow plugs are active.

LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)



The low fuel warning lamp illuminates when the fuel level is low. Refuel at the earliest opportunity.

The arrow shows which side of the vehicle to locate the fuel filler flap.

REAR FOG LIGHTS (AMBER)



The rear fog lights lamp illuminates when the rear fog lights are switched on.

SPEED LIMITER (AMBER)



The speed limiter lamp illuminates when the speed limiter feature is active.

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (YELLOW)



The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) lamp illuminates to warn that one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.

The lamp is accompanied by a message in the instrument panel. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, when safe to do so. Check the tyre pressures and inflate to the recommended pressure.

The lamp flashes to indicate a system fault.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2011

AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (GREEN)



The Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA) lamp illuminates when the AHBA feature has switched on the high beam headlights.

AUTO STOP/START (GREEN)



The auto stop/start lamp illuminates when the engine is shut down by the auto stop/start system.

Note: *Other warnings normally associated with an engine shutdown do not illuminate during an engine shutdown by the auto stop/start system.*

CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)



The cruise control lamp illuminates when cruise control or adaptive cruise control is active.

DIPPED BEAM (GREEN)



The dipped beam lamp illuminates when the dipped beam headlights are switched on.

DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)



The appropriate direction indicators lamp, left or right, flashes when the direction indicators are operated.

If a direction indicator bulb fails, the visual and audible warnings flash and sound, respectively, at twice the normal rate.

FORWARD ALERT (GREEN)



The forward alert lamp illuminates when forward alert is active.

FRONT FOG LIGHTS (GREEN)



The front fog lights lamp illuminates when the front fog lights are switched on.

GEARSHIFT (GREEN)



The warning indicator is only a guide. It remains the responsibility of the driver to operate the vehicle in an appropriate manner for the prevailing conditions.



The gearshift indicator lamp illuminates briefly at the recommended gear change point (up-shift).

The gearshift indicator lamp does not illuminate while cruise control is active and is not being overridden by pressing the accelerator pedal.

HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) (GREEN)



The Hill Descent Control (HDC) lamp illuminates continuously when the HDC system is selected and HDC operating conditions are met.

If the lamp flashes, HDC has been selected, but the operating conditions are not being met or HDC fade-out is occurring.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (GREEN)



The green lane departure warning lamp illuminates if the feature is enabled and the vehicle is tracking the lanes.

SIDE LIGHTS (GREEN)



The side lights lamp illuminates when the side lights are switched on.

TRAILER DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)



The trailer direction indicator lamp illuminates, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on. The lamp extinguishes when the engine is started.

If a trailer is attached, the warning lamp flashes in conjunction with the direction indicator warning lamp. If the lamp fails to flash, the direction indicator bulb on the trailer may be faulty.

Note: *If the attached and connected trailer is fitted with LED lights, the bulb check may not be performed.*

HIGH BEAM (BLUE)



The high beam lamp illuminates when the high beam headlights are switched on or flashed.

ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER (GREY)



The grey adaptive speed limiter lamp illuminates when the adaptive speed limiter feature is in a standby state.

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (GREY)



The grey lane departure waning lamp illuminates if the feature is enabled but the vehicle is unable to track the lanes.

SPEED LIMITER (GREY)



The grey speed limiter lamp illuminates when the speed limiter feature is in a standby state.

AUTO STOP/START INHIBIT (WHITE)



The auto stop/start inhibit lamp illuminates when the auto stop/start system is active but a vehicle system requires the engine to run.

AUTO STOP/START OFF (WHITE)



The auto stop/start off lamp illuminates when the auto stop/start system is switched off by the driver.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

FOLLOW MODE OFF (WHITE)



The follow mode OFF lamp illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is disabled.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

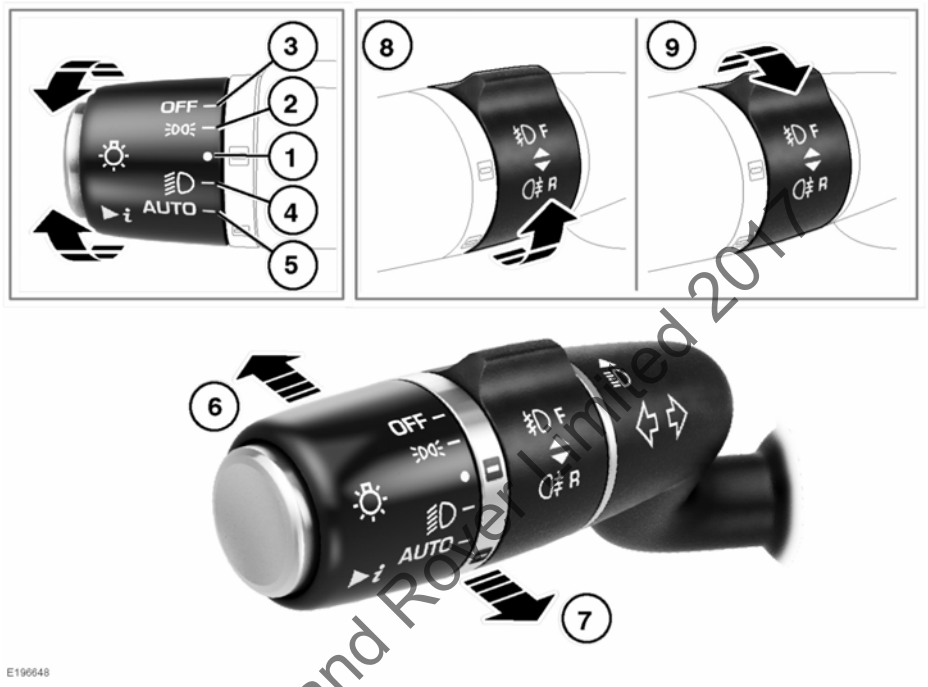
Exterior lights

EXTERIOR LIGHTS OVERVIEW

The lighting system operates automatically depending upon the ambient lighting conditions. The system selects the appropriate lighting function, dipped beam or Daytime Running Lights (DRL) for the conditions that the system detects. In some circumstances it may be necessary to manually override automatic operation. Some manual operations are not possible due to vehicle activity or legislative requirements.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

LIGHTING CONTROL



1. Neutral position of the control: The lighting system operates automatically dependent on the ambient level of light. During daylight, the Daytime Running Lights (DRL) automatically switches on. During low ambient light, the headlights switches on automatically. To manually switch on any lighting functions, rotate the lighting control to the required position and release. After released, the lighting control returns to the neutral position.
2. Side lights: Rotate the lighting control to this position to switch the side lights on. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **80, SIDE LIGHTS (GREEN)**
3. Headlights OFF: Rotate the lighting control to this position to switch the headlights off.
4. Headlights: Rotate the lighting control to this position to switch the headlights on.

   Note: *Low exterior light levels, caused by adverse weather conditions, may also cause the auto lights to activate.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

5. **AUTO**: Rotate the lighting control to this position to select **AUTO** lights. When ambient light fades and the ignition is switched on, the side lights, rear lights, dipped beam headlights, and number plate lights switch on automatically. Headlight courtesy delay, Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA), Adaptive Driving Beam (ADB), Supplementary Laser High Beam (SLHB), Adaptive Front lighting System (AFS), and wiper detection may also be activated.
6. High beam: With the headlights on, push and release the lighting control to select high beam. Push and release the lighting control again to deselect high beam. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **80, HIGH BEAM (BLUE)**

   Note: *Do not use high beam where it may distract other road users.*
7. High beam flash: Pull the lighting control toward the steering wheel and release to flash the high beam on and off. High beam remains on for as long as the lighting control is held.
8. Front fog lights: Turn the lighting control away from the steering wheel, and release to switch on the front fog lights. Turn the lighting control away from the steering wheel again, and release to switch off the front fog lights. The instrument panel warning light illuminates. See **79, FRONT FOG LIGHTS (GREEN)**.
9. Rear fog lights: Operate only while headlights or front fog lights are selected. Turn the lighting control toward the steering wheel and release to switch on the rear fog lights. Turn the lighting control toward the steering wheel again and release to switch off the rear fog lights. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **78, REAR FOG LIGHTS (AMBER)**.

DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHTS (DRL)

During normal daylight operation, the Daytime Running Lights (DRL) operates automatically with the lighting control in **AUTO** position.

The DRL switches on automatically under the following conditions:

- The engine is running.
- The gear selector is out of Park (**P**).
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is not applied. Market dependent.
- Auto lights are selected and high ambient light levels are detected.

Turn the lightning control to neutral position to switch off the DRL. Switching off the DRL causes the instrument panel to display a temporary warning message.

The DRL switches on again automatically when the vehicle is no longer stationary. A temporary warning message is displayed.

If the DRL are manually switched off again, during the same drive cycle and while the vehicle is stationary, the DRL remain switched off until automatic operation is re-established.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

HEADLIGHT COURTESY DELAY

Headlight courtesy delay operates whenever the lighting control is in the **AUTO** position and the ignition is switched off. The headlights remain illuminated for up to 240 seconds.

Note: *The time delay may be changed via the* ***Vehicle Settings*** *menu. See* ***68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU****.*

Press the smart key's headlight button to switch the courtesy lights off.

APPROACH LIGHTS

Press the smart key's headlight button to illuminate the headlights remotely, for a programmed length of time. Press the button again to switch off. See **9, UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE**.

Note: *In some markets, a second press illuminates the reverse lights, and a third press is required to switch the lights off.*

WINDSCREEN WIPER DETECTION

If **AUTO** lights is selected and the windscreen wipers are switched on for 20 seconds or more, the side lights, tail lights, and headlights switch on automatically. When the wipers are switched off, the lights automatically switch off 2 minutes later.

DRIVING ABROAD

The requirement to adjust the headlights for driving abroad is dependent on the type of headlight fitted.

LED headlights have a beam pattern that eliminates the need to adjust the lights or add any external stick-on decal. Premium LED, Matrix LED, and Matrix-Laser LED headlights require the road driving side option to be changed within the instrument panel menu.

1. Select **Exterior Lighting** via the instrument panel.
2. Select **Headlights Driving**.
3. Select **Drive on Left** or **Drive on Right**, for the driving side of the road.

Note: *For vehicles fitted with a navigation system for each ignition cycle, the hand of traffic resets according to the region in which the vehicle is being driven.*

AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA)

⚠ **The Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA) system cannot be relied upon to activate or deactivate high beam in all potential circumstances. The driver remains responsible for the correct use of the headlights at all times.**

⚠ **Make sure that the forward-facing sensors on the rear of the rear-view mirror are not blocked or obstructed.**

The AHBA system automatically selects and deselects high beam, under specific conditions of road lighting and in the absence of other vehicle lights. The system is only active when the ambient light drops below a predetermined level. AHBA is enabled when the lighting control is in the**AUTO** position.

The driver can disable and re-enable the AHBA system at any time:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

- Select **Exterior Lighting** in the **Vehicle Settings** menu via the instrument panel.
- Select **Headlights High Beam**.
- Select **Auto High Beam Assist ON** or **OFF**.

The AHBA system only activates when the vehicle's speed exceeds 40 km/h (25 mph). The system deactivates when the vehicle's speed drops below 24 km/h (15 mph).

Push and release the lighting control to manually override to dipped beam from high beam. Rotate the collar to **AUTO** to return to AHBA. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **79, AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (GREEN)**

Push and release the lighting control to manually select high beam. Rotate the lighting control to **AUTO** to return to AHBA.

The following may affect the operation of the AHBA system:

- Highly reflective road signs.
- Dimly lit road users, e.g., cyclists or pedestrians.
- Adverse weather conditions, e.g., rain or fog.
- Dirty or obscured sensor.
- Dirty, damaged, or misted windscreen.
- Oncoming vehicles, partially obscured by a central motorway barrier.
- An icy or frosted windscreen.

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING SYSTEM (AFS)

The Adaptive Front lighting System (AFS) is active when the lighting control is in the **AUTO** position and dipped beams are switched on.

The AFS is deactivated when high beam is selected or dipped beam is not operating in **AUTO** mode, or when the vehicle is in Park (**P**).

While operating as an AFS, the dipped beams are automatically adjusted to suit the vehicle's speed and weather conditions:

- Country mode: A standard headlight beam that operates at vehicle speeds between 0 and 110 km/h (0 to 70 mph) when an urban environment is not detected. If an urban environment is detected, country mode operates from 48 km/h (30 mph).
- City mode: A wider headlight beam that operates at vehicle speeds up to 48 km/h (30 mph) when an urban environment is detected.
- Highway mode: A raised headlight beam that operates at vehicle speeds above 110 km/h (70 mph).
- Adverse weather mode: Operates when the windscreen wipers are active for more than 2 minutes and the vehicle's speed is below 64 km/h (40 mph).

ADAPTIVE DRIVING BEAM (ADB)

Note: *The Adaptive Driving Beam (ADB) system cannot be relied upon to activate or deactivate high beam in all possible circumstances. The driver remains responsible for the correct use of the headlights at all times.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Note: *Make sure that the forward-facing sensors on the rear of the rear-view mirror are not blocked or obstructed.*

ADB is defined as a system to evaluates the road scene ahead of the vehicle and automatically adapts the light distribution according to the position of the preceding and oncoming traffic. ADB is enabled when the lighting control is in the **AUTO** position and the ambient light level is below a predetermined level.

The driver can disable and re-enable the ADB system at any time:

- Select **Exterior Lighting** in the **Vehicle Settings** menu via the instrument panel.
- Select **Headlights High Beam**.
- Select **Adaptive Driving Beam ON** or **OFF**.

ADB is activated automatically once the vehicle's speed reaches 40 km/h (25 mph) and the camera does not detect an urban environment. ADB automatically deactivates when the vehicle's speed slows to 24 km/h (15 mph), when ambient light exceeds a predetermined level or when the gear selector is in Reverse (**R**).

Push and release the lighting control to manually override to dipped beam from ADB. Rotate the lighting control to the **AUTO** position to return to ADB. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **80, HIGH BEAM (BLUE)**

Push and release the lighting control to manually select normal high beam. Rotate the lighting control to the **AUTO** position to return to ADB.

Rotate the lighting control to the dipped beam to switch the ADB system off.

The following may affect operation of the ADB system:

- Highly reflective road signs.
- Dimly lit road users, e.g., cyclists or pedestrians.
- Adverse weather conditions, e.g., rain or fog.
- Dirty or obscured sensor.
- Dirty, damaged, or misted windscreen.
- Oncoming vehicles, partially obscured by a central motorway barrier.
- An icy or frosted windscreen.

DIRECTION INDICATORS

The animated direction indicator feature is in place to improve the side lights by a sequential activation of their light sources.

The driver can disable and re-enable the animated direction indicator at any time:

- Select **Exterior Lighting** in the **Vehicle Settings** menu via the instrument panel.
- Select **Direction Indicator**.
- Select **Animated ON** or **OFF**.

LASER HEADLIGHTS

Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources while dipped or high beam functions are operating.

Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the headlight.

The Laser Supplementary High Beam (LSHB) emits highly concentrated visible light, which can cause irritation or damage to the retina in the back of the eye. The LSHB modules used in these headlights are classified by legislation as Class 2M light-emitting diodes.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

The LSHB is an additional light which operates as part of the high beam system and extends its range. The LSHB system is enabled only when the lights are in **AUTO** mode and Adaptive Driving Beam (ADB) is also enabled.

LSHB is activated automatically once the vehicle's speed reaches 80 km/h (50 mph) and the camera does not detect other vehicle or street lights. LSHB automatically deactivates when the vehicle's speed slows to 75 km/h (47 mph).

To enable or disable the LSHB:

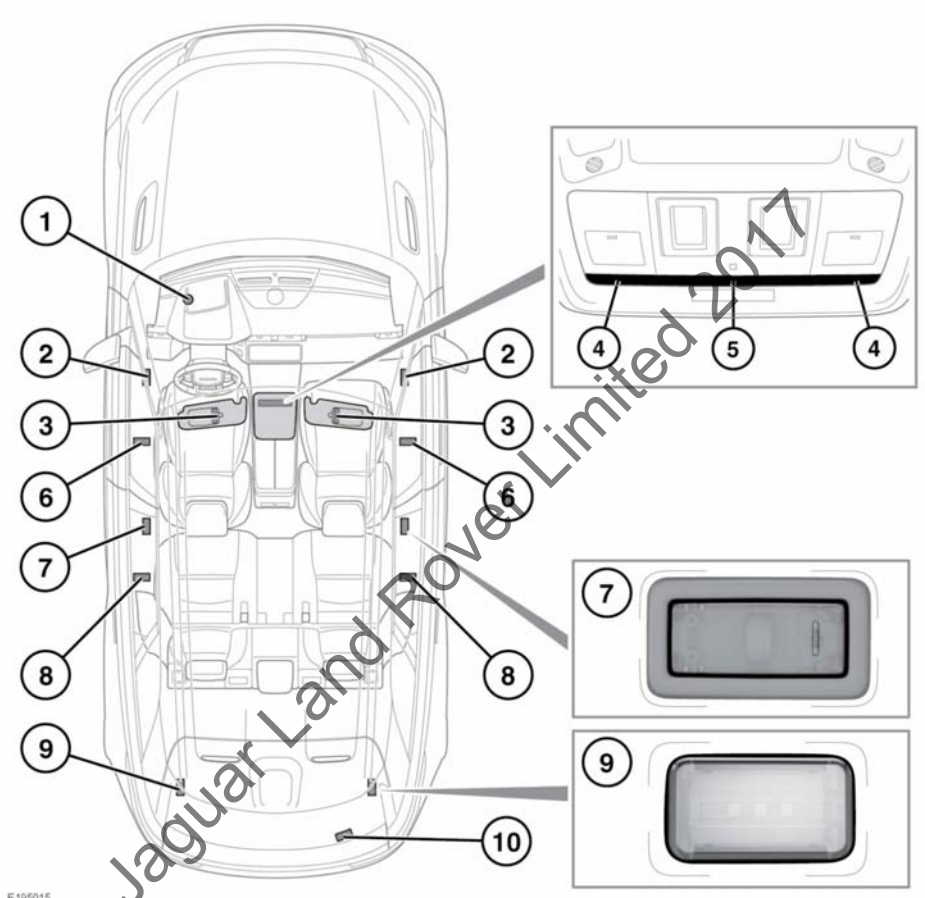
1. Select **Exterior Lighting** via the **Vehicle Settings** menu in the instrument panel.
2. Select **Headlights High Beam**.
3. Select **Laser High Beam ON** or **OFF**.

HEADLIGHT CONDENSATION

Misting of headlight lenses can occur under some atmospheric conditions. Performance of the lights is not affected and misting clears during normal operation.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

INTERIOR LIGHTS



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

1. Glovebox light: Open to illuminate.
2. Front footwell lights.
3. Vanity mirror lights: Lift the sun visor flap to illuminate.
4. Front reading lights: Touch the lens briefly to switch on or off.
5. Front interior courtesy light: Touch the lens briefly to switch on or off.
6. Front door illumination lights.
7. Rear interior courtesy and reading lights: Press the button to switch on or off.
8. Rear door illumination lights.
9. Loadspace lights.
10. Tailgate light.

Interior lights

All of the interior lights, except for the glovebox and the vanity mirror lights, illuminate automatically when the vehicle is unlocked or a door is opened. The lights extinguish approximately 20 seconds after all of the doors are closed, or when the vehicle is locked.

To switch automatic illumination of the interior lights off or on, continue to touch the front interior light lens (**6**) until the light flashes. **INTERIOR LIGHTS OFF** or **INTERIOR LIGHTS AUTO** is displayed in the instrument panel accordingly.

Note: *The loadspace lights automatically operate when the tailgate is opened. The on or off status of the interior lights' automatic illumination does not affect operation of these lights.*

INTERIOR LIGHTS INTENSITY

Use the interior illumination control to adjust the intensity of the instrument illumination. The exterior lights must be switched on while changes are being made. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

INTERIOR MOOD LIGHTING

The interior mood lighting can be adjusted for colour and intensity via the touch screen **Extra Features** menu. The exterior lights must be switched on while changes are being made. See **209, EXTRA FEATURES**.

STEALTH MODE

Note: *The interior illumination control does not operate while stealth mode is active. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.*

Stealth mode lowers the level of interior illumination to aid night time driving. Stealth mode can be enabled through the touch screen menu. See **211, GENERAL SETTINGS**.

Switch off the touch screen menu to activate stealth mode, when it's enabled. The touch screen can be switched off via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. If night time conditions exist when the touch screen is switched off, interior switch illumination and instrument panel back-lighting automatically reduce to the minimum light levels. Stealth mode is deactivated if night time conditions no longer exist, or if the touch screen is switched back on. See **202, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

WIPER OPERATION

Do not operate the wipers on a dry screen.

Remove any snow, ice, or frost from the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades, and the windscreen scuttle, before operating the wipers.

To avoid damage to the wiper blade, do not lift the wiper by the wiper blade. Always lift the wiper by the wiper arm.

To avoid damage to the bonnet, do not lift the wipers when they are in the normal parked position.

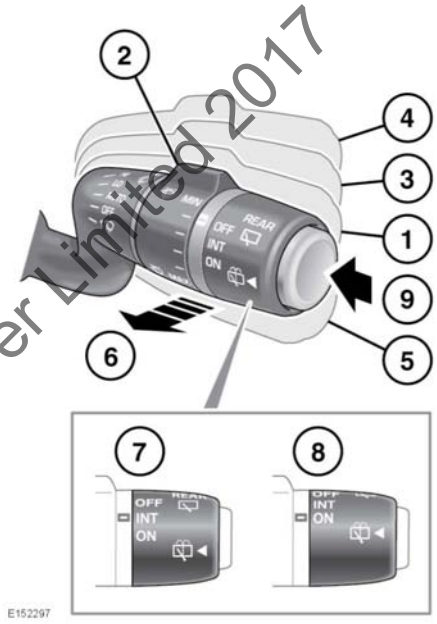
See **328, WIPERS SERVICE POSITION**.

Make sure the wipers are switched off before entering a car wash. If the wipers operate during the car washing process, damage may occur to the wiper mechanism.

Note: *If the wipers leave smears on the glass after the vehicle has been washed, this may be due to wax or other residue. Should this occur, clean the glass with the recommended screen washer fluid. See* ***389, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS****.*

Note: *The windscreen is no longer wiped effectively and the automatic rain sensing function degrades if the wipers become worn. Always replace worn or damaged wiper blades as soon as possible. The wipers service position moves the wipers to allow wiper blade replacement. See* ***328, WIPERS SERVICE POSITION****.*

Note: *If the wiper blades become stuck or jammed, an electronic cut-out temporarily halts the operation of the wipers. If this happens, switch off the wipers and the vehicle's ignition when safe to do so. Clear any obstructions and free the wiper blades before attempting to switch on the ignition.*



1. Vehicles with a rain sensor: Automatic rain sensing mode. The front wipers respond and adapt automatically to the ambient rain conditions. Select the appropriate wiper frequency for the prevailing conditions. The sensitivity of the system can be adjusted by rotating the collar (**2**). Vehicles without a rain sensor: Intermittent wipe. The time delay between wipes can be adjusted by rotating the collar (**2**).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

2. Vehicles with a rain sensor: Rotate the collar to adjust the sensitivity of the automatic rain sensing mode when position (**1**) is selected. The higher the sensitivity position, the more responsive the system becomes. When automatic rain sensing mode is selected, or when sensitivity is increased, the system performs a single wipe. Vehicles without a rain sensor: Rotate the collar to adjust the time delay between wipes when position (**1**) is selected. The higher the setting, the more frequently wipes occur.

   Note: *Wipe frequency increases with vehicle speed.*
3. Low speed continuous wipe.
4. High speed continuous wipe.
5. Single wipe of the windscreen, or hold down for further continuous wipes.
6. Front windscreen wash and wipe: Pull and release to operate the front washers and wipers. The wipers operate for two further wipes after the wash/wipe control is released. After a few seconds, a drip wipe function clears any residual washer fluid from the windscreen. If more washer fluid is required, pull and hold the wash/wipe control's position.

   Note: *The front wipers do not operate while the bonnet is open.*

   Note: *A very short pull and release operates the front washers only.*
7. **INT**: Rear wiper, intermittent operation. Wiper frequency increases with vehicle speed.
8. **ON**: Rear wiper, continuous operation.
9. Rear screen wash and wipe: Press and release to operate the rear washer and wiper. The wiper operates in a set cycle to minimise drips when the button is released. If more washer fluid is required, push and hold the button.

   Note: *When Reverse (**R**) gear is selected and the front wipers are operating, the rear wiper activates.*

   Note: *The rear wiper does not operate while the tailgate is open.*

RAIN SENSOR

Note: *Static droplets may not be detected on initial start-up. A single wipe should be used to clear the windscreen.*

Note: *If the wash/wipe control is turned to the **AUTO** position, the wipers do not operate if either of the front doors are open.*

Note: *In dry and often sunny conditions, optical influences and dirt accumulation on the windscreen may result in the windscreen wipers activating inadvertently. To prevent this, it is recommended that under these conditions, the wash/wipe control is returned to the **OFF** position.*

The rain sensor is mounted on the inside of the windscreen, behind the rear-view mirror. The sensor is able to detect the presence and amount of water on the windscreen, and automatically activates the windscreen wipers accordingly.

To activate the rain sensitive wipers, move the wash/wipe control to the **AUTO** position. Rotate the collar (**2**) to adjust the behaviour of the system to suit the driver's preference (**2**).

The rain sensor feature can be enabled or disabled via the **Vehicle Settings** menu in the instrument panel. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

SPEED-DEPENDENT MODE

If the vehicle's speed drops below 8 km/h (5 mph) with the wipers operating, the wipers switch to the next lowest speed. When the vehicle's speed increases to over 8 km/h (5 mph), the original wiper speed setting is restored.

Vehicles without a rain sensor fitted also increase the frequency of the intermittent front wipe when the vehicle's speed increases.



The speed-dependent mode feature can be enabled or disabled by a retailer/authorised repairer.

DRIP WIPE

If the drip wipe feature is configured, the wipers operate a few seconds after a wash and wipe cycle has finished. The drip wipe feature clears any remaining drips from the windscreen.



The drip wipe feature can be enabled or disabled by a retailer/authorised repairer.

HEADLIGHT WASHERS

Note: *The headlight washers operate only if the headlights are switched on and there is sufficient washer fluid in the reservoir.*

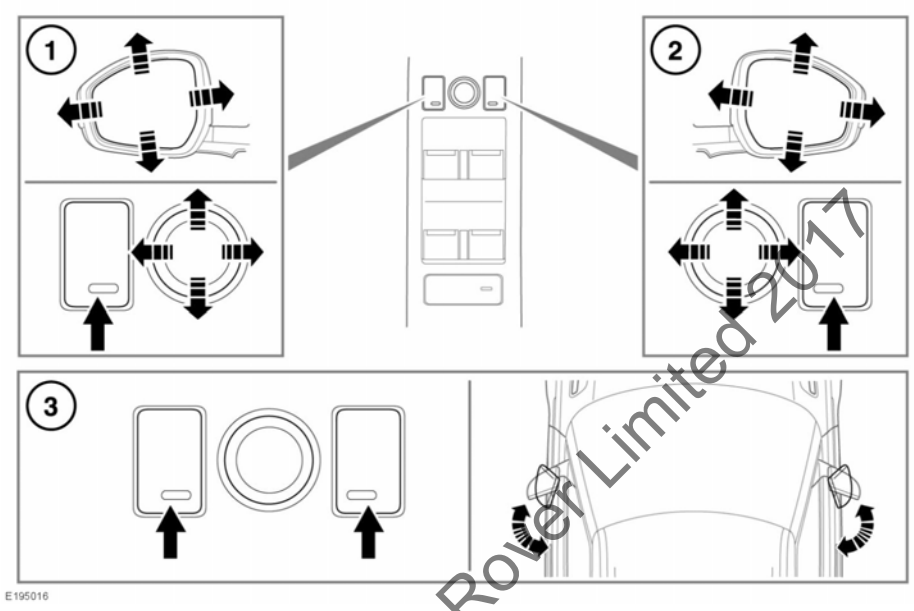
The headlight wash feature operates automatically with the windscreen wash. The feature operates every fourth operation of the screen washers. The feature operates if the headlights are switched on and approximately 10 minutes has elapsed since the last headlight wash.

Switching the headlights or the ignition off and back on again resets the cycle. See **83, LIGHTING CONTROL** and **131, SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Mirrors

DOOR MIRRORS



Note: *A thermal cut-out temporarily disables the power-fold feature if the buttons are operated repeatedly.*

Note: *The rear-view door mirror heaters operate automatically, according to the external temperature and the heated rear screen operation.*

Note: *An amount of knock protection is designed into the door mirrors. If a mirror is accidentally knocked inward or manually folded inward, the mirror head is disengaged from the folding mechanism. To re-engage the mechanism, fold and then unfold the mirror using the button.*

Note: *Depending on the type of lens used, distances may be difficult to judge accurately when only using the mirrors.*

Note: *If the mirrors were folded using the buttons, they do not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked.*

Note: *Up to three different door mirror positions can be stored and recalled using the driving position memory feature. See* ***33, SEAT POSITION MEMORY****.*

1. Left mirror adjustment.
2. Right mirror adjustment.
3. Power-fold: Press both buttons simultaneously to fold or unfold the mirrors. The power-fold feature operates only if the vehicle's speed is below 110 km/h (70 mph).

The door mirrors can be controlled for up to 5 minutes after the ignition is switched off, provided the driver's door is not opened.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Press the appropriate button to select the mirror to be adjusted. The button LED indicator lamp illuminates to confirm which side is active. Use the lighting control to adjust the mirror's glass.



The mirrors can be configured to automatically fold when the vehicle is locked and unfold when unlocked. The automatic folding and unfolding feature can be enabled or disabled by a retailer/authorised repairer.

If the mirrors are accidentally knocked out of position, e.g., so only one is folded, press both buttons simultaneously to re-synchronise.

MIRROR DIP WHEN REVERSING

The mirror-dip feature can be enabled or disabled via the **Vehicle Settings** menu. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Selecting Reverse (**R**) gear causes both door mirrors to automatically adjust, providing an improved viewing angle for reversing.

The dipped position of the mirror is a preset position. In **R**, the mirror can be adjusted, but the new position cannot be saved.

Note: *The preset dipped position of the mirror cannot be altered.*

When the gear selector is moved out of **R**, or if the vehicle's speed exceeds 12 km/h (7.5 mph) while reversing, the mirrors return to their previous position.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Garage door opener

RADIO FREQUENCY (RF) TRANSCEIVER

Do not use the Radio Frequency (RF) transceiver with any garage door opener that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature, as required by safety standards.

Do not use the RF transceiver with any garage door opener that was manufactured before April 1982.

When programming the RF transceiver to a garage door opener or entry gate, make sure that the area is clear of people and objects. Potential harm or damage may occur, as the gate or garage door activates during programming.

Do not attempt to program the garage door opener with the vehicle inside the garage.

The system may suffer from interference if operated in the vicinity of a mobile or fixed station transmitter. Interference is likely to affect the hand-held transmitter, as well as the RF transceiver.

See **98, INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE**.

The RF transceiver is also known as HomeLink®.

The HomeLink device is located in the rear-view mirror.

The hand-held transmitter is also known as a remote control.

The HomeLink wireless control system provides a convenient way to replace up to three remote controls. HomeLink can be used to activate devices such as gate operators, garage door openers, entry door locks, security systems, and home lighting.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

BEFORE PROGRAMMING

Unplug the remote device during programming of the remote device if repeated operation of the remote control is required. Repeated operation of the remote control during programming may result in damage to the remote device.

Note: *HomeLink® is compatible with a wide range of remote devices. For information on compatible devices and instructional videos, visit:* ***www.HomeLink.com***.

For the best results, fit a new battery to the remote control before programming. If the remote device's receiver is equipped with an antenna, make sure the antenna is extended.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

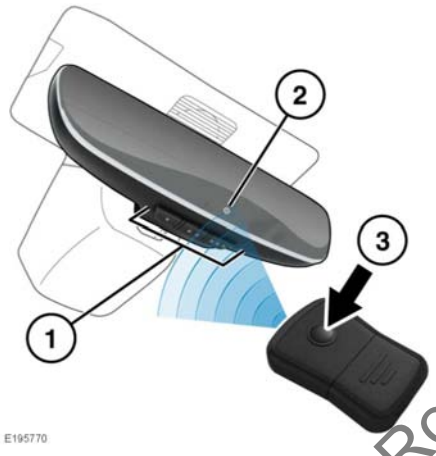
PROGRAMMING

Note: *The instructions below apply to the majority of HomeLink® compatible systems. However, there are some HomeLink applications, or HomeLink compatible systems, that require slightly different instructions. For more information and instructional videos, visit:* ***www.HomeLink.com***.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Garage door opener

Note: *Garage door openers manufactured after 1995 may be equipped with rolling code protection. If this is the case, a stepladder or other sturdy safe device may be required to reach the learn or smart button on the garage door opener.*



1. HomeLink buttons.
2. LED indicator.
3. Remote control for the device, e.g., garage door opener.

If required, erase the previous programming from the HomeLink device. See **98, TO ERASE ALL PROGRAMMING**.

To program the HomeLink device:

1. With the ignition switched on, press and release the required HomeLink button (**1**) on the rear-view mirror. The LED in the rear-view mirror's glass (**2**) flashes orange.
2. Position the end of the remote control (**3**) 2 to 8 cm from the HomeLink button.
3. Press and hold the button on the remote control. The LED on the rear-view mirror flashes green or continuously illuminates green. Release the remote control button.

   Note: *Some remote device systems require the operator to cycle the remote control button every 2 seconds during programming. Refer to the additional information in* ***Cycling the remote control*** *at the end of the* ***PROGRAMMING*** *instructions.*
4. Firmly re-press and release the programmed HomeLink button up to three separate times to activate the device. If the device activates, programming is complete. If the device does not activate, continue with steps **5** to **7**.
5. Locate the **learn** or **smart** button on the motor-head unit, located on the garage door opener's receiver.

   Note: *The* ***learn*** *or* ***smart*** *button can usually be found directly on the motor-head unit. If in doubt, refer to the garage door opener manual to identify the button.*
6. Firmly press and release the **learn** or **smart** button. There are typically 30 seconds to initiate Step **7**.
7. Return to the vehicle. Firmly press and release the programmed HomeLink button up to three separate times to activate the device. If the device activates, programming is complete.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Cycling the remote control

Some remote device systems have a remote control signal that only operates for a short period of time. The signal times-out before programming is complete. The operator is required to cycle the remote control button every 2 seconds during programming.

If experiencing difficulties while programming the remote device, carry out the following:

During programming of the remote device, replace programming step **3** with the following:

- Press and hold the HomeLink button. Simultaneously, press and release the remote control button every 2 seconds, until the LED indicator rapidly flashes green or continuously illuminates green. Release the HomeLink and remote control buttons.
- Continue the programming process from step **4**.

If the HomeLink LED indicator does not rapidly flashing green, or continuously illuminates green after performing these steps, contact HomeLink at: **www.homelink.com**.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

REPROGRAMMING A SINGLE GARAGE DOOR OPENER BUTTON

To program a remote device to a previously programmed HomeLink® memory button:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press and hold the required HomeLink memory button. After approximately 20 seconds, the LED starts to flash orange.
3. Release the button.
4. Follow the programming instructions from step **3** onwards, as described in **PROGRAMMING**.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

TO ERASE ALL PROGRAMMING

To erase all programming from the HomeLink® device:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press and hold the outer two HomeLink buttons until the LED on the rear view mirror changes from continuously illuminated orange to flashing green.

   Note: *Do not press and hold the buttons for longer than 20 seconds.*
3. Release the buttons. HomeLink is initialised and the previous settings of all three buttons are erased.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE

If the vehicle is sold, it is recommended that all programming is erased from the HomeLink® device.

Note: *Retain the original remote device's remote control handset for future programming requirements.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Garage door opener

Note: *The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorised modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

For information on the range of compatible remote devices, or for assistance, contact a retailer/authorised repairer. Alternatively, visit the HomeLink website: **www.HomeLink.com**.

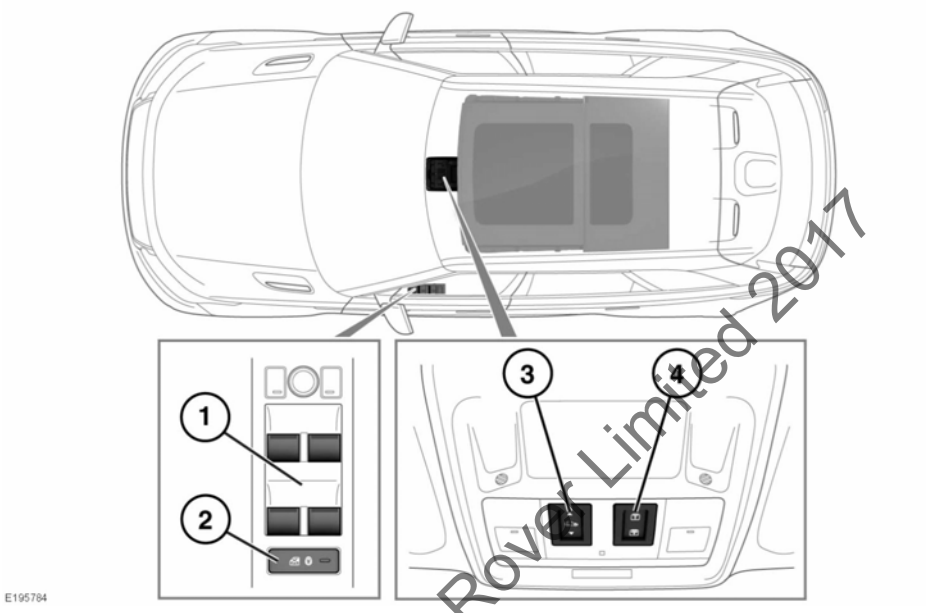
For Genie and Sommer garage door openers, go directly to the HomeLink website.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Windows

ELECTRIC WINDOWS



Make sure that the smart key is removed when leaving passengers in the vehicle. Removal of the smart key prevents unsupervised operation of the windows and sunroof, which may result in injury.

Any ice must be removed from the windows before operating.

1. Window switches:

   Note: *Each switch has a two-stage operation. Lightly press or pull and hold to manually operate to the required position. Alternatively, press or pull fully and release for one-touch operation. One-touch operation can be halted, at any time, by operating the switch again.*

   - Press the front of the switch to partially or fully open.
   - Pull the front of the switch to partially or fully close.

   Note: *The windows operate for 5 minutes after the engine is switched off, as long as none of the doors are opened.*

2. Rear window isolator and child safety locks. See **49, CHILD SAFETY LOCKS**.

   If children are carried in the rear seats, the isolator switch should be used to prevent operation of the rear windows.

3. Sunroof:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Note: *The front and rear of the switch has a 2-stage operation. Lightly press and hold to manually operate to the required position. Alternatively, press fully and release for one-touch operation. One-touch operation can be halted, at any time, by pressing the switch again.*

- With the sunroof closed, press the rear of the switch to partially or fully raise the sunroof to the tilt position. Press the rear of the switch again to partially or fully open the sunroof.

  Note: *If the sunroof blind is closed, the sunroof switch also opens the sunroof blind while operating the sunroof.*
- With the sunroof open, press the front of the switch to partially or fully close the sunroof.

To prevent accidental damage, make sure any roof rack load does not interfere with the opening of the sunroof.

4. Sunroof blind:

   Note: *The front and rear of the switch has a two-stage operation. Lightly press and hold to manually operate to the required position. Alternatively, press fully and release for one-touch operation. One-touch operation can be halted, at any time, by pressing the switch again.*

   - Press the rear of the switch to partially or fully open.
   - Press the front of the switch to partially or fully close.

     The sunroof blind can be opened whenever required, but it can only be closed when the sunroof is closed. If the sunroof is partially closed, the sunroof blind only partially closes to the same position.

Note: *If a resonance or a booming sound occurs when a rear window is open, lowering an adjacent front window by approximately 25 mm eliminates the condition.*

WINDOW ANTI-TRAP PROTECTION

Before closing a window, or the sunroof, make sure that no occupants have any body part in a position where it could be trapped. Even with an anti-trap system, death or serious injury could occur.

Closing a window or the sunroof onto any part of the body can result in serious injury.

Anti-trap protection is designed to stop window movement if an obstruction or resistance is detected. Check the window and its aperture, and remove any obstructions. The override procedure is as follows:

1. Attempt to close the window. Anti-trap prevents closure and lowers the window.
2. Within 10 seconds, attempt to raise the window again. Anti-trap prevents closure and lowers the window.
3. Attempt to close the window for a third time. Hold the switch in the close position. The window raises while the switch is held. Hold until closed.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Note: *If this procedure fails to remove the blockage, or if the windows do not operate correctly, the window may need to be reset. See* ***329, WINDOW RESET****.*

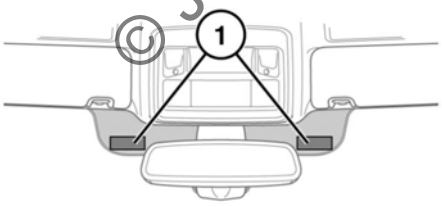
SUNROOF ANTI-TRAP MECHANISM

Before closing the sunroof or the roof blind, make sure that no occupants have any body part in a position where it could be trapped. Even with an anti-trap system, death or serious injury could occur.

To prevent serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle, the sunroof and roof blind have an anti-trap mechanism. If the sunroof, or the roof blind, encounters a resistance when closing, it stops. Dependent on its current position, it the either partially or fully opens, to allow the removal of any obstruction. Press and hold the front of the switch, within 10 seconds of the partial or full opening to override the anti-trap mechanism.

If the sunroof, or the roof blind, fails to operate correctly, it may need to be reset. See **328, SUNROOF RESET**.

SOLAR ATTENUATING GLASS



E198893

The solar attenuating glass windscreen filters sunlight passing through a special laminated layer.

Electronic actuating cards, such as toll road payment cards or Radio Frequency (RF) ID tags, can be fixed at the dedicated locations. The locations are on the inside of the windscreen. If the cards are located at any other part of a solar attenuating windscreen, the electronic scanners may not recognise them.

The optimal fixing location is at the top of the windscreen, as shown at (**1**), close to the interior rear-view mirror.

Note: *The electronic actuating card should be in the size appropriate location on the driver's side of the windscreen.*

Note: *Transponders, mounted on the front number plate plinth, can be used as an alternative, dependent on the market and availability.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

STORAGE COMPARTMENTS



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

⚠ **Make sure that any items stored in the vehicle are secure and cannot move. If the vehicle is involved in an accident or is subject to sudden braking or a change of direction, loose items can cause serious injury.**

Storage compartment locations:

1. Glovebox: Pull the release handle to open. The glovebox can be locked or unlocked using the emergency key blade mounted in the vehicle's smart key. See **9, UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE**.
2. Front cup holders.

⚠ **Do not drink or use the cup holders when driving.**

3. Cubby box: Push and hold the release button and then lift to open the cubby box lid. To close, lower the lid and lightly press to engage the catch.
4. Rear cup holders: Pull the tag at the top of the stored rear seat's armrest and lower.
5. Front door storage.
6. Front seat map pockets.
7. Rear door storage.

AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS

Only use approved accessories. Using any other equipment may damage the vehicle's electrical system and/or cause battery discharge. If in any doubt, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.

The engine should be running when using accessories for long periods. Failure to do so can discharge the battery.

Note: *Power sockets can be used to power approved accessories that use a maximum of 120 Watts.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Auxiliary power socket locations:

1. Front power socket or cigar lighter.
2. Centre and rear power sockets.
3. Rear seat power sockets.
4. Luggage compartment power socket.

Load carrying

LOAD CARRYING

Never allow passengers to travel in the loadspace under any circumstances. All vehicle occupants should be seated correctly and should wear a seat belt at all times when the vehicle is in motion.

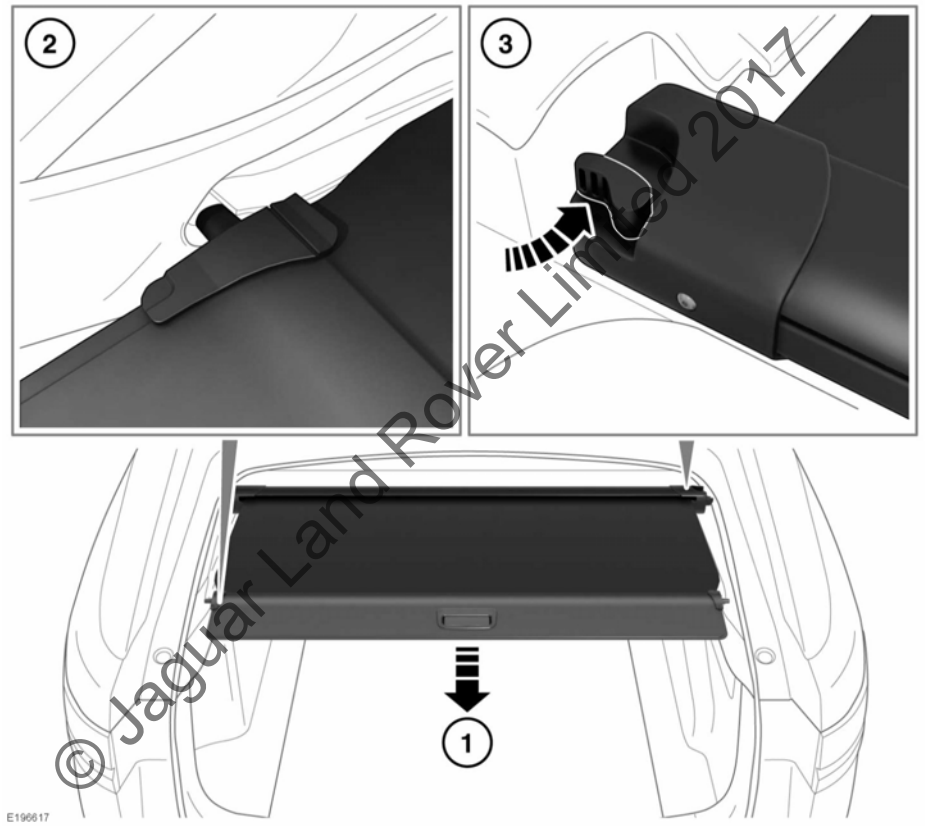
All items carried in the vehicle should be properly secured. If the vehicle is involved in an accident, or subject to sudden braking or a change of direction, loose items can cause serious injury.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

LOADSPACE COVER

Do not store the loadspace cover loose in the vehicle. During an accident or sudden manoeuvre, the loadspace cover could cause serious injury or death.

Never place objects on top of the loadspace cover. During an accident or sudden manoeuvre, loose objects could cause serious injury or death.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

1. Pull the rigid portion of the cover to unroll.
2. Engage the end pieces into the recessed areas moulded into the loadspace sides.

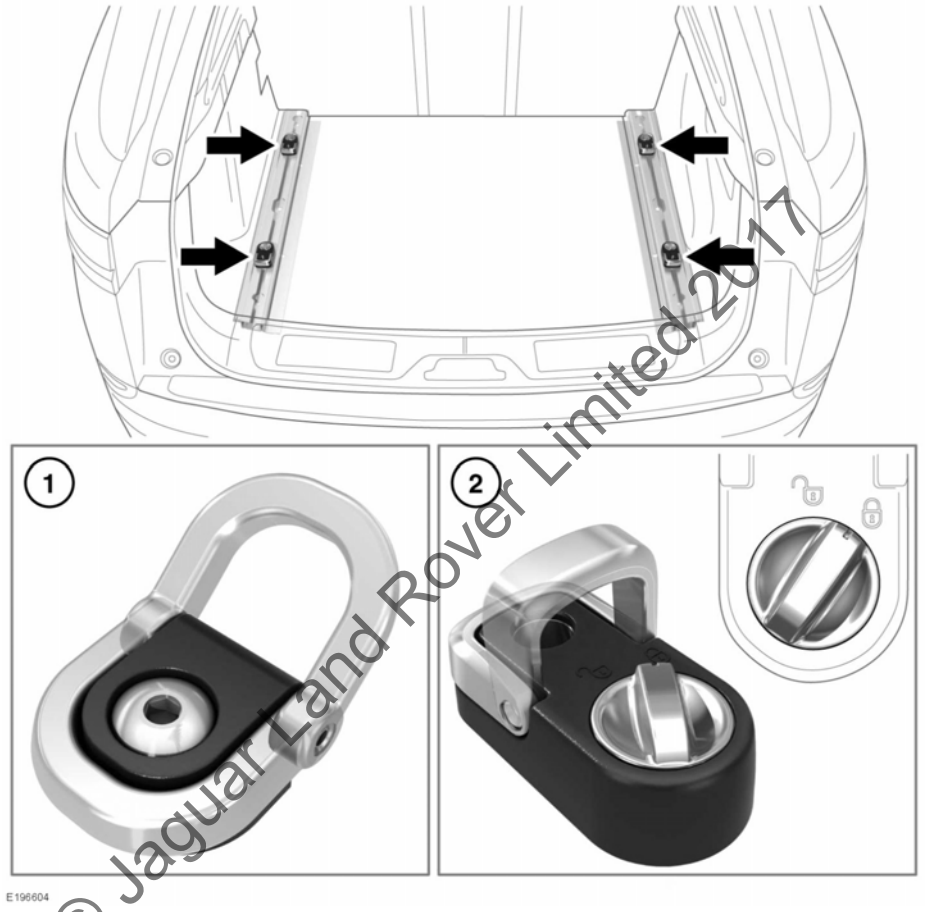
To retract the loadspace cover, disengage the ends from the recessed areas and allow the soft portion of the cover to retract into its housing.

3. To remove the cover, turn the release lever to unlock the assembly and disengage the pins from the sockets.

To refit the cover, engage the left side of the assembly into the recessed area. Engage the right side and push down into place until an audible click is heard.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

⚠ **All items carried in the loadspace area should be properly secured. If the vehicle is involved in an accident or is subject to sudden braking or a change of direction, loose items can cause serious injury.**

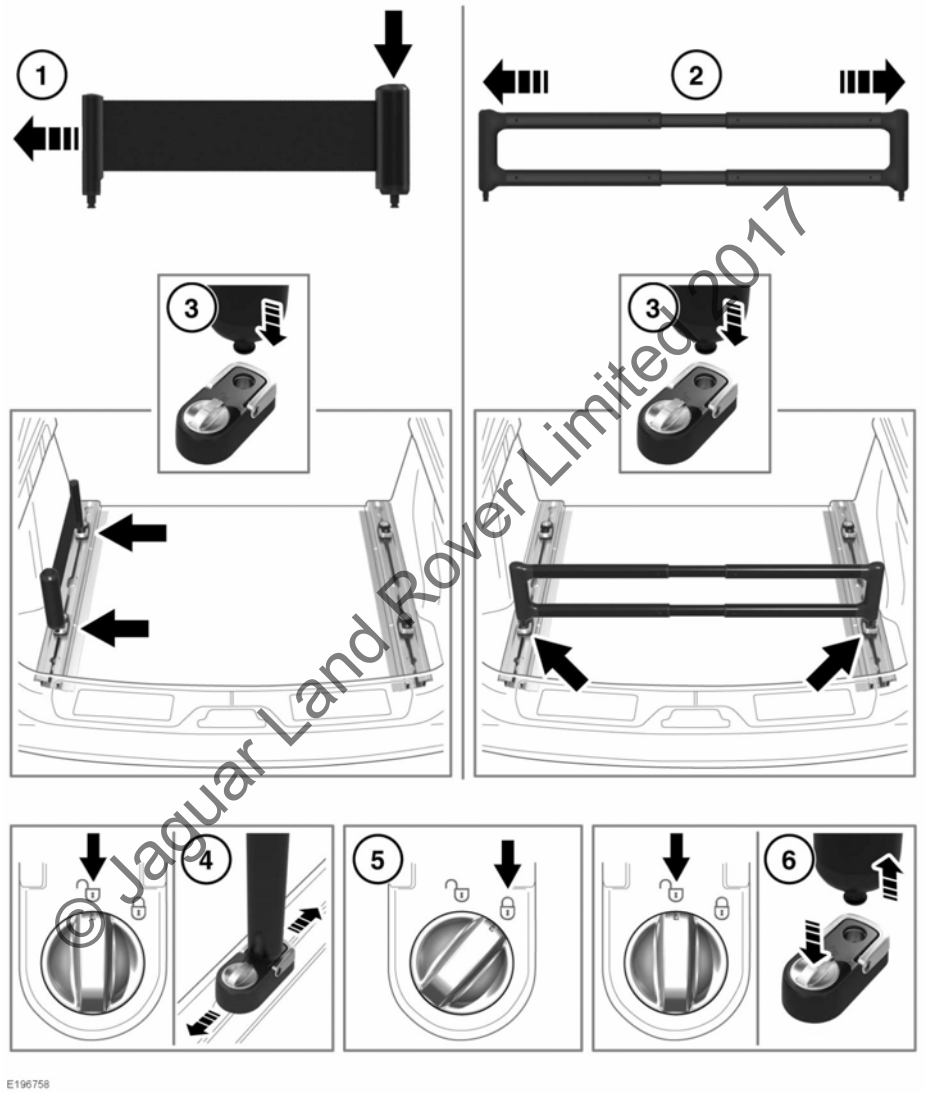
Note: *A range of approved luggage retention accessories is available from a retailer/authorised repairer.*

1. To assist in safely securing large items of luggage, four lashing eyes are located in the rear loadspace floor.

2. If adjustable lashing eyes are fitted, turn the locking mechanism counter-clockwise to unlock. Press the mechanism and slide to the required position on the luggage rail. Release the mechanism to latch into position. Move the lashing eye slightly, until is sounds click. The lashing eye is now secured. Turn the mechanism clockwise to lock.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

LUGGAGE DIVIDER



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

A luggage divider kit is provided, to assist with safely securing items of luggage to the loadspace floor.

Load carrying

Floor-mounted luggage rails provide a full width mounting channel that accommodates a flexible retracting band or a solid telescopic divider, to retain soft and hard luggage of all shapes and sizes.

1. Press and then pull the retracting band until the required length is reached.

   Note: *The retracting band should only be used along the side of the loadspace floor, as illustrated.*

2. Adjust the divider to the required length.
3. Unlock the appropriate lashing eye, and attach the retracting band and divider.
4. With the lashing eye in the unlocked position, press the mechanism and slide to the required position on the luggage rail.
5. Lock the lashing eye in the required position.
6. To remove the retracting band and divider from the lashing eye, unlock the lashing eye and press the lock or unlock mechanism to release.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

TOWING WEIGHTS

Make sure to not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), the Gross Train Weight (GTW), or the front and rear axle weights. See **391, WEIGHTS**.

Note: *Include the trailer's nose weight when calculating the GVW.*

Note: *When calculating the vehicle's rear axle weight, the vehicle's payload weights must also be considered. Include the combined weights of all the rear passengers, the luggage compartment, roof rack, accessory equipment, and the trailer's nose weight.*

Trailer	Variant	Weight (kg)
Technically permissible maximum towable mass (Unbraked Trailers).	All vehicles.	750
Technically permissible maximum towable mass (Trailers with Overrun Brakes).	3.0L Diesel and 3.0L Petrol	2 500
	2.0L Diesel 240 PS	2 500
	2.0L Petrol and 2.0L Diesel 180 PS	2 400
Technically permissible maximum static vertical load/mass of the vehicle's coupling point.	All vehicles.	175
Maximum trailer nose weight.*	All vehicles.	100
Tow ball mounted accessories.	All vehicles.	66.8

*For every kg above 100 kg added to the trailer's nose weight, the same weight must be removed from the vehicle's payload. Make sure that the GVW and the rear axle weights are not exceeded.

Note: *For every 1 000 metres increase above sea level, the GTW must be reduced by 10%.*

Note: *For further information, contact a retailer/authorised repairer and quote the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). See **387, LABEL LOCATIONS**.*

Europe only

When towing, the maximum GVW can be increased by 100 kg, provided that the vehicle's road speed is limited to 97 km/h (60 mph).

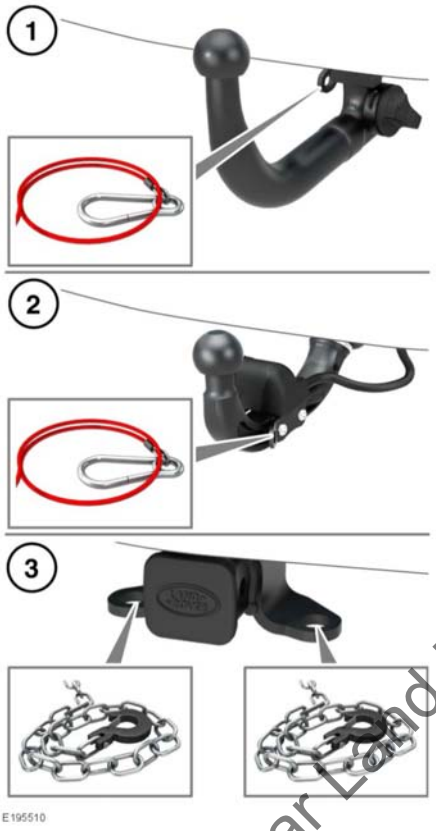
TOW BALL OPTIONS

Note: *The tow bar options are dependent on the market and the vehicle's specification.*

Note: *When towing, make sure that a breakaway cable, or breakaway chains, are attached at the correct locations, as illustrated.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Towing



The available tow bar options for this vehicle are:

1. Detachable tow bar.
2. Electrically deployable tow bar.
3. Trailer hitch tow bar (Australia and New Zealand only). The fitting of a trailer hitch tow ball is required for towing with this tow bar. See **119, TRAILER HITCH (Australia and New Zealand only)**.

TRAILER STABILITY ASSIST (TSA)

Note: *The Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) system does not operate in the event of the trailer jack-knifing.*

Note: *The TSA system does not operate when Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is switched off.*

Note: *The TSA system performance may reduce when travelling on slippery surfaces.*

When a trailer is correctly attached to the vehicle, the TSA system automatically detects when trailer sway is developing. When active, the TSA system gradually reduces the vehicle's speed by reducing engine power and applying the brakes to help regain stability control.

HITCH ASSIST

The driver is always responsible for calculating the correct distances and manoeuvring the vehicle to a trailer's tow hitch. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle and trailer.

Note: *The hitch assist system displays an approximation for the vehicle's tow ball position and the required trajectory to a trailer's tow hitch.*

Note: *Accuracy of the hitch assist system is affected by the height of the trailer's tow hitch compared to the height of the vehicle's tow ball. The maximum height difference should be no more than 3 cm.*



The hitch assist system displays a rear-view guidance image to aid the process of reversing the vehicle to a trailer's tow hitch.

Operate as follows:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

1. Select Reverse (**R**) to automatically display a rear-view image on the touch screen.
2. Dependent on the specification of the vehicle's camera system, use one of the following options:
   - Touch the on-screen **hitch assist** icon to display the guidance lines for vehicles with a single rear camera system. See **267, REAR CAMERA**.
   - Touch the **settings** icon to display the **CAMERA SETTINGS** menu for vehicles with a surround camera system. Select **ON** from the **Hitch Assist** option to display the guidance lines. See **199, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM**.
3. Reverse the vehicle toward the trailer.
4. As the vehicle closes to within 600 mm of the trailer's tow hitch, an automated zoom feature operates to enlarge the view.
5. Continue the manoeuvre until the vehicle and trailer are as close as required.

TOW ASSIST

Note: *Only use towing equipment that is approved by the vehicle manufacturer. Non-approved towing equipment may adversely affect the accuracy and performance of the vehicle's towing features.*

Tow assist displays the predicted path when reversing with a correctly connected and calibrated trailer. The touch screen displays coloured trajectory lines.



E134952

Tow assist requires a tracking target sticker to be affixed to a connected trailer, in the same orientation as illustrated. To display the correct sticker location for the trailer, follow the on-screen instructions for the new trailer configuration menus on the touch screen.

Note: *The tracking target sticker must be affixed at a distance of between 1 m and 2 m from the rear of the vehicle. The tracking target sticker must be affixed to a flat vertical surface that is parallel to the rear of the vehicle. Tow assist does not operate correctly if these conditions are not met.*

Tow assist automatically enables when the vehicle detects a trailer's electrical plug is correctly attached to the vehicle's electrical towing socket.



To manually enable tow assist, touch the **tow assist** icon on the **CAMERAS** menu screen. See **199, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM**.

Switch the ignition off when connecting to the vehicle's electrical towing socket. After connection, switch the ignition on to enable the vehicle to detect the connection.

Note: *If the ignition is switched on during connection, opening and closing the driver's door enables the vehicle to detect the connection.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

When an electrical towing socket connection is detected, the touch screen guides the driver through a set of menus. Create a new trailer profile, or select an existing trailer profile.

When connecting a new trailer, the setup screens guide the driver through a series of configuration options for the connected trailer. When complete, the vehicle needs to be driven with the steering wheel in the straight ahead position, to calibrate the trailer. The touch screen displays the status. Select **OK**, when complete.

Note: *Tow assist should not be used until the trailer calibration is complete.*

In the event of persistent problems with the configuration or calibration of a trailer, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

When a trailer configuration is created, or selected, the touch screen automatically displays the trailer reverse view when Reverse (**R**) is selected. The trailer reverse view touch screen display has two options. Select **Rear Camera** for a full rear view, or select **Wing Mirror Cameras** for a kerb view of each side.

ADVANCED TOW ASSIST

The driver is always responsible for detecting obstacles, and for estimating both the trailer and the vehicle's distance from them, when manoeuvring. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.

The driver must always control the vehicle's speed via normal driving operation of the accelerator pedal and the brake pedal. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.

Note: *Using towing equipment approved by the vehicle manufacturer is recommended. Non-approved towing equipment may adversely affect the accuracy, performance, and safety of the vehicle's towing features.*

Note: *Advanced tow assist does not operate if the tailgate is open or unlatched. In this event, the touch screen displays a message.*

Note: *Advanced tow assist does not operate if the All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) feature is enabled.*



Advanced tow assist automatically operates the steering when the vehicle is driven in reverse with a correctly connected trailer. The driver only needs to operate the steering wheel to override the automatic steering operation.

The intended trajectory path to reverse a connected trailer is viewed and adjusted on-screen. The vehicle's camera views also display on-screen.

Operate as follows:

1. Connect and calibrate a trailer to the vehicle. See **115, TOW ASSIST** . The **advanced tow assist** icon then displays on the **CAMERAS** menu screen. See **199, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM**.

   Note: *Failure to correctly connect and calibrate a trailer causes the advanced tow assist feature to be unavailable for selection, i.e., the icon is not displayed.*

2. Touch the **advanced tow assist** icon to enable the feature.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

To confirm selection, an on-screen confirmation message displays. The **advanced tow assist** icon also displays in the driver's side rotary control on the lower touch screen. See **180, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

Note: *A pop-up menu displays on-screen information if advanced tow assist cannot be enabled.*

Rotate the driver's side rotary control on the lower touch screen, to set the trailer's intended steering trajectory path, as displayed on-screen. Press and hold the rotary control for more than 3 seconds to set a straight line reversing trajectory. When driven, the vehicle automatically steers so that the reversing trailer follows the intended steering trajectory path. If the driver operates the steering wheel to override the automatic steering operation, the touch screen displays a cancelled message.

The screen displays two trailer images:

- The solid image indicates the current position of the trailer.
- The outline image indicates the intended trajectory path for the trailer.

The outline image changes colour to indicate the current status of the reversing trailer:

- Green lines indicate the trailer is reversing in a straight line.
- Magenta lines indicate the trailer is reversing at an angle.
- Red lines indicate the trailer's reversing angle is too acute.

The maximum operational speed for advanced tow assist is 8 km/h (5 mph). If this speed is exceeded, advanced tow assist automatically disables and the touch screen displays a message.

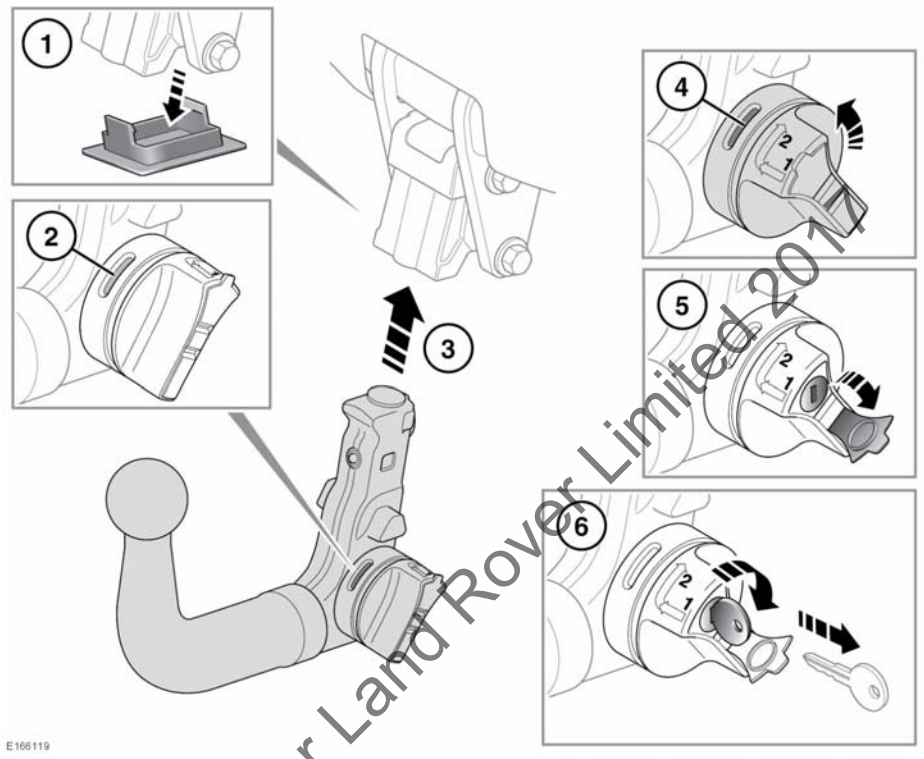
To disable advanced tow assist, either:

- Engage the transmission into an alternative gear, i.e., deselect Reverse (**R**).
- Touch the **advanced tow assist** icon on the camera menu screen.

An on-screen cancelled message displays. The driver's side rotary control extinguishes the **advanced tow assist** icon and reverts back to operation of the previously selected feature.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

FITTING THE DETACHABLE TOW BALL



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

⚠ **The detachable tow ball is very heavy, extreme care must be taken when handling it. Make sure that no part of the body is below the tow ball when fitting and removing. Use both hands to maintain secure handling of the tow ball.**

When the detachable tow ball is not required for immediate use, it should be removed from the tow bar and stored securely. The detachable tow ball should always be securely strapped when stored in the vehicle. For example, strapped to an anchorage point in the rear luggage compartment.

To fit the detachable tow ball, proceed as follows:

1. Remove the protective cover by pulling it downward from the tow bar. Store the protective cover in a safe place.

Note: *Note the orientation of the protective cover to enable refitting.*

2. Make sure that red is displayed in the handwheel aperture, to confirm that the handwheel is in the unlocked position.

   Note: *If black is displayed in the handwheel aperture, push and turn the handwheel clockwise until red is displayed.*

3. Using both hands, push the detachable tow ball into the tow bar until an audible click is heard to confirm correct fitting.
4. Correct fitting of the tow ball is confirmed when the handwheel automatically rotates and green is displayed in the aperture.
5. Gently pull the protective cover to release it from the key slot.
6. Insert the key. Turn the key clockwise to lock the detachable tow ball's handwheel. Remove the key and refit the protective cover. Store the key in a safe place.

When the detachable tow ball is not required for immediate use, it should be removed and stored securely. See **119, REMOVING THE DETACHABLE TOW BALL**.

REMOVING THE DETACHABLE TOW BALL

Never leave the detachable tow ball loose in the vehicle. In the event of heavy braking or an accident, it can become a projectile, resulting in serious injury or death.

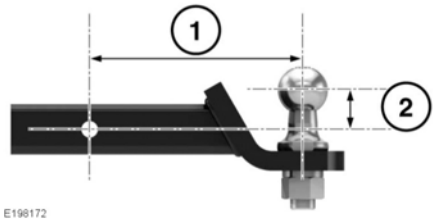
The detachable tow ball is very heavy, extreme care must be taken when handling it. Make sure that no part of the body is below the tow ball when fitting and removing. Use both hands to maintain secure handling of the tow ball.

To remove the detachable tow ball, proceed as follows:

1. Insert the key. Turn the key counter-clockwise to unlock the detachable tow ball's handwheel.
2. Remove the key. Store the key in a safe place.
3. Support the detachable tow ball. Push and turn the handwheel clockwise to release the detachable tow ball from the tow bar.
4. Refit the protective cover into the vehicle's tow bar mounting.
5. Refit the protective cover into the detachable tow ball's key slot.

Securely store the detachable tow ball in a safe place. See **118, FITTING THE DETACHABLE TOW BALL**.

TRAILER HITCH (Australia and New Zealand only)



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Towing

A trailer hitch tow ball is required for the trailer hitch tow bar. See **113, TOW BALL OPTIONS**.

When a trailer hitch tow ball is fitted, the following dimensions must be adhered to:

1. The maximum length is 220 mm.
2. The minimum ball height is 40 mm.

If required, consult a retailer/authorised repairer for the latest information.

ELECTRICALLY DEPLOYABLE TOW BALL

Make sure that the electrically deployable tow ball is fully deployed before connecting a trailer. Failure to do so can result in a loss of control of the vehicle and trailer, potentially causing serious injury or death.

In the interests of safety, it is recommended to fully stow the electrically deployable tow ball when not in use. Failure to do so can potentially result in personal injury or vehicle damage.

Note: *To maintain control of the vehicle, apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) during operation of the electrically deployable tow ball.*

Before activating the electrically deployable tow ball, make sure that:

- The vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle's transmission is engaged in Park (**P**) or Neutral (**N**).
- Any trailer is unhitched.
- Any electrical connection to the tow bar's electrical socket is disconnected.

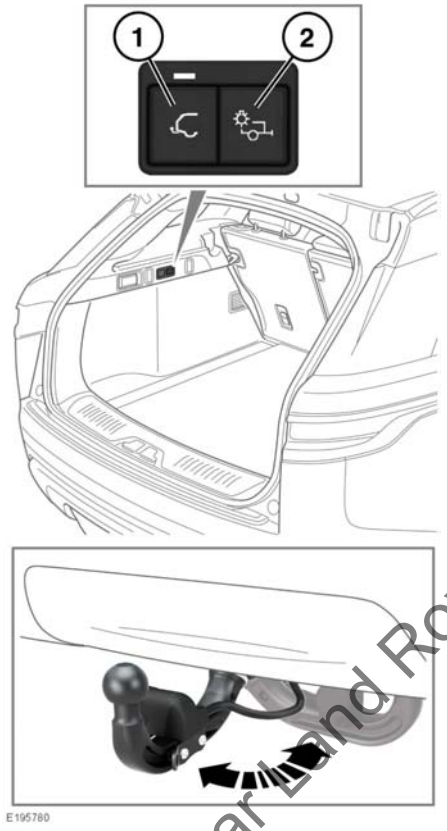
Failure to comply with the listed conditions prevents the electrically deployable tow ball from operating.

The electrically deployable tow ball is stowed out of view, underneath the centre of the rear bumper. Make sure that no obstructions are within close proximity before operating.

If the electrically deployable tow ball is operated many times in succession, operation may be suspended for 90 minutes. In this event, normal tow ball operation resumes after 90 minutes.

The electrically deployable tow ball is stowed and deployed via the **Tow Bar** extra feature on the touch screen. Follow the on-screen instructions. See **209, EXTRA FEATURES**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017



The electrically deployable tow ball is also stowed and deployed via the buttons located in the luggage compartment. Open the tailgate to enable the buttons.

Note: *The luggage compartment buttons do not operate if the tailgate is closed.*

Operation is as follows:

1. The electrically deployable tow ball button: Press and release to deploy the tow ball. Press and release again to stow the tow ball.

The LED indicator lamp, by the side of the button, flashes slowly while the tow ball deploys or stows. An audible tone also sounds.

When fully deployed, the LED indicator lamp stops flashing and remains illuminated.

When fully stowed, the LED indicator lamp stops flashing. The lamp remains illuminated for 2 seconds and then extinguishes.

To stop operation of the tow ball, press the electrically deployable tow ball button. To reset the tow ball, press the electrically deployable tow ball button again. During the reset operation, the tow ball fully stows and then fully deploys.

If an obstruction occurs during operation, the tow ball movement stops. The LED indicator lamp flashes faster, accompanied by a 2 second warning tone. When the obstruction is cleared, press the electrically deployable tow ball button to reset the tow ball.

In the event that the tow ball ceases operation and is neither fully deployed or stowed, the LED indicator lamp flashes. Press the electrically deployable tow ball button to reset.

If the vehicle is driven with the tow ball partially deployed or partially stowed, a warning tone sounds for 10 seconds. Do not tow with the tow ball in this state.

If the tow ball fails to stow in extreme low temperatures, press and hold the electrically deployable tow ball button for 10 seconds. The stowing operation then resumes.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

In the event of unexpected operation, press the electrically deployable tow ball button to reset the tow ball.

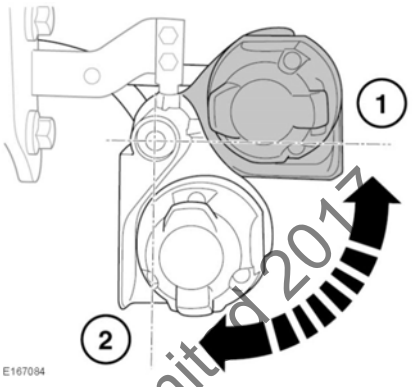
2. Trailer bulb check button: Press to start a 3 minute test sequence for both the vehicle and the trailer's lights. The trailer bulb check can also be enabled using the touch screen, via the **Tow Bar** extra feature. Follow the on-screen instructions.
   For the test to operate correctly, switch off the vehicle's lights, apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB), and switch off the ignition. Switching the ignition off also switches the touch screen off. Press the sound system's power button to switch the touch screen on again.
   The vehicle's lights and all of the trailer's lights operate at the same time so that a visual check can be made of all the lights.
   Press the trailer bulb check button again to stop the test sequence at any time. Alternatively, manually switch on the vehicle's lights, or switch the ignition on.

Note: *The test feature only allows an observer to check that the lights are illuminating. The vehicle does not perform any measurements during this test. Hence, faulty trailer lights do not show any errors during this test.*

TRAILER ELECTRICAL CONNECTION

Note: *Only attach appropriate electrical connectors, which are in good condition, to the trailer socket. Using inappropriate towing equipment may adversely affect the accuracy and performance of the vehicle's towing features.*

Note: *Only use electrical equipment that requires a 12 volt supply from the vehicle.*



The detachable tow ball's trailer socket should be manually deployed (**2**) and stowed (**1**), as illustrated.

The electrically deployable tow ball's trailer socket deploys and stows automatically with the tow ball.

When a trailer's electrical connection is made and the vehicle's direction indicators are used, the trailer warning indicator flashes in time with the direction indicators. See **80, TRAILER DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)**.

In the event that the vehicle's direction indicator is used and the symbol does not flash, the trailer's connection should be checked. Take appropriate action to make sure that the trailer's direction indicators are functioning correctly.

The information in the following table helps to confirm if a trailer or a lighting board is compatible for use with this vehicle. If these conditions are not met, the vehicle will not detect the electrical connection of a trailer or a lighting board.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Function	Minimum load		Maximum load	
	Amps	Watts	Amps	Watts
Brake lights.	0.10	1.20	10	120
Direction indicators, left side.	0.05	0.60	5	60
Direction indicators, right side.	0.05	0.60	5	60
Side markers lights, left side.	-	-	5	60
Side markers lights, right side.	-	-	5	60
Reverse lights.	-	-	5	60
Fog lights.	-	-	5	60
Permanent battery feed.	-	-	15	180
Ignition feed.	-	-	15	180

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Australia only

Some vehicles may have the provision for the connection of an electric trailer brake module, located near the driver's position. The information in the following table helps to confirm if an electric trailer brake module is compatible for use with these vehicles. If in doubt contact a retailer/ authorised repairer.

Function	Maximum amps load
Permanent feed.	30
Brake signal	2
Illumination supply	2
Electric brake connection to tow bar electrical socket.	30

ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

⚠ **Do not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), maximum rear axle weight, maximum trailer weight, or nose weight. Exceeding any of these limits could cause instability and a loss of control, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.**

⚠ **Do not loop the breakaway cable or safety chain over the tow ball. The cable or chain may slide off, preventing correct operation in the event that a connected trailer becomes detached when towing. Failure to correctly connect a breakaway cable or chain can potentially result in serious injury or death.**

Make sure to perform the following essential towing checks:

- To maintain the vehicle's stability, the trailer's nose weight should not exceed 7% of the trailer's gross weight.
- The trailer's nose weight must be at least a minimum of 4% of the trailer's gross weight.
- When towing a trailer with more than one axle, load the trailer to achieve even weight distribution between the axles.
- When calculating the laden weight of the trailer, remember to include the weight of the trailer, plus the weight of the load.
- If the load can be divided between the vehicle and the trailer, loading more weight into the vehicle generally improves stability. Do not exceed the vehicle's weight limits.
- Increase the rear tyre pressures on the towing vehicle to those for the maximum vehicle loading conditions.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

- Make sure that a suitable breakaway cable, safety chain, or secondary coupling is used. Refer to the trailer manufacturer's instructions for guidance.
- Always connect the breakaway cable or safety chain to the provided connection point. Do not loop it over the tow ball.
- Make sure that the tow ball is secure.
- Check the operation of all the lights on the trailer.

TOWING A TRAILER

Only fit towing accessories approved by the vehicle manufacturer. Always use the towing accessories correctly, according to the manufacturer's instructions. Using non-approved towing accessories may adversely affect the handling and stability of the vehicle, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.

Never use the vehicle's towing eyes or lashing points for towing a trailer. Doing so may cause serious damage to the vehicle, and may cause a loss of control, potentially leading to an accident. The potential result can be serious injury or death.

Never exceed the maximum weights for either the vehicle or the trailer. Doing so can cause accelerated wear and damage to the vehicle, and adversely affect the vehicle's stability and braking. Serious injury or death can also result from a possible loss of control, a vehicle rollover, or an accident.

Do not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), maximum rear axle weight, maximum trailer weight, or the trailer's nose weight. Doing so can cause accelerated wear and damage to the vehicle, and adversely affect the vehicle's stability and braking. Serious injury or death can also result from a possible loss of control leading to an accident.

Note: *When calculating the vehicle's rear axle weight, the vehicle's payload weights must also be included. Hence, add the combined weights of all the rear passengers, the vehicle's luggage, roof rails, accessory equipment, and the nose weight.*

Note: *Include the trailer's nose weight when calculating the GVW.*

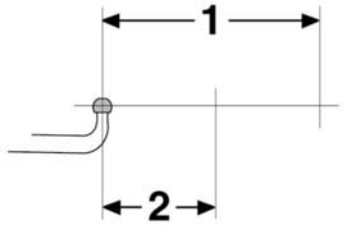
Note: *A reduction in the performance of the Air Conditioning (A/C) system is a normal function under high load towing conditions.*

The engine's power output always reduces with increased altitude. At 1 000 m above sea level, and for every extra 1 000 m, deduct 10% from the Gross Train Weight (GTW). See **113, TOWING WEIGHTS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

TOW BALL MOUNTED ACCESSORIES

Before fitting a tow ball mounted accessory, make sure that it has been approved by the vehicle manufacturer. The use of unsuitable equipment can result in severe damage to the tow ball and the tow bar.



E178990

Before fitting an accessory to the tow ball, observe the following guidelines:

1. The attached accessory must not protrude more than 700 mm from the tow ball.
2. The centre of gravity of the mounted equipment and load combined should not exceed a distance of 390 mm from the tow ball. The maximum weight at this distance must not exceed 66.8 kg.

Note: *The forces exerted by the trailer's nose weight and tow ball mounted accessories are different in nature, so a separate limit applies to both.*

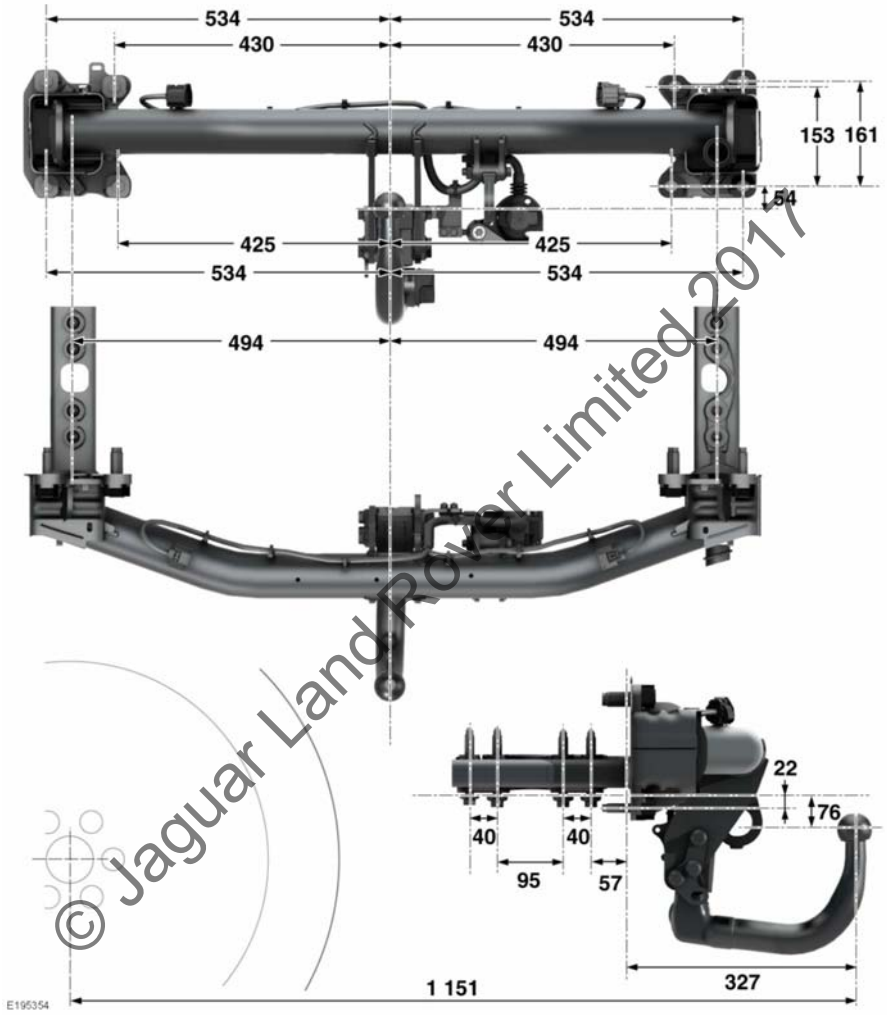
TOW BAR DIMENSIONS AND MOUNTING POINTS

Note: *The following information refers to towing equipment officially released by the vehicle manufacturer.*

Note: *The illustrated dimensions are given in mm.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

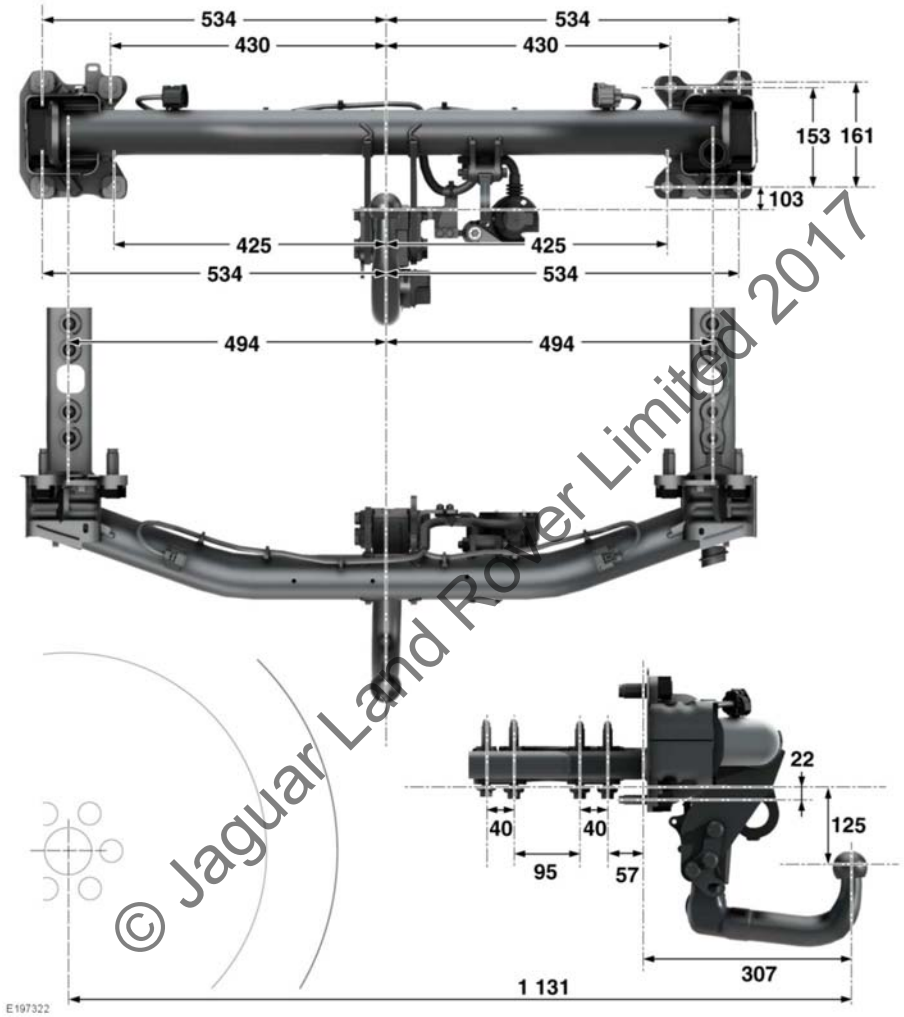
Detachable tow bar (vehicles with coil spring suspension)



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

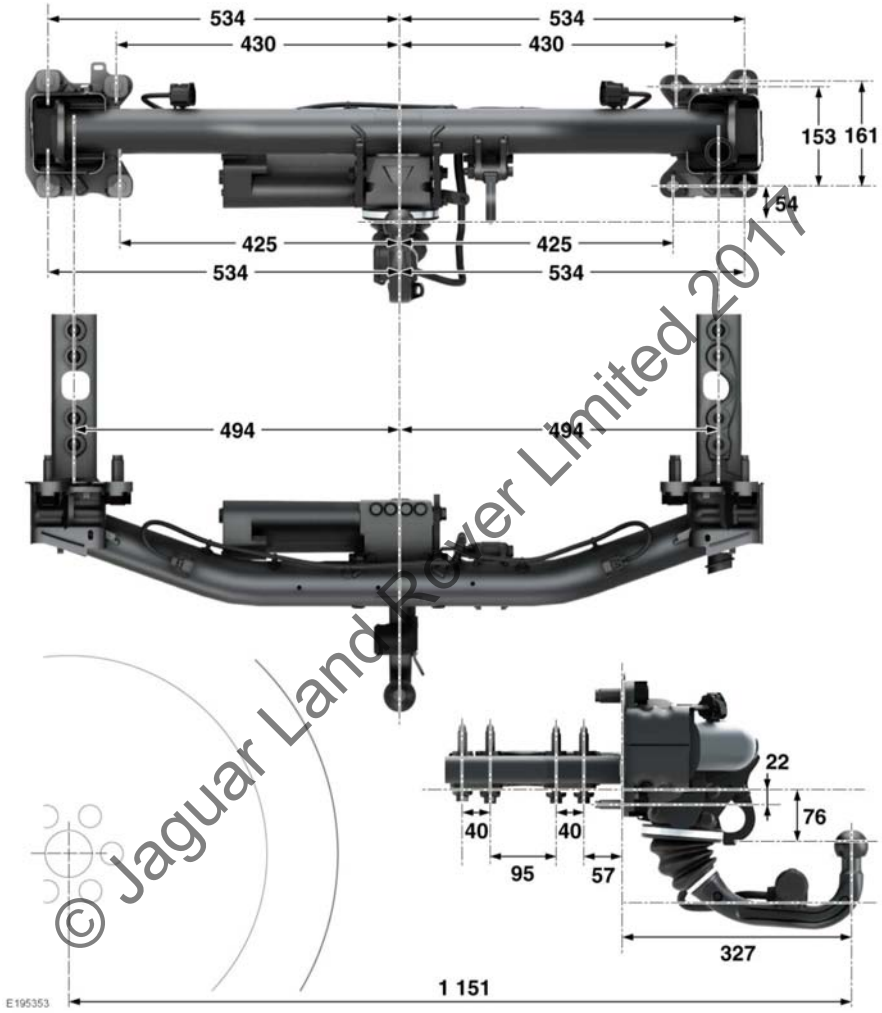
Towing

Detachable tow bar (vehicles with electronic air suspension)



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

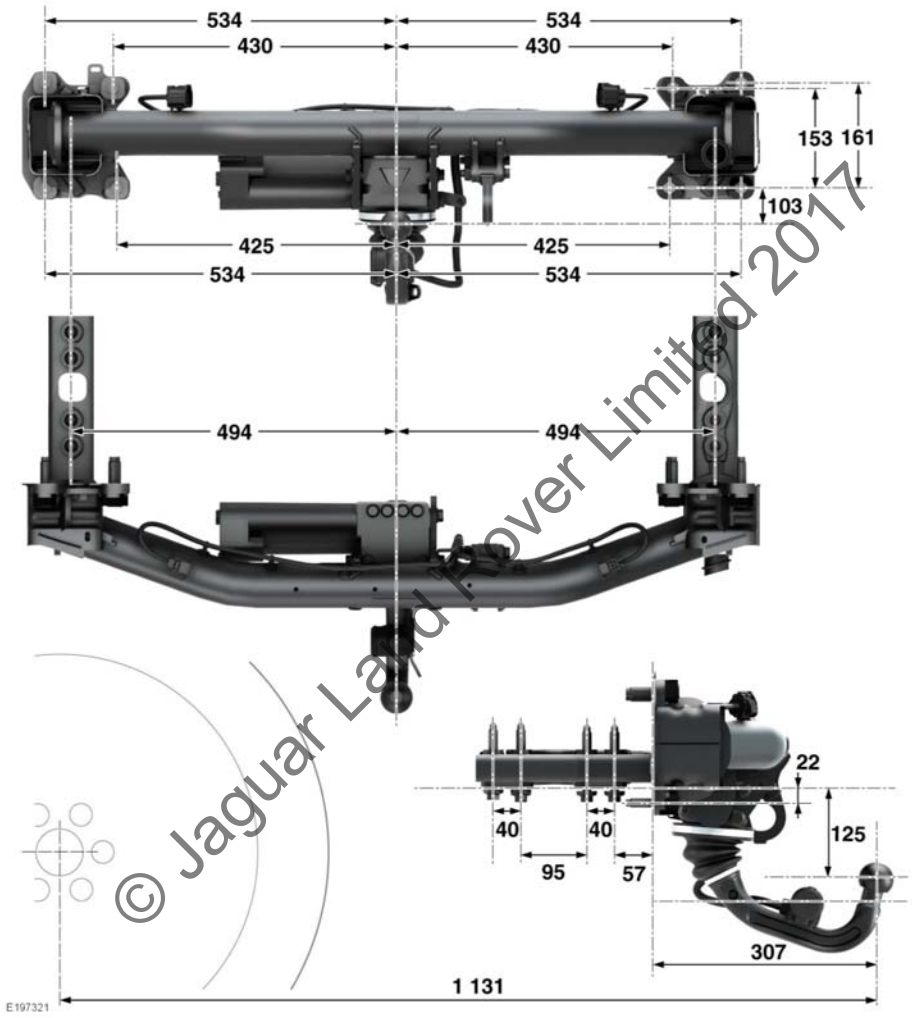
Electrically deployable tow bar (vehicles with coil spring suspension)



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Towing

Electrically deployable tow bar (vehicles with electronic air suspension)



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

STARTING THE ENGINE

Never start the engine and leave it running when the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Exhaust gases are poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and death if inhaled.

If the engine fails to start, do not continue cranking, as this discharges the battery. Damage may also be caused to the catalytic converter due to unburnt fuel passing through the exhaust.

Note: *The smart key may not be detected if placed within a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example, a smartphone, laptop, including when inside a laptop bag, games console, etc. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting keyless entry, an engine start, or the engine start backup procedure.*

To start the engine:

1. Make sure a valid smart key is inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure Park (**P**) is selected.
3. Press the brake pedal firmly.
4. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

Note: *For vehicles with a diesel engine, the delay period before cranking begins is longer in low ambient temperatures. The extended delay period is due to extended glow plug operation. During this extended delay period, the brake pedal must remain firmly pressed.*

Once the engine starts, release the brake pedal, if it is safe to do so.

If the vehicle is left in a driveable condition with the engine running, the auto stop/start driver exit feature does not prevent the vehicle from moving.

For more information on the driver exit feature, see **136, DRIVER EXIT**.

SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

Before switching off the engine, it is recommended that the vehicle is stationary. Make sure the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied and the transmission is in Park (**P**).

Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button.

The engine now stops. The vehicle's ignition system also switches off.

To switch off the engine while the vehicle is moving:

When the vehicle is moving, it is not advisable to switch off the engine. However, if a situation arises where engine switch-off is urgent, the following procedure applies:

1. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button for longer than 2 seconds, or
2. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button twice within 3 seconds.

With either method, the message **Engine Stop Button Pressed** displays in the instrument panel.

SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION

To switch on the vehicle's ignition system without starting the engine:

1. Make sure that a valid smart key is inside the vehicle and that the brake pedal is not pressed.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

If the brake pedal is pressed when the engine **START/STOP** button is pressed, the engine starts.

2. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button until the instrument panel warning lamps illuminate.
3. Release the engine **START/STOP** button.

ROLLING RESTART

Note: *The engine **START/STOP** button is inhibited for 2 seconds after the engine has been switched off.*

If the engine is switched off while the vehicle is moving, a rolling restart can be initiated by selecting Neutral (**N**) and pressing the engine **START/STOP** button.

ENGINE START BACKUP

The engine start backup feature is required to disarm the alarm and start the engine, if either of the following occur:

- The vehicle is unlocked using the emergency key blade.
- The smart key is not detected by the vehicle.

The engine start backup feature can only be used when the instrument panel displays **Smart Key Not Recognised - Reposition or Place as shown and Press Start Button**.

Electrically adjustable steering column



Manually adjustable steering column



To carry out the engine start backup procedure:

1. Electrically adjustable steering column: Position the smart key flat against the side of the steering column.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Manually adjustable steering column: Position the smart key flat against the underside of the steering column.

Note: *There are markings on the steering column to help locate the correct position.*

2. While holding the smart key in position, firmly press the brake pedal.
3. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button.

Once the engine starts, release the brake pedal, if it is safe to do so.

If the smart key is not recognised, or the engine fails to start, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

IF THE ENGINE FAILS TO START

All vehicles

If the engine fails to start when the engine START/STOP button is pressed, and the vehicle has been in a recent collision, seek qualified assistance.

If the engine fails to start, and a valid smart key is inside the vehicle, a check must be made to determine the cause. To do this:

1. Switch on the vehicle's ignition. See **131, SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION**.
2. Check the instrument panel for any illuminated warning lamps and messages. Seek qualified assistance, if necessary. See **74, WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS** and **69, WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES**.
3. Switch off the vehicle's ignition.

Alternatively, if the engine fails to start, the alarm system may need to be reset. To reset the alarm system, lock and unlock the vehicle. See **9, UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE**.

If the engine still fails to start, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

Petrol vehicles only

If the engine persistently fails to start, carry out the following steps:

1. Make sure that a valid smart key is inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure that Park (**P**) or Neutral (**N**) is selected.
3. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button until the warning lamps in the instrument panel illuminate.
4. Firmly press the brake pedal.
5. Slowly press the accelerator pedal, and hold it in the fully pressed position.
6. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button. The engine begins to crank.
7. Release the accelerator pedal when the engine starts.

Once the engine starts, release the brake pedal, if it is safe to do so.

If the engine still fails to start, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

ENGINE PRE-HEATER

The fitting of an engine pre-heater does not eliminate the need for antifreeze.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Starting the engine

Engines are more difficult to start when the ambient temperature is very low. In geographical areas where temperatures below -10°C are experienced frequently, it is advisable to fit an engine pre-heater. The pre-heater has an insulated connector at the front of the vehicle, which is connected to a mains supply using a suitable extension cable. The pre-heater can remain in use overnight, if required. Typically, an engine pre-heater uses between 0.4 and 1 kWh.

For further information, consult a retailer/ authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

AUTO STOP/START

Always disable the auto stop/start system before wading. Failure to do so could cause damage to the vehicle.

The auto stop/start system is designed to improve fuel efficiency and automatically activates when the vehicle's ignition is switched on. Unless it is required to support other vehicle systems, the engine switches off when the vehicle is stationary, e.g., at traffic lights. When the engine stops, it is referred to as an auto stop.

When the brake pedal is released, or a drive gear is selected, the engine automatically restarts. When the engine restarts, it is referred to as an auto start.

Operation of the auto stop/start system is indicated by a status icon in the instrument panel. See **79, AUTO STOP/START (GREEN)**.

Note: *When activated, the auto stop/start system does not always stop the engine when the vehicle is stationary. The system may restart the engine before setting off.*

TRIGGERING AN AUTO STOP

To trigger an auto stop in vehicles with an automatic transmission, drive forward with Drive (**D**) or Sport (**S**) selected, and stop the vehicle. Fully press the brake pedal to make sure the vehicle is stationary.

To trigger an auto stop in vehicles with a manual transmission, drive forward and stop the vehicle. Fully press the brake pedal to make sure the vehicle is stationary. Select neutral and fully release the clutch pedal.

The following conditions inhibit an auto stop:

- The external temperature is less than approximately -2°C.
- The external temperature is more than approximately 40°C.
- The engine or other vehicle systems have not reached the optimum operating temperatures.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- Demand from the climate control system requires the engine to be running, e.g., when in defrost mode.
- The vehicle's battery charge is low.
- The auto stop/start system is deactivated.
- After reversing, the vehicle's speed has not exceeded 16 km/h (10 mph).
- A gearshift paddle has been used to select a gear (automatic transmission vehicles only).

The instrument panel displays an information lamp when the vehicle is stationary and the auto stop/start system is active but inhibited. See **80, AUTO STOP/START INHIBIT (WHITE)**.

TRIGGERING AN AUTO START

To trigger an auto start, release the brake pedal with Drive (**D**) or Sport (**S**) selected.

The engine also restarts if one of the following occurs:

- The auto stop/start system is deactivated.
- Reverse (**R**) gear is selected.
- Demand from the climate control system increases.
- The vehicle begins to move.
- The vehicle's battery charge becomes low.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

- The accelerator pedal is pressed.
- A gearshift paddle is used to select a gear.

DEACTIVATING AUTO STOP/ START



Touch the **A OFF** icon on the lower touch screen to deactivate the auto stop/start system.

Note: *The auto stop/start system is automatically deactivated if Hill Descent Control (HDC) or certain terrain response special programs are selected.*

When the auto stop/start system is deactivated, the instrument panel momentarily displays the message **Auto Stop/Start Off**. A status icon is also displayed. See **80, AUTO STOP/START OFF (WHITE)**.

If the auto stop/start button is pressed while the system is unable to operate, the instrument panel momentarily displays the message **Auto Stop/Start not available**.

Note: *The auto stop/start system automatically reactivates the next time the vehicle's ignition is switched on.*

DRIVER EXIT

If the vehicle is left in a driveable condition with the engine running, the driver exit feature does not prevent the vehicle from moving.

The driver exit feature is only active when an auto stop has taken place and the engine is not running. To prevent the vehicle from being inadvertently left in a driveable condition, the vehicle detects when a driver is not present. If this is the case, the system automatically switches off the ignition system. Once the vehicle's ignition is switched off, the vehicle can be locked, if required. See **25, LOCK CONFIRMATION**.

If Drive (**D**), Sport (**S**), or Neutral (**N**) is selected, the driver exit feature switches the vehicle's ignition off if the following conditions exist:

- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled, and:
- The brake pedal is released.

If Park (**P**) is selected, the driver exit feature switches the vehicle's ignition off if the driver's seat belt is unbuckled.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that the vehicle is stationary. Select Park (P). Apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB). Switch the engine off. The vehicle can move unexpectedly with any other gear position selected, which may result in death or serious injury.

Never select **P** while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

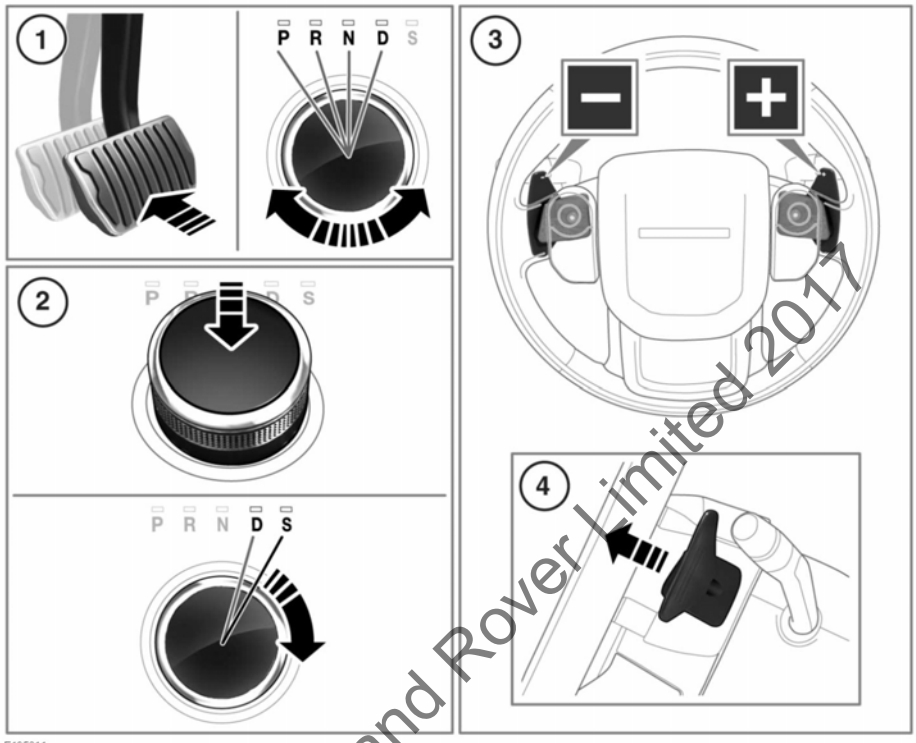
Never select Reverse (**R**) while the vehicle is moving forward. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

Never select a forward gear while the vehicle is moving backward. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

Do not press the accelerator pedal when making a gear selection. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

Do not allow the vehicle to remain stationary for a prolonged period, with a drive gear selected and the engine running. In this event, always select **P** or Neutral (**N**) and apply the EPB. The vehicle may move unexpectedly with any other gear position selected.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

The selection status of the gear selector and the steering wheel's paddle-shift is displayed in the instrument panel.

When the engine starts, the gear selector elevates from its lowered, stored position and the transmission remains engaged in **P**.

1. To select Drive (**D**), **N**, **R** or **P**, press the brake pedal and rotate the gear selector to the required position. The relevant indicator lamp, by the gear selector, illuminates to confirm selection. When in **D**, gear changing is fully automatic. The gear change shift points are determined by the accelerator pedal position and the vehicle's current speed To achieve rapid acceleration (kickdown) while in **D**, quickly press the accelerator pedal to its full travel. When the accelerator pedal is relaxed, normal automatic gear changing resumes.

Note: *If pressure is applied to the gear selector before the brake pedal is pressed, the selected gear may not be available. In this situation, remove pressure from the gear selector, make sure that the brake pedal is pressed, and select the required gear again.*

2. To select Sport (**S**) mode from **D**, press the gear selector down and rotate to **S**. The relevant indicator lamp, by the gear selector, illuminates to confirm selection.

   Note: *Before selecting **D**, **R**, **N**, or **P**, make sure that the vehicle is stationary and the brakes are applied.*
   The transmission remains in the lower gears for longer, improving mid-range performance. To deselect **S** mode, rotate the gear selector back to **D**.

3. Steering wheel paddle-shifts: Allows manual gear selection, while the selector is in either the **D** or **S** position. Lightly pull the left side paddle-shift for down-shifts or the right side paddle-shift for up-shifts.

   Note: *The paddle-shifts can be configured to be active in both **D** and **S**, or active in **S** only. Use the **Vehicle Settings** instrument panel menu. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.*
   The paddle-shifts can be effective when rapid acceleration and engine braking are required.
   A gearshift indicator warning lamp illuminates briefly at the recommended (up-shift) gear change point. See **79, GEARSHIFT (GREEN)**.

   With **D** selected, each manual gear change via the steering wheel paddle-shifts is temporary. The manual gear change is held while the vehicle is accelerating, decelerating, cornering, and continued use of the steering wheel paddle-shifts.

   Note: *If continued use of the steering wheel paddle-shifts, is required, select **S**.*

4. To manually change gear, briefly pull the relevant steering wheel paddle-shift.
   To exit manual gear selection mode, pull and hold the right side paddle-shift for approximately 2 second. The automatic transmission returns to operation in **D** or **S**, dependent on the current position of the gear selector.
   Alternatively, rotate the gear selector from **S** to **D**. This returns to automatic transmission operation in **D**.

If the gear selector is obstructed, remove the obstruction and then start the engine. The gear selector should elevate.

If the gear selector fails to elevate and there is no obstruction, a system fault is indicated. The gear selector can still be used in the lowered position. In this event, **P** is not automatically selected, when the engine is switched off. **P** must be selected manually. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer at the earliest opportunity.

LIMP-HOME MODE

If a transmission system fault is detected, the instrument panel displays a warning message. In this event, only limited gears are available. If possible, the vehicle should be carefully driven to the nearest place of safety. Seek qualified assistance.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Note: *The driver should be aware that the vehicle's performance is also reduced and must take this into account when driving. Use of the steering wheel's paddle shift is also disabled.*

Some transmission faults may cause the gear selector to be locked in position until the ignition is switched off. A flashing gear status in the instrument panel indicates that the driver's gear request cannot be engaged. In this event, select Neutral (**N**), and then select the required gear change again.

If the transmission is still unable to engage the requested gear, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS

Do not adjust the lower touch screen controls, or allow the suspension system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

Make sure that the vehicle is clear of people and obstacles before adjusting the suspension. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.

To maintain control of the vehicle at a standstill, make sure that the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied before the suspension height changes. Also make sure that the transmission is engaged in Neutral (**N**) or Park (**P**). Failure to do so may potentially result in damage to the vehicle.

Care should be taken with all suspension height changes when a trailer is attached to the vehicle. Failure to do so may potentially result in damage to the vehicle.

Note: *The electronic air suspension does not operate if sufficient air reserves are not present in the air suspension system. In this event, start the engine to allow operation of the compressor. Run the engine until sufficient air reserves resume.*

Note: *Frequent successive air suspension adjustments may deplete the vehicle's air reserves. In this event, allow time for the engine to run so the compressor can replenish the air reserves.*

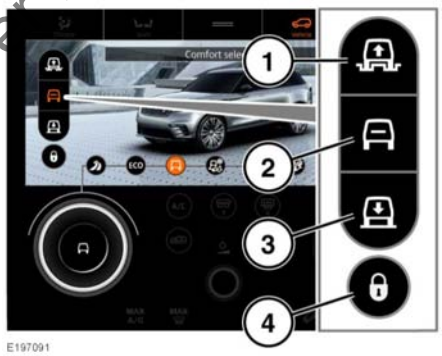
Note: *The electronic air suspension system may raise or lower the vehicle automatically. For example, if a terrain response driving program requires it or the vehicle is travelling at high speeds.*

The electronic air suspension system adjusts the height of the suspension to raise or lower the vehicle.

The lower touch screen's **Vehicle** menu displays icons for controlling the electronic air suspension system.



Touch the **Vehicle** soft key at the top of the lower touch screen to display the **Vehicle** menu. See **204, LOWER TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**.



Operate as follows:

1. **Off-road height** icon: Touch to set the suspension to off-road height.
2. **Normal height** icon: Touch to set the suspension to normal height.
3. **Access height** icon: Touch to set the suspension to access height.

   Note: *Access height is 40 mm lower than normal height.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

4. **Access height locked** icon: Touch to lock the suspension at access height.

The currently selected icon illuminates to confirm selection. Direction arrows for the suspension height change display during adjustment. The instrument panel displays a confirmation message and the relevant icon for the selected suspension setting. The lower touch screen icons illuminate grey if the operating conditions for their suspension setting are not satisfied. For example, if the vehicle's speed is too fast for the off-road height or the access height locked settings.

The electronic air suspension system can also be operated via the loadspace buttons or remotely operated via the vehicle's smart key. See **146, REAR HEIGHT ADJUST**.

The electronic air suspension system may not operate without the engine running to operate the compressor and maintain sufficient air reserves.

The suspension system operates without the engine running, if:

- The auto stop/start system temporarily switches off the engine. See **135, TRIGGERING AN AUTO STOP**.
- A request to lower the suspension is made within a minute of the ignition being switched off.
- A normal height request is made from the auto access height setting.
- The rear height adjust system is operating.

Operation of the electronic air suspension system remains available for a few seconds after the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened.

Suspension height adjustment stops, after a short time, if a door is opened, but will resume if the door is closed within 90 seconds. If the door is not closed within 90 seconds the suspension remains at the height attained before the door was opened.

Touch and hold the relevant icon for a suspension height change with a door open. In this event, the suspension only lowers if there are sufficient air reserves to raise the vehicle back up.

Note: *The electronic air suspension may not lower to its minimum setting while a door is open.*

In the event that a door is open and the suspension cannot complete a height adjustment the instrument panel displays a message.

OFF-ROAD HEIGHT

Off-road height can be selected when the suspension is set to normal height, at any vehicle speed up to 70 km/h (43 mph). Touch the **off-road height** icon on the lower touch screen. See **141, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.

The off-road height setting is dependent on the vehicle's speed. The **Off-Road 1** height is 25 mm above the normal height setting, up to a maximum vehicle speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). The **Off-Road 2** height is 46 mm above the normal height setting, up to a maximum vehicle speed of 50 km/h (31 mph). The suspension height can change automatically between these heights. The current off-road height setting is displayed on the touch screen, via the **Vehicle Dimensions** menu from the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen. See **209, EXTRA FEATURES**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

The **Off-Road 2** height can be manually selected with the suspension at **Off-Road 1** height, at any vehicle speed up to 40 km/h (25 mph). Touch the **off-road height** icon on the lower touch screen.

To manually exit off-road height, touch the icon for the required height suspension setting, i.e., the **normal height** or **access height** icon. Alternatively, increase the vehicle's speed above 80 km/h (50 mph) to automatically set the suspension to normal height.

EXTENDED MODE

Extended mode is an automatic suspension height setting that raises the vehicle to assist manoeuvring in the event that the vehicle is:

- Grounded in severe off-road conditions.
- Lowered onto an obstacle.
- Wading in deep water.
- Driving in narrow ruts.

The instrument panel displays an **extended mode** icon and a confirmation message. The icons also flash on the lower touch screen. See **141, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.

Note: *The extended mode height setting cannot be selected manually.*



The extended mode's **additional lift** icon also displays on the lower touch screen when the suspension is set at extended mode height.

If required, additional extended mode suspension height can be requested. Press the brake pedal and touch the **additional lift** icon. The icon illuminates to confirm selection. The icon remains grey if the brake pedal is not pressed during selection and the suspension will not adjust.

ACCESS HEIGHT

The electronic air suspension system can be lowered to allow easier vehicle access.

Touch the **access height** icon on the lower touch screen. See **141, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.

Note: *Access height selection is available for 1 minute after the ignition is switched off, or 30 seconds if the driver's door is opened.*

Access height selection can be requested at any vehicle speed. The suspension height does not change until the vehicle is travelling at slow speeds. The access height selection request cancels if the vehicle's speed does not slow sufficiently within 1 minute.

Normal driving automatically adjusts the suspension height setting from access height to normal height.

An alternative suspension height setting can be manually selected while at access height. Touch the relevant suspension height icon on the lower touch screen.

AUTO ACCESS HEIGHT

Note: *Auto access height operation is more efficient and smooth with the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) applied and the brake pedal completely released.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Auto access height automatically lowers the electronic air suspension to the access height setting when the vehicle is parked. See **143, ACCESS HEIGHT**.

Auto access height is enabled or disabled, via the **Vehicle Settings** instrument panel menu. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The following conditions must apply, before auto access height operates:

- The suspension height has to be set at the normal height setting.
- Select one of the following terrain response driving programs:
  - Automatic.
  - Comfort.
  - Grass/gravel/snow.

See **180, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

Auto access height initially lowers the suspension height up to 20 mm below the normal height setting, after any of the following events:

- The vehicle is stationary and any of the occupied seat belts are unbuckled.
- The ignition is switched off.

If a door is opened, after the initial suspension lowering, auto access lowers the suspension to 40 mm below the normal height setting.

Note: *If a door is not subsequently opened and the vehicle's speed exceeds 40 km/h (25 mph), the suspension height returns to the normal height setting.*

Auto access height lowers the suspension height, to 35 mm front and 30 mm rear, below normal height, if a door opens before:

- An occupied seat belt is unbuckled.
- The ignition is switched off.

If required, touch the **access height** icon on the lower touch screen, to lower the vehicle to the full access height setting. The full access height setting is 40 mm below the normal height setting.

Auto access height operates until 90 seconds after the vehicle becomes stationary.

Auto access height only operates once for each time the vehicle is stationary. If further operations are required while at the same location, use the instrument panel menus to disable and enable auto access height again. Alternatively, drive the vehicle at a speed above 7 km/h (4 mph) for 3 seconds or at a speed of more than 15 km/h (9 mph).

Note: *The once only operation also applies if the vehicle has been stationary for more than 90 seconds without auto access height operation. If a door is opened after 90 seconds, the instrument panel displays a timed-out message.*

Auto access height does not operate in the following conditions:

- The suspension has entered into extended mode. See **143, EXTENDED MODE**.
- The vehicle is parked on excessive inclines or declines, or on a very uneven surface.
- If there are insufficient air reserves in the electronic air suspension system. In this event, the instrument panel displays an unavailable message when a door is next opened.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

LOCKED ACCESS HEIGHT

Locked access height is useful when manoeuvring the vehicle in confined areas, e.g., multi-storey car parks.

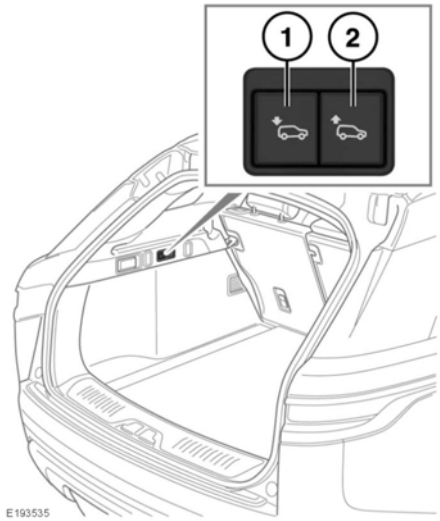
Make sure that the suspension height is set at access height. Make sure that the vehicle is travelling at a speed of less than 35 km/h (22 mph).

Touch the **access height locked** icon on the lower touch screen to lock the vehicle at access height. See **141, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.

When the access height locked setting has been manually cancelled, the alternative suspension height settings resume normal operation for manual selection. Alternatively, increase the vehicle's speed above 40 km/h (25 mph) to automatically cancel locked access height and set the suspension to the normal height setting.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

REAR HEIGHT ADJUST



Care should be taken with all suspension height changes, especially when a trailer is attached to the vehicle. Incorrect suspension adjustments can result in serious damage to the vehicle.

Note: *The amount of air suspension adjustment is dependent on the current height setting. The front suspension may also adjust to maintain the correct headlight level.*

Note: *The suspension adjusts if the vehicle's doors are open, but the vehicle may not lower to its minimum setting.*

The suspension's rear height adjust feature is useful when loading or unloading the vehicle, connecting or disconnecting a trailer, and when manoeuvring a connected trailer.

To operate the suspension's rear height adjust via the loadspace buttons, unlock the vehicle and open the tailgate.

Note: *The buttons are disabled when the tailgate is closed.*

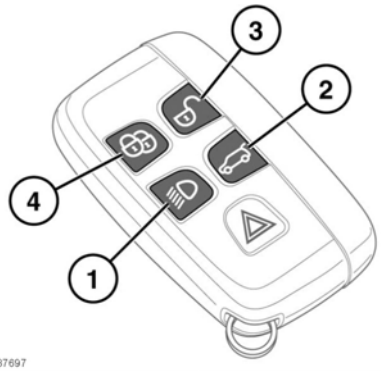
Operate as follows:

1. Press and hold to lower the rear suspension.
2. Press and hold to raise the rear suspension.
3. Simultaneously press and hold both buttons to set the rear suspension to the normal height setting.

   Note: *A time delay may be evident before the vehicle reacts to a suspension height request via the buttons. The vehicle's systems need to be configured before each height adjustment.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Note: *The buttons are automatically disabled if they are not used for a designated time period after opening the tailgate. To override this, switch the ignition on.*



The smart key can be operated from inside or outside of the vehicle. Make sure that the smart key is always kept safely out of children's reach, to avoid serious injury or death.

The suspension's rear height adjust feature is also remotely operated via the vehicle's smart key. Press the fascia switch to switch on the hazard warning lights. In this state, the vehicle interprets signals received via operation of the smart key buttons as height adjustment requests.

Operate as follows:

- To lower: Simultaneously press and hold the headlights button (**1**) and the tailgate unlock button (**2**).
- To raise: Simultaneously press and hold the headlights button (**1**) and the unlock button (**3**).
- To set the vehicle to normal height: Simultaneously press and hold the headlights button (**1**) and the lock button (**4**).

The icons on the lower touch screen indicate the current status of the rear suspension height. If the rear suspension is above normal height, then both the **normal height** and **off-road height** icons illuminate. If the rear suspension is below normal height, both the **normal height** and **access height** icons illuminate. See **141, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.

ADAPTIVE DYNAMICS

Adaptive dynamics continuously monitors the current road conditions and driving style, and automatically adjusts the vehicle's suspension settings accordingly. Adaptive dynamics also detects rough road and off-road conditions, and adjusts the suspension settings for greater ride comfort.

If an adaptive dynamics system fault is detected, the instrument panel displays a message and may also illuminate the general or critical warning lamps. See **75, CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED)** and **78, GENERAL WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)**.

In the event of a detected adaptive dynamics system fault, some reduction in ride comfort may be experienced. The fault may be temporary, but if the fault persists, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

SUSPENSION LOWERED FOR SAFETY

The suspension height is automatically lowered for safety to increase the vehicle's stability. Overriding this automatic suspension height setting is not recommended. Doing so, can cause a loss of control of the vehicle during extreme manoeuvres, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.

If the vehicle's suspension height is automatically lowered for safety, exercise extreme caution while driving off-road to avoid potential damage to the vehicle.

If a Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) fault is detected, the suspension height may be automatically lowered to increase the vehicle's stability. See **155, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)**.

In this event, the instrument panel displays a message and the currently illuminated suspension setting icon extinguishes.

To manually override the automatic lowered safety height setting:

1. Touch the relevant icon on the lower touch screen to select the required suspension setting. See **141, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.
2. Follow the instructions displayed in the instrument panel.

   Note: *If the vehicle is driven enthusiastically, the instrument panel displays a message stating that a safety system has been overridden. A further message provides instructions for cancelling the manual override.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

If the red brake warning lamp illuminates, safely bring the vehicle to a stop, as quickly as possible, and seek qualified assistance. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.

If the amber brake warning lamp illuminates, drive with care, avoiding heavy brake pedal application, and seek qualified assistance. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.

Do not rest a foot on the brake pedal while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so can damage the braking system and reduce braking efficiency. The result can lead to a crash, causing serious injury or death.

Never allow the vehicle to coast (freewheel) with the engine switched off. The engine must be running to provide full braking assistance. The brakes still function with the engine switched off, but far more brake pedal pressure is required to operate them.

Never place non-approved floor matting or any other obstructions under the brake pedal. The result can be restricted pedal travel and reduced braking efficiency, leading to a crash, causing serious injury or death.

Driving through heavy rain or water can have an adverse effect on braking efficiency. Under such circumstances, it is recommended to lightly apply the brakes intermittently, to dry the brakes.

Do not pump the brake pedal at any time. Doing so interrupts operation of the braking system and may increase stopping distances.

Make sure to read and follow the important information and instructions contained in the warnings listed. See **75, BRAKE (RED)** and **77, BRAKE (AMBER)**.

STEEP SLOPES

If the vehicle is stationary on a steep, slippery slope, it may begin to slide, even with the brakes applied. Without wheel rotation, the Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) cannot determine vehicle movement. To counteract this, briefly release the brake pedal, allowing wheel rotation. Re-apply the brake pedal to allow the ABS to gain control.

EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (EBA)

If the brakes are rapidly applied, the Emergency Brake Assist (EBA) system automatically boosts the braking force to its maximum. The result is that the EBA system helps to bring the vehicle to a halt as quickly as possible.

The EBA system stops operating as soon as the brake pedal is released.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

An EBA fault is indicated by the amber brake warning lamp illuminating and a warning message displaying in the instrument panel. In this event, drive with care, avoiding heavy brake pedal application. Seek qualified assistance. See **77, BRAKE (AMBER)**.

Note: *In the event of heavy braking, the hazard warning lights are automatically enabled.*

ELECTRONIC BRAKE-FORCE DISTRIBUTION (EBD)

The Electronic Brake-force Distribution (EBD) system controls the balance of braking forces supplied to the front and rear wheels. The result is that the EBD system helps to maintain the maximum braking efficiency.

If the vehicle has a light load, e.g., driver only and no luggage, the EBD system reduces the braking force applied to the rear wheels. If the vehicle is heavily laden, e.g., passengers and luggage, the EBD system increases the braking force to the rear wheels.

EBD system faults are indicated by the red brake warning lamp illuminating and a warning message being displayed in the instrument panel. In this event, gently and safely stop the vehicle. Seek qualified assistance. See **75, BRAKE (RED)**.

AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB)

The Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) system is a driving aid only. The driver is always responsible for driving with due care and attention, in a safe manner for the vehicle, the occupants, and other road users. The driver should observe all road signs, road markings and any potential emergency braking situations, and act appropriately.

The AEB system uses forward-facing cameras to detect real vehicles and pedestrians, plus other certified Euro NCAP target objects. AEB is not designed to detect any other objects, including non-industry approved targets.

In order for AEB to operate, it must be able to detect a clear image of the object and be able to determine its movement. If either of these does not occur, the AEB system may not operate.

Seat belts should be worn by all vehicle occupants, for every journey, no matter how short. Failure to do so greatly increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

Note: *Not all vehicles have the AEB system. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer for confirmation.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

AEB uses forward-facing cameras, located above the rear-view mirror, to help identify an imminent risk of collision with another vehicle travelling in front. AEB also helps to identify an imminent risk of collision with a crossing pedestrian.

In most instances, AEB helps reduce the severity of an impact. In some cases, AEB helps to stop the vehicle before an impact takes place.

Note: *AEB efficiency is dependent on the condition of the current driving surface, the vehicle's speed, tyres and braking system.*

Note: *Make sure the windscreen is kept clean and the camera's line of sight is not obstructed by labels, stickers, etc. Failure to do so can cause incorrect AEB operation.*

Note: *AEB calibration is required if the vehicle's windscreen is replaced, or the camera located above the rear-view mirror is moved or replaced. In these events, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.*

Note: *Where vehicles are parked outside, in full sunlight and in high ambient temperatures, the forward-facing camera may reach an internal temperature of 99°C. In this state, the warning message* ***AEB Unavailable*** *displays in the instrument panel and AEB does not operate. When the forward-facing camera cools to less than 88°C, normal operation is resumed, and the warning message extinguishes.*

AEB automatically switches on, every time the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

If required, AEB can be switched off via the **Driver Assistance** menu in the instrument panel. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: *When driving off-road, it is recommended to switch off the AEB system.*

Note: *When the vehicle's ignition is first switched on, AEB may require an initialisation period before it is fully functional. In this state, a message is displayed in the instrument panel. During this period, the efficiency of AEB is limited.*

Vehicle detection

The vehicle AEB detection system operates when the vehicle is travelling between 5 km/h (3 mph) and 80 km/h (50 mph). If the vehicle AEB detects an imminent risk of collision with a vehicle travelling in front, it automatically applies the brakes. If the vehicle's speed is between 35 km/h (22 mph) and 80 km/h (50 mph), AEB warning messages are displayed in the instrument panel. The messages are displayed just before the brakes are automatically applied.

After the vehicle has stopped, the brakes are only applied for a few seconds. After this period, the driver must resume full control of the vehicle.

If AEB engages, the driver can override AEB operation by turning the steering wheel, or pressing the accelerator pedal. AEB then disengages, to make sure that the driver remains in full control of the vehicle.

AEB will not operate if:

- The vehicle is negotiating a tight corner.
- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is switched off.
- The forward-facing cameras are dirty or obstructed.
- The vehicle's speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) or above 80 km/h (50 mph).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

- Visibility is impaired due to severe weather conditions, e.g., heavy rain, fog, snow, etc.

Pedestrian detection

The pedestrian AEB detection system operates when the vehicle is travelling between 5 km/h (3 mph) and 60 km/h (37 mph). If the pedestrian AEB detects an imminent risk of collision with a crossing pedestrian, it automatically applies the brakes. If the vehicle's speed is between 40 km/h (25 mph) and 60 km/h (37 mph), AEB warning messages are displayed in the instrument panel. The messages are displayed just before the brakes are automatically applied.

After the vehicle has stopped, the brakes are only applied for a few seconds. After this period, the driver must resume full control of the vehicle.

If AEB engages, the driver can override AEB operation by turning the steering wheel, or pressing the accelerator pedal. AEB then disengages, to make sure that the driver remains in full control of the vehicle.

In addition to the items previously listed for vehicle AEB detection, the pedestrian AEB detection system does not operate if:

- The vehicle's speed exceeds 60 km/h (37 mph).
- The detected object is not identified as a pedestrian.
- The height of the detected object is less than 1 m.
- The pedestrian AEB detection system cannot determine that the target object is a pedestrian. For example, if the pedestrian is carrying a large object.

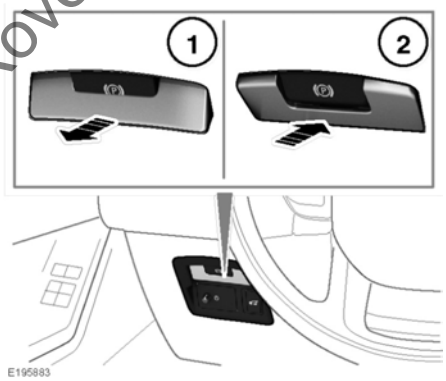
ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB)

Do not rely on the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to operate correctly if the brake warning lamp illuminates. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

Do not rely on the EPB to operate correctly, if the EPB warning lamp flashes. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

The EPB operates on the rear wheels, therefore secure parking of the vehicle is dependent on being on a hard and stable surface.

Do not rely on the EPB to operate effectively if the rear wheels have been immersed in mud or water.



The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) switch is located on the switch pack between the steering wheel and the driver's door. Operate as follows:

1. With the ignition switched on, press the brake pedal and pull the EPB switch out to release the EPB.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

2. Push the EPB switch in to apply the EPB. The EPB warning lamp illuminates to confirm. See **75, ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB) (RED)**.

   Note: *The red EPB warning lamp continues to illuminate for at least 10 seconds after the ignition has been switched off.*

The EPB automatically applies when Park (**P**) is selected.

Note: *To prevent automatic operation, when the vehicle is stationary, pull out the EPB switch to the release position before selecting **P**.*

The EPB applies automatically if the ignition is switched off and the vehicle's speed is below 3 km/h (2 mph).

Note: *To prevent automatic operation, when the vehicle is stationary, pull out and hold the EPB switch. Within 5 seconds, switch off the ignition and continue to hold the EPB switch for a further 2 seconds.*

If the EPB is operated when the vehicle's speed is less than 3 km/h (2 mph), the vehicle is brought to an abrupt stop. The stop lights do not illuminate.

Driving the vehicle with the EPB applied can cause serious damage to the braking system.

When stationary, with the EPB applied and the transmission engaged in forward or reverse gear, press the accelerator pedal to gradually release the EPB. The vehicle can now be driven away smoothly.

When shifting from **P** with the EPB applied, the EPB automatically releases to allow a smooth drive away.

Note: *Automatic EPB release for pulling away from a standstill is only possible when the driver's door is closed or the driver's seat belt is buckled.*

To override the EPB automatic release, push the EPB switch in and hold.

In an emergency, apply and hold the EPB switch to give a controlled reduction in the vehicle's speed. The vehicle can also be brought to a complete stop. The vehicle must be travelling at more than 3 km/h (2 mph) and the accelerator pedal must also be released. The EPB warning lamp flashes, a warning chime sounds and the instrument panel displays a warning message. The stop lights illuminate. Release the EPB switch, or press the accelerator pedal to release the EPB.

If an EPB fault is detected, the instrument panel displays a warning message. The amber brake warning lamp also illuminates. See **77, BRAKE (AMBER)**.

If a fault is detected during EPB operation, the instrument panel displays a warning message. The red EPB warning lamp also flashes.

EMERGENCY STOP SIGNAL (ESS)

The Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) system automatically activates the hazard warning lights during emergency braking. Activation of the hazard warning lights warns other road users and reduces the risk of a collision.

Note: *ESS applicability is dependent on the market.*

HILL START ASSIST

Hill start assist is part of the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

The hill start assist feature activates when the vehicle is pulling away from a standstill to ascend a hill. When the brake pedal is released, hill start assist smoothly releases the brake pressure, allowing the vehicle to pull away without rolling backward.

If a hill start assist fault is detected, the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) OFF warning lamp illuminates. The **Stability Control Not Available - Drive With Care** warning message is also displayed in the instrument panel. See **78, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)

The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system does not compensate for driver error or misjudgement. The vehicle should be driven with due care and attention at all times. Always drive in a manner that is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users. Failure to do so can result in a loss of control of the vehicle, potentially causing serious injury or death.

In extremely low temperatures below -20°C, the vehicle may initially have reduced stability and braking performance. In these conditions, drive with extra caution. Failure to do so can potentially result in personal injury or vehicle damage.

The DSC system helps to maintain the vehicle's stability in critical driving situations, e.g., during unstable driving behaviour such as understeer and oversteer. If required, the DSC system manipulates the engine's power output and applies the brakes at individual wheels. Brake noise may be generated during DSC operation. The DSC system also activates if wheel spin is detected, to help improve the vehicle's progress during acceleration. When the DSC system is active, the amber DSC warning lamp flashes. See **77, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)**.

The DSC system automatically enables when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL OFF

The vehicle's stability and safety may be reduced by inappropriately disabling the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system. The result can lead to a possible loss of control of the vehicle, resulting in serious injury or death.

Note: *In the majority of driving situations, and particularly on-road, it is recommended that the DSC system is not disabled.*



To disable the DSC system, touch and hold the DSC **OFF** soft key, displayed on the lower touch screen, for more than 3 seconds. An audible chime sounds to confirm. The instrument panel displays the **DSC Off** message and also illuminates the amber DSC OFF warning lamp. See **78, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Switching the DSC system off reduces the level of traction control intervention and may lead to an increase in wheel spin.

Note: *The DSC system cannot be disabled if the automatic (**AUTO**) terrain response driving program is currently selected. See **180, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.*

In some driving conditions, it may be appropriate to disable the DSC system to improve traction.

Examples of some appropriate conditions for switching the DSC system off, include:

- Rocking the vehicle out of a hollow or deep rut.
- Pulling away in deep snow or on a loose surface.
- Driving through deep sand or mud.

SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL ON

Note: *If the vehicle's cruise control system is currently enabled, it automatically disables when the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system activates.*

Note: *Switching the ignition off and on always reverts the DSC system status to **DSC ON**, regardless of the previous status.*

The DSC system can be manually switched on if it is currently switched off. Touch and briefly hold the DSC **OFF** soft key, displayed on the lower touch screen. See **155, SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL OFF**.

The instrument panel displays the **DSC ON** message and also extinguishes the amber DSC OFF warning lamp. See **78, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)**.

The amber DSC warning lamp flashes when the DSC system activates.

DSC is automatically enabled for some terrain response driving programs. See **180, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

ACTIVE REAR LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL

Vehicles with an active rear locking differential have improved traction on uneven road surfaces.

In the event of overheating or a detected fault, the instrument panel displays a reduced traction warning message. The vehicle can still be driven, with extra care. If the fault persists, seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

During the first 1 600 km:

- Avoid full accelerator pedal applications and do not exceed a vehicle speed of more than 190 km/h (120 mph).

  Note: *Observe the national speed limits for the country in which the vehicle is travelling.*

- Avoid prolonged periods of driving at speeds in excess of 160 km/h (100 mph).

4 WHEEL DRIVE (4WD)

4 Wheel Drive (4WD) helps to enhance the vehicle's traction and stability on uneven and slippery road surfaces, and in adverse conditions.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

The vehicle automatically varies the status between 4WD and 2 Wheel Drive (2WD) to suit the prevailing conditions. The current status of the driveline's locking torque can be viewed via the **Off-Road Information** menu from the **4x4i** extra feature. See **187, OFF-ROAD INFORMATION**.

If a 4WD fault is detected, the instrument panel displays the **2 Wheel Drive Only Traction Reduced** warning message. In this event, the vehicle can still be driven with extra care in 2WD only. If the fault persists, consult a retailer/authorised repairer at the earliest opportunity.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Hill descent control (HDC)

HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) OVERVIEW



Do not attempt a steep descent if the Hill Descent Control (HDC) system is inoperative or warning messages are displayed. Doing so can potentially result in vehicle damage or personal injury.

The HDC system restricts the vehicle's speed to a set limit when travelling downhill.

The **HDC** icon is located on the lower touch screen. The speed limits for the HDC system are adjusted via the controls mounted on the right side of the steering wheel.

To operate the HDC system, proceed as follows:

1. **HDC** icon: Touch and briefly hold to enable the HDC system. The instrument panel displays a confirmation message and illuminates the HDC warning lamp to confirm selection. Touch and briefly hold the icon again to disable the HDC system. The instrument panel displays a confirmation message and extinguishes the HDC warning lamp to confirm deselection. See **79, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) (GREEN)**.

   Note: *The HDC system is automatically selected by some of the terrain response driving programs.*

   Note: *The HDC system is automatically deselected if the ignition is switched off for more than 6 hours.*

2. **SET+** button: Press and release to increase the descent set speed in increments of 1 km/h (0.6 mph). Alternatively, press and hold for larger incremental increases, up to the maximum permissible set speed.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Note: *Each gear has a predetermined maximum speed.*

Note: *The vehicle's speed only increases on a slope steep enough to increase momentum. Using the* ***SET+*** *button may not increase the vehicle's speed on a gentle slope.*

3. **-** button: Press and release to decrease the descent set speed in increments of 1 km/h (0.6 mph). Alternatively, press and hold for larger incremental decreases, down to the minimum permissible set speed.

   Note: *Each gear has a predetermined minimum speed.*

When the HDC system is enabled, the instrument panel displays a graphic showing the current set speed. The graphic also indicates the range of set speeds available for the current transmission gear selection.

Note: *The HDC system does not operate when Park (**P**) is selected. In this event, the instrument panel graphic illuminates grey.*

If the HDC system is deselected while operating, the warning lamp extinguishes. The HDC system operation fades out, allowing the vehicle's speed to gradually increase.

The HDC system only operates at vehicle speeds of less than 50 km/h (31 mph). At higher vehicle speeds, the HDC system operation is suspended. In this event, the instrument panel graphic illuminates grey and displays a warning message. The HDC warning lamp also flashes.

Note: *If the vehicle's speed exceeds 80 km/h (50 mph), the HDC system disables. The instrument panel displays a message and extinguishes the HDC warning lamp.*

If the brake pedal is pressed when the HDC system is active, a pulsation might be felt through the brake pedal. When the brake pedal is released, HDC operation resumes.

If an HDC system fault is detected, the instrument panel displays the **HDC Fault System Not Available** message. In this event, contact a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.

If a fault is detected during operation of the HDC system, HDC operation fades out.

GRADIENT RELEASE CONTROL (GRC)

The Gradient Release Control (GRC) system operates when the vehicle is pulling away from standstill on an incline or a decline. When the vehicle's brakes are released, the GRC system automatically delays and graduates the brake release to allow the vehicle to pull away smoothly.

The GRC system automatically operates in forward and reverse gears. No driver intervention is required.

If the brakes are applied with the Hill Descent Control (HDC) system enabled, the GRC system activates to allow a smooth transition into HDC operation.

The GRC system does operate if the terrain response sand driving program is enabled. See **181, SAND**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

BRAKE TEMPERATURE

In extreme circumstances, prolonged use of the Hill Descent Control (HDC) system may cause excessive brake temperatures. In this event, the instrument panel displays the **HDC Temporarily Unavailable** warning message. The HDC system operation fades out and becomes temporarily inactive.

When the brake temperatures have returned to normal, the instrument panel message extinguishes and the HDC system operation resumes.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

SPEED LIMITER OVERVIEW

Speed limiters are driving aids only. Driving with due care and attention, and in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants and other road users, remains the driver's responsibility. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.

In certain conditions, such as a steep downhill gradient, the vehicle's speed may exceed the set speed limit. Driver intervention may be required as engine braking is unable to maintain or reduce the vehicle's speed. Driving at speeds above the set speed limit may infringe on local laws.

Note: *Speed limiters are not available when cruise control is in operation. When the vehicle's ignition is first switched on, the vehicle reverts to whichever system was used previously, either cruise control or the speed limiter.*

Two types of speed limiter are available:

- Speed limiter.
- Adaptive speed limiter.

The speed limiter allows the driver to manually restrict the maximum vehicle speed.

The adaptive speed limiter works in conjunction with the traffic sign recognition and navigation systems to restrict the maximum vehicle speed.



E196492

To switch the speed limiter function on, press the **LIM** button on the steering wheel.

Note: *When the vehicle's ignition is first switched on, and the speed limiter function is selected, speed limiter always displays first. To switch between the speed limiter and the adaptive speed limiter, press and hold the* ***CANCEL*** *button on the steering wheel.*

To activate the speed limiter, see **161, SPEED LIMITER CONTROLS**.

To activate the adaptive speed limiter, see **163, ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER CONTROLS**.

SPEED LIMITER CONTROLS

The speed limiter is a driving aid only. Driving with due care and attention, and in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users, remains the driver's responsibility. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Speed limiter

In certain conditions, such as a steep downhill gradient, the vehicle's speed may exceed the set speed limit. Driver intervention may be required as engine braking is unable to maintain or reduce the vehicle's speed. Driving at speeds above the set speed limit may infringe on local laws.

Note: *The speed limiter is not available when cruise control is in operation. When the vehicle's ignition is first switched on, the vehicle reverts to whichever system was used previously, either cruise control or speed limiter.*



1. **SET+**.
2. **-**.
3. **RESUME**.
4. **CANCEL**.
5. **LIM**.

The speed limiter allows the driver to manually restrict the maximum vehicle speed via the steering wheel controls. When a maximum speed limit is set, the vehicle responds normally until the set speed is reached. At this point, the vehicle stops accelerating.

Note: *The speed limiter only operates at speeds upward of 30 km/h (19 mph).*

To switch the speed limiter on, press the **LIM** button. The instrument panel displays an information lamp that confirms the speed limiter has been selected. See **78, SPEED LIMITER (AMBER)**.

LIM also illuminates amber on the steering wheel controls to confirm the speed limiter has been selected.

The speed limiter does not operate until activated. To activate the speed limiter:

1. Press the **SET+** button. The vehicle's speed is now limited to the speed it was travelling at when the button was pressed. If the vehicle is stationary when the **SET+** button is pressed, the system sets the speed limit to 30 km/h (19 mph).
2. Press and hold the **SET+** button to increase the speed limiter's set speed in 10 km/h (5 mph) steps. Press and release the **SET+** button to increase the speed limiter's set speed by 2 km/h (1 mph).

Note: *A message displays in the instrument panel if the criteria for speed limiter operation are not met.*

Press and hold the **-** button to lower the speed limiter's set speed in 10 km/h (5 mph) steps. Press and release the **-** button to lower the speed limiter's set speed by 2 km/h (1 mph).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Press the **CANCEL** button to suspend speed limiter operation. Press either the **RESUME** button or the **SET+** button to resume speed limiter operation. Pressing the **RESUME** button activates the previous set speed. Pressing the **SET+** button limits the vehicle's speed to the speed it is travelling at when the button is pressed.

The speed limiter's set speed can be overridden if rapid acceleration is required. Rapid acceleration is also known as kickdown. See **137, AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION**.

If kickdown is required, the vehicle accelerates past the speed limiter's set speed. When the vehicle's speed drops below the speed limiter's set speed, any speed limitations are reapplied.

ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER CONTROLS

The adaptive speed limiter is a driving aid only. Driving with due care and attention, and in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants and other road users, remains the driver's responsibility. The driver should still observe all other road signs, road markings, and situations that are not detected or recognised by the traffic sign recognition system. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.

In certain conditions, such as a steep downhill gradient, the vehicle's speed may exceed the set speed limit. Driver intervention may be required as engine braking is unable to maintain or reduce the vehicle's speed. Driving at speeds above the set speed limit may infringe on local laws.

Note: *The adaptive speed limiter is not available when cruise control is in operation.*



1. **SET+**.
2. **-**.
3. **RESUME**.
4. **CANCEL**.
5. **LIM**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Speed limiter

The adaptive speed limiter works in conjunction with the traffic sign recognition and navigation systems to restrict the maximum vehicle speed. The maximum speed is set, based on the information received from both of these systems. If the system cannot determine a valid maximum speed, the adaptive speed limiter is deactivated and the speed limiter is activated. See **161, SPEED LIMITER CONTROLS**.

To switch the adaptive speed limiter on, press the **LIM** button on the steering wheel. Depending on vehicle status, the instrument panel displays either the speed limiter or the adaptive speed limiter information lamp. If speed limiter is displayed, press and hold the **CANCEL** button on the steering wheel. The speed limiter information lamp is replaced with the adaptive speed limiter information lamp to confirm that the adaptive speed limiter has been selected. See **76, ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER (AMBER)**.

The adaptive speed limiter does not operate until activated. To activate the adaptive speed limiter, press the **SET+** button or the **RESUME** button on the steering wheel. The instrument panel and Head-Up Display (HUD) display detected speed limits as icons. See **71, HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD)**.

Note: *The adaptive speed limiter can also be switched on and off via the* ***Driver Assistance*** *instrument panel menu. If cruise control is in operation, this option is greyed-out in the instrument panel. See* ***68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU****.*

If the adaptive speed limiter detects a speed limit lower than the current vehicle speed, the system automatically slows the vehicle to meet the speed limit. Pressing the **RESUME** button on the steering wheel increases the rate of deceleration.

If the adaptive speed limiter detects a speed limit higher than the current vehicle speed, the system allows the driver to accelerate. The vehicle stops accelerating when the detected speed limit is reached. Pressing the **RESUME** button on the steering wheel increases the rate of acceleration.

To suspend adaptive speed limiter operation, press the **CANCEL** button on the steering wheel. To resume adaptive speed limiter operation, press the **RESUME** button or the **SET+** button on the steering wheel.

When the adaptive speed limiter is active, vehicle speed may increase in certain conditions, e.g., when travelling downhill. A warning message displays in the instrument panel if the vehicle's speed rises by more than 3.5 km/h (2 mph) above the adaptive speed limiter detected speed limit. If the vehicle's speed rises by more than 7 km/h (5 mph) above the adaptive speed limiter's detected speed limit for 4 seconds, a chime also sounds.

The adaptive speed limiter's detected speed limit can be overridden if rapid acceleration is required. Rapid acceleration is also known as kickdown. See **137, AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION**.

If kickdown is required, the vehicle accelerates past the adaptive speed limiter's detected speed limit. When the vehicle's speed drops below the adaptive speed limiter's detected speed limit, any speed limitations are reapplied.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

The adaptive speed limiter's detected speed limit can be adjusted, if required, to control the vehicle's speed at just above or below the detected speed limit. To adjust the detected speed limit:

- Press the **SET+** button to raise the maximum vehicle speed 2 km/h (1 mph) above the detected speed limit. The maximum increase available is 10 km/h (6 mph) above the detected speed limit. Press and hold the **SET+** button to raise the maximum vehicle speed directly to 10 km/h (6 mph) above the detected speed limit.
- Press the **-** button to lower the maximum vehicle speed 2 km/h (1 mph) below the detected speed limit. The maximum decrease available is 10 km/h (6 mph) below the detected speed limit. Press and hold the **-** button to lower the maximum vehicle speed directly to 10 km/h (6 mph) below the detected speed limit.

⚠ **Speed limiters are convenience features only. Speed limiters do not remove the driver's responsibility to adhere to the legal road speed limit.**

Note: *Any adjustments to the adaptive speed limiter's detected speed limit are lost if the speed limiter is activated, or the vehicle's ignition is switched off.*

If the traffic sign recognition system cannot determine a valid speed limit, it displays **- - -**. If this occurs, the adaptive speed limiter remains set at the last known valid speed limit. If the traffic sign recognition system is unable to detect a valid speed limit within a short period of time, the adaptive speed limiter is deactivated. If this occurs, the speed limiter is activated.

Adaptive speed limiter limitations

The following adaptive speed limiter operating limitations apply:

- Adaptive speed limiter performance and accuracy is only as good as the information provided to it by the traffic sign recognition system. See **198, TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION**.
- Adaptive speed limiter performance and accuracy is only as good as the information provided to it by the navigation system. Always make sure the system is operating correctly, and has the latest software. See **291, MAP UPDATES**.
- The maximum speed limit recognised by the adaptive speed limiter is 130 km/h (80 mph). For any detected speeds above this figure, the adaptive speed limiter sets an unlimited maximum speed.
- The minimum speed limit recognised by the adaptive speed limiter is 30 km/h (19 mph). For any detected speeds below this figure, the adaptive speed limiter sets a speed limit of 30 km/h (19 mph). The instrument panel displays the message **LIMITER SET SPEED ABOVE SPEED LIMIT**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Cruise control

USING CRUISE CONTROL

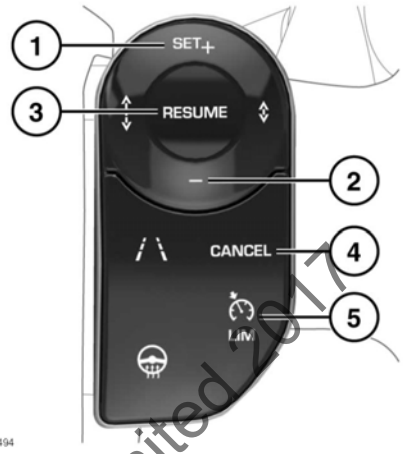
The driver must always make sure that a safe speed is maintained within the speed limit, taking account of traffic and road conditions. Driving at unsafe speeds increases the risk of an accident.

In certain conditions, such as a steep downhill gradient, the vehicle speed may exceed the set cruising speed. Driver intervention may be required as engine braking is unable to maintain or reduce the vehicle speed. Driving at speeds above the set cruising speed may infringe on local laws.

Do not use cruise control in heavy traffic, or conditions where a constant road speed cannot be safely maintained. Conditions include, but are not limited to, roads that are winding, wet with rain or snow, slippery or unpaved. In these conditions increases the risk of loss of control of the vehicle.

Note: *Cruise control is not available when using Hill Descent Control (HDC) or when the sand, mud-ruts, or rock crawl terrain response programs are selected.*

Note: *Do not use cruise control when driving off-road.*



1. **SET+**.
2. **-**.
3. **RESUME**.
4. **CANCEL**.
5. **LIM**.

Cruise control allows the vehicle to automatically maintain a set vehicle speed. The system is operated by controls mounted on the steering wheel. The driver can also intervene at any time by using the brake or accelerator pedals.

While driving at the desired speed, press the **SET+** button to activate cruise control. The instrument panel displays an information lamp to confirm that the system is operational. See **79, CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)**.

The **LIM** icon on the steering wheel controls also illuminates green to confirm cruise control is operational.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Depending on the vehicle's specification, the speedometer also displays the set speed as a marker on the speedometer or as a numeric display. The set speed can also be displayed in the Head-Up Display (HUD). See **71, HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD)**.

Note: *Cruise control can only be activated at speeds above 32 km/h (20 mph).*

To increase the set speed, press the **SET+** button. A single press of the button raises the vehicle's speed by 2 km/h (1 mph). Pressing the accelerator pedal can also increase the set speed. When the new desired speed is reached, press the **SET+** button.

Note: *Cruise control is cancelled if the accelerator pedal is pressed to override the system for more than 5 minutes.*

Press the **-** button to lower the set speed. A single press of the button lowers the vehicle's speed by 2 km/h (1 mph).

Press the **CANCEL** button to cancel cruise control. The set speed is retained in the system's memory until the vehicle's ignition is switched off.

Press the **RESUME** button to resume the set speed from the system's memory.

The RESUME button should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it. Pressing the RES button when not aware of the set speed may lead to loss of control of the vehicle.

Cruise control also cancels if:

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The gear selector is moved to Neutral (**N**) or Reverse (**R**).
- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is activated.
- Hill Descent Control is (HDC) activated.

Press the **LIM** button to switch between cruise control and the speed limiter. See **73, OVERVIEW**.

Note: *Cruise control is not available when the speed limiter is in operation. When the vehicle's ignition is first switched on, the vehicle reverts to whichever system was used previously, either cruise control or the speed limiter.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Adaptive cruise control

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW

Adaptive cruise control is not a substitute for driving safely, with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.

Adaptive cruise control may not function properly under all weather and road conditions. Do not use adaptive cruise control in poor visibility, specifically fog, heavy rain, spray or snow. Using adaptive cruise control in these conditions increases the risk of loss of control of the vehicle.

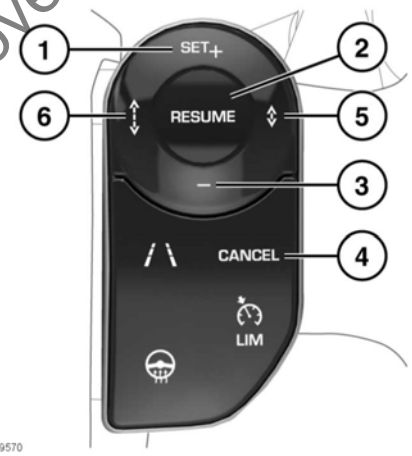
Adaptive cruise control does not react to pedestrians or objects in the roadway. Additionally, adaptive cruise control does not react to stationary or slow moving vehicles travelling below 10 km/h (6 mph), or oncoming vehicles in the same lane. Always drive with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.

Adaptive cruise control uses a radar sensor mounted at the front of the vehicle, behind a duct in the lower cooling aperture. Keep this area of the vehicle clean and free from obstructions, e.g., stickers, debris, mud, snow, or ice. Failure to keep this area of the vehicle clean and free from obstructions may result in the system failing to identify objects ahead.

Adaptive cruise control comprises a number of different features including:

- Cruise control. See **166, USING CRUISE CONTROL**.
- Follow mode. See **170, FOLLOW MODE**.
- Queue assist. See **171, QUEUE ASSIST**.
- Forward alert. See **173, FORWARD ALERT**.
- Advanced Emergency Brake Assist (AEBA). See **174, ADVANCED EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (AEBA)**.
- Intelligent Emergency Braking (IEB). See **174, INTELLIGENT EMERGENCY BRAKING (IEB)**.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OPERATION



1. **SET+**: Press to increase or set a speed.
2. **RESUME**: Press to resume a set speed.
3. **-**: Press to reduce a set speed.
4. **CANCEL**: Press to cancel adaptive cruise control.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

5. Press to reduce the follow mode gap. See **170, FOLLOW MODE**.
6. Press to increase the follow mode gap. See **170, FOLLOW MODE**.

ACTIVATING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

Before using adaptive cruise control, it is important to be aware of the following:

- Only use adaptive cruise control when the conditions are favourable. For example, on major roads with traffic moving in lanes.
- Do not use adaptive cruise control on icy or slippery roads.
- Staying alert, driving safely, and being in control of the vehicle at all times is the responsibility of the driver.
- Do not use adaptive cruise control during abrupt or sharp turns. For example, traffic islands, junctions, areas with many parked vehicles, or areas shared with pedestrians.

Adaptive cruise control is activated in the same way as cruise control. Make sure to fully release the accelerator pedal. See **166, USING CRUISE CONTROL**.

Note: *Adaptive cruise control only operates when Drive (**D**) or Sport (**S**) is selected.*

Adaptive cruise control monitors the lane ahead of the vehicle, and automatically enters follow mode if it detects a slower moving vehicle. See **170, FOLLOW MODE**.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL DRIVER INTERVENTION

Press the accelerator or brake pedal to override adaptive cruise control at any time.

Pressing the accelerator pedal inhibits adaptive cruise control braking. The instrument panel displays the message **CRUISE OVERRIDE** and the follow mode amber warning lamp extinguishes. When the accelerator pedal is released, adaptive cruise control operation resumes.

The amount of braking applied by the adaptive cruise control system is limited. The instrument panel displays the message **DRIVER INTERVENE** if the systems braking limits are reached. The driver should intervene immediately and apply a higher level of braking force using the brake pedal. Adaptive cruise control cancels when the brake pedal is pressed. Press the **RESUME** button on the steering wheel to resume adaptive cruise control operation.

Note: *The adaptive cruise control system illuminates the brake lights when it applies the brakes.*

Note: *The auto stop/start system may stop the engine while the vehicle is stationary in a queue. Press the accelerator pedal for a longer period of time than normal to move the vehicle forward. A short press of the accelerator pedal only starts the engine.*

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTO OFF

Adaptive cruise control automatically deactivates, but does not clear its memory, when:

- The **CANCEL** button (**4**) on the steering wheel is pressed. See **168, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OPERATION**.
- The brake pedal is pressed.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

- The radar sensor at the front of the vehicle becomes blocked. See **168, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW**.
- Hill Descent Control (HDC) is selected.
- Certain terrain response programs are selected, e.g., sand or mud-ruts.
- The difference between the vehicle's current speed and the adaptive cruise control set speed is too great.
- The accelerator is used to raise the vehicle's speed above the adaptive cruise control set speed for a long period of time.
- The vehicle's maximum speed is reached.
- The engine's maximum speed is reached.

Depending on circumstances, adaptive cruise control may automatically deactivate, but does not clear its memory, when:

- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) activates.
- Electronic Traction Control (ETC) activates.

Adaptive cruise control automatically deactivates, and its memory is cleared when:

- The vehicle's ignition is switched off.
- A fault occurs in the adaptive cruise control system.

Pressing the **SET+** or **RESUME** buttons on the steering wheel reactivates adaptive cruise control.

The RESUME button should only be pressed if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it. Pressing the RESUME button when not aware of the set speed may lead to loss of control of the vehicle.

FOLLOW MODE

When adaptive cruise control identifies a slower-moving vehicle in the lane ahead, it automatically enters follow mode. Adaptive cruise control adjusts the vehicle's speed to maintain a set gap to the vehicle ahead. The system does this by controlling the accelerator and brakes.

When in follow mode, the vehicle may not decelerate automatically to a stop, nor does the vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a collision.

The follow mode amber warning lamp illuminates in the instrument panel to confirm that follow mode is active. See **78, FOLLOW MODE (AMBER)**.

The instrument panel also displays the gap setting in the form of a vehicle image with a number of bars in front of it.

Follow mode maintains a constant gap to the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed above the adaptive cruise control set speed. If this occurs, the vehicle stops accelerating when the set speed is reached.
- The vehicle ahead moves out of lane or out of view. If this occurs, the vehicle accelerates to the adaptive cruise control set speed.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

- A new follow mode gap is selected. See **171, CHANGING THE FOLLOW MODE GAP**.

If the direction indicators are used, adaptive cruise control reduces the gap to the vehicle ahead to anticipate a manoeuvre. If a manoeuvre is not carried out, adaptive cruise control restores the previous gap setting after a few seconds.

Note: *Adaptive cruise control may not reduce the gap to the vehicle ahead if it is deemed inappropriate. For example, the vehicle ahead is already too close or the manoeuvre has already been completed.*

CHANGING THE FOLLOW MODE GAP

The driver is responsible for selecting a gap appropriate for the driving conditions.

Follow mode has four different gap settings. Gap 3 is the default gap setting when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

To decrease the follow mode gap, press the small double-ended arrow (**5**) on the steering wheel. To increase the follow mode gap, press the large double-ended arrow (**6**) on the steering wheel. See **168, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OPERATION**.

The instrument panel displays a vehicle image with a number of bars when the follow mode gap is adjusted. The number of bars displayed in front of the vehicle image reflects the follow mode gap setting.

Note: *Adaptive cruise control automatically sets the follow mode gap to gap 4 if terrain response grass/gravel/ snow mode is selected.*

QUEUE ASSIST

Queue assist enhances the adaptive cruise control follow mode feature. See **170, FOLLOW MODE**.

Queue assist operates at lower speeds than follow mode, allowing the system to be used in slow-moving lines of traffic. Queue assist activates when adaptive cruise control is active and when a vehicle in the lane ahead slows to a standstill. Queue assist brings the vehicle to a standstill. Briefly press the accelerator pedal when the vehicle ahead moves forward. Adaptive cruise control now maintains a constant gap to the vehicle ahead.

Queue assist may not recognise a stationary vehicle or object. It is important that the driver is prepared to press the brake pedal when approaching stationary vehicles or objects, to avoid an impact if necessary.

In certain conditions, queue assist also applies the Electric Parking Brake (EPB).

SWITCHING FOLLOW MODE OFF

Switching follow mode off allows the driver to take control of the vehicle's speed. When follow mode is switched off, the adaptive cruise control system does not provide any vehicle braking. Vehicle braking needs to be applied by the driver.

Press and hold the follow mode gap decrease button (**5**) on the steering wheel to switch follow mode off. The follow mode amber warning lamp extinguishes. The follow mode off grey warning lamp illuminates to confirm follow mode has been switched off.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

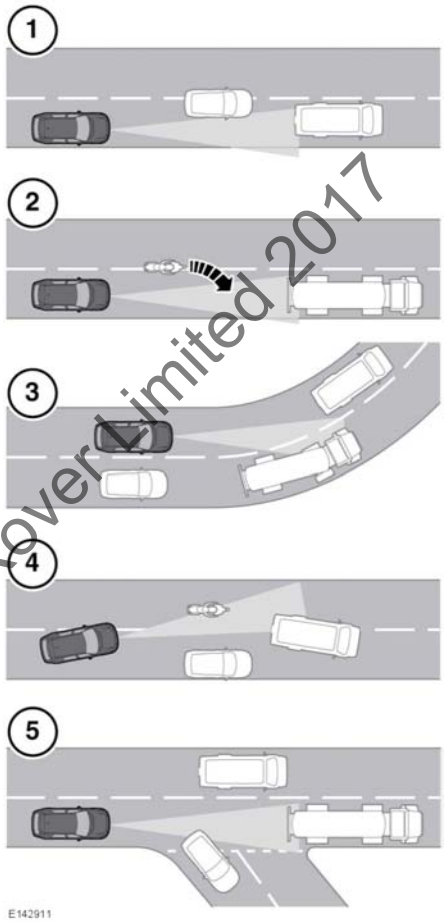
Note: *If the follow mode gap decrease button (**5**) is held for too long, the request to switch follow mode off is ignored.*

Press and release either the decrease (**5**) or increase (**6**) button on the steering wheel to switch follow mode back on. The follow mode off grey warning lamp extinguishes. The follow mode amber warning lamp illuminates to confirm follow mode has been switched back on. The previous follow mode gap setting is resumed.

Adaptive cruise control automatically resumes follow mode if:

- The vehicle's ignition is switched off.
- Adaptive cruise control is not used for a long period of time.

RADAR SENSOR DETECTION BEAM LIMITATIONS



The adaptive cruise control system may operate unexpectedly in the following conditions. The driver should remain alert and intervene, if necessary.

1. When driving on a different line to the vehicle in front.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

2. When a vehicle edges into the same lane as the vehicle being driven. The vehicle is only detected once it has moved fully into the same lane.
3. When entering or exiting a bend, vehicles in front may not be detected.
4. When moving around a stationary vehicle. The detection beam may become uncertain as to which vehicle should be followed.
5. When the vehicle in front turns out of the lane you are travelling in. The detection beam may become uncertain as to which vehicle should be followed.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL MALFUNCTION

If a fault occurs in the adaptive cruise control system, or in any of its features, the instrument panel displays a message. If this occurs, adaptive cruise control does not operate. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer at the earliest opportunity.

Accumulations of dirt, snow, or ice on the radar sensor or cover may inhibit adaptive cruise control operation. Fitting a protector or metalised badges to the front of the vehicle may also affect adaptive cruise control operation. **DRIVER INTERVENE** followed by **RADAR SENSOR BLOCKED** displays in the instrument panel if adaptive cruise control operation is affected in this way. Clearing the obstruction allows the system to return to normal operation. Operation is resumed automatically once the obstruction is removed.

RADAR SENSOR BLOCKED may also display temporarily in the instrument panel if the radar's vision is disrupted. For example, in poor weather conditions, when travelling through a tunnel, or in complex traffic situations.

Note: ***RADAR SENSOR BLOCKED*** *may also display in the instrument panel when travelling on open roads with few objects for the radar to detect.*

Note: *Non-recommended tyres may have a different circumference to those recommended for this vehicle. Tyres with a different circumference can affect the performance and operation of the adaptive cruise control system.*

FORWARD ALERT

The forward alert feature may not react to slow-moving vehicles.

The forward alert feature monitors an area in front of the vehicle. The forward alert feature can be switched on and off via the **Driver Assistance** instrument panel menu. An information lamp illuminates in the instrument panel to confirm the feature is active. See **79, FORWARD ALERT (GREEN)**.

If the forward alert feature detects an object within the detection area, a warning sounds and the instrument panel displays the message **FORWARD ALERT**. The driver is responsible for taking appropriate action.

CHANGING THE FORWARD ALERT SENSITIVITY

The sensitivity of the forward alert feature can be changed as follows:

1. Switch the vehicle's ignition on.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

2. Make sure cruise control and adaptive cruise control are not switched on.
3. Press the decrease button (**5**) on the steering wheel to decrease the sensitivity of the system. When pressed for the first time, the instrument panel displays the current setting and **FWD ALERT <->**. Press the decrease button a second time to decrease the sensitivity of the system.
4. Press the increase button (**6**) on the steering wheel to increase the sensitivity of the system. When pressed for the first time, the instrument panel displays the current setting and **FWD ALERT <--->**. Press the increase button a second time to increase the sensitivity of the system.

The forward alert sensitivity setting is retained in the system's memory after the vehicle's ignition is switched off.

ADVANCED EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (AEBA)

The Advanced Emergency Brake Assist (AEBA) feature may not react to slow-moving vehicles. Always drive with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.

The AEBA feature does not react to stationary vehicles or vehicles travelling in the opposite direction. Always drive with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.

In some circumstances, warnings may not appear in the instrument panel. For example, if the distance to the vehicle ahead is very small. Another example includes when carrying out a collision avoidance manoeuvre by making large steering wheel and pedal movements.

AEBA prepares the braking system if it detects a collision is imminent. If the driver subsequently presses the brake pedal, full braking force is applied immediately.

AEBA operates at speeds above approximately 8 km/h (5 mph). AEBA still operates if adaptive cruise control and forward alert are switched off.

If forward alert is switched on, AEBA activates after the instrument panel displays the **FORWARD ALERT** warning. AEBA automatically applies a light braking force. Full braking force is applied immediately when the driver presses the brake pedal.

INTELLIGENT EMERGENCY BRAKING (IEB)

The Intelligent Emergency Braking (IEB) feature may not react to slow-moving vehicles. The driver must always drive with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.

The IEB feature does not react to stationary vehicles or vehicles travelling in the opposite direction. Always drive with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

In some circumstances, warnings and automatic braking may not occur. For example, if the distance to the vehicle ahead is very small. Another example includes when carrying out a collision avoidance manoeuvre by making large steering wheel and pedal movements.

IEB attempts to slow the vehicle automatically if it detects that a collision with a slower vehicle ahead is unavoidable. IEB operates at all speeds. IEB also operates if adaptive cruise control and forward alert are switched off.

A warning sounds if the IEB feature detects a collision is imminent. The IEB feature automatically applies the brakes if it detects that the collision has become unavoidable. **IEB System Was Activated** displays in the instrument panel after the IEB feature has activated.

Note: *IEB will not work again until the system has been reset by a retailer/ authorised repairer.*

Note: *The distance required to slow or stop the vehicle is dependent on the condition of the vehicle's tyres and the road surface.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

All terrain progress control (ATPC)

ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) OVERVIEW

Use extreme care when manoeuvring the vehicle in a reverse direction, to avoid serious injury or death.

The All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) system helps the driver to manoeuvre the vehicle on slippery surfaces, e.g., snow, grass, gravel, sand, and mud.

When the ATPC system is enabled, with the brake pedal fully released, the system helps to provide controlled and progressive assistance for the vehicle to:

- Pull away from a standstill, in a forward or reverse direction on level ground, and uphill or downhill.
- Perform low speed manoeuvring in a forward or reverse direction.
- Make progress and maintain a selected set speed up to a maximum of 30 km/h (19 mph).

USING ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)

Do not adjust the lower touch screen controls, or allow the All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.

Note: *Do not attempt a steep descent if the ATPC system is not enabled, or if the instrument panel displays warning messages.*

Note: *The driver must maintain full control of the steering and brakes at all times.*

Note: *The ATPC system cannot be enabled if the advanced tow assist, park assist, or wade sensing features are currently enabled.*

Note: *The vehicle's cruise control, speed limiter, and auto stop/start systems are disabled during operation of the ATPC system.*

The lower touch screen's **Vehicle** menu displays an icon that enables or disables the ATPC system.



Touch the **Vehicle** soft key at the top of the lower touch screen to display the **Vehicle** menu. See **204, LOWER TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**.



To enable the ATPC system, touch the **ATPC** icon displayed on the **Vehicle** menu screen. The instrument panel displays a message prompting to select the set speed for the vehicle and also illuminates the amber ATPC warning lamp to confirm. See **76, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) (AMBER)**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Touch the **ATPC** icon again to disable the system. The instrument panel displays an ATPC off confirmation message and also extinguishes the ATPC warning lamp to confirm.

Note: *The driver can override the ATPC system operation at any time using the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal. The instrument panel displays an ATPC override message.*

The ATPC system can be enabled when the vehicle is stationary and when the vehicle is moving. When the vehicle is stationary, apply the brake pedal to maintain control of the vehicle.

The ATPC system's enabled status is retained for up to 6 hours after the ignition is switched off. After this time, it has to be reselected, if ATPC is still required when the ignition is switched on.

The ATPC system operation is influenced by the current terrain response driving program selection. For example, the grass/gravel/snow program requires gradual ATPC acceleration to help gain available wheel traction. The general program allows increased ATPC acceleration to help improve vehicle progress.

When enabled the ATPC system defaults to descent control mode, i.e., the system only limits the vehicle's downhill speed, using the brakes.

When the ATPC system enters descent control mode the instrument panel displays the **ATPC Descent Braking Only** confirmation message.

Use the ATPC system's descent control mode when travelling down a steep descent.

Operate as follows:

1. Select the correct driving program for the current terrain. See **180, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.
2. Select the required position for the gear selector.
3. Release the vehicle's brakes to allow gravity to make the vehicle progress up to the descent control mode's default speed. The currently selected terrain response driving program determines the descent control mode's default speed. The default speed varies from a minimum of 3.5 km/h (2.2 mph) and up to a maximum of 12 km/h (7.5 mph).
4. The ATPC system maintains the descent control mode's default speed. Unless the system detects the use of the accelerator or brake pedals, or the **SET+** button on the steering wheel controls. See **178, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) SETTINGS**.

   Note: *Descent control mode resumes when the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal, is released and the steering wheel's* ***SET+*** *button is not used.*

   Note: *If the steering wheel's* ***SET+*** *button is used, the ATPC system enters full function mode.*

When the ATPC system enters full function mode the instrument panel displays the **ATPC Speed Set** confirmation message.

Note: *The driver's seat belt must be buckled and all of the doors must be closed to enable the ATPC system to enter full function mode. If these conditions are not met, the instrument panel displays a message.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Note: *Low traction launch is disabled when the ATPC system enters full function mode. See* ***188, LOW TRACTION LAUNCH****.*

Full function mode controls the vehicle's speed via the use of both the brakes and engine torque.

Full function mode should be used for all other manoeuvres that require the vehicle to gain and make progress. For example, making an ascent, pulling away from a standstill, and driving on unstable and slippery driving surfaces.

The ATPC system defaults to descent control mode and the instrument panel displays a message, in the event that:

- The transmission is engaged in Neutral (**N**) or Park (**P**).
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The vehicle's brakes are firmly applied during operation of the ATPC system.

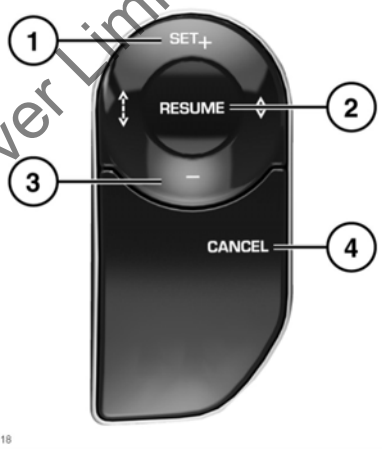
In the event that the vehicle's brake temperatures exceed the normal operating limits, the instrument panel displays a warning message. In this event, the ATPC system operation fades out and becomes temporarily inactive. When the brakes return to normal operating temperatures, the message extinguishes and the systems resumes normal operation.

If an ATPC system fault is detected, the instrument panel displays the **ATPC Not Available** message.

Some detected faults may allow the ATPC system to operate in descent control mode only. In this event the instrument panel displays the **ATPC Only Descent Control Available** message. Using the **-** button or the **SET+** button will adjust the descent control mode's set speed. Switching the ignition off and on again may reset the ATPC system.

If a detected fault persists, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) SETTINGS



When the All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) system is enabled, the desired set speed for the vehicle can be set and adjusted. Use the controls mounted on the right side of the steering wheel.

Operate as follows:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

1. **SET+** button: Press and release to enable the ATPC system to recognise that the desired set speed is to be set and adjusted. Press and release repeatedly, or press and hold, to increase the set speed up to a maximum speed of 30 km/h (19 mph). Alternatively, press the **SET+** button for the vehicle's current speed to be the set speed. The instrument panel displays the current set speed.

   Note: *When the vehicle is stationary, press and hold the brake pedal to maintain control of the vehicle while using the* ***SET+*** *button.*

   Note: *Light and gentle application of the accelerator pedal temporarily overrides the current set speed. When the accelerator pedal is fully released, the ATPC system reverts back to the previously selected set speed.*

   Note: *Selecting very low speeds when pulling away on slippery surfaces can affect the vehicle's ability to make progress. For improved pulling away performance, it is recommended to select a set speed that is sufficient to maintain the vehicle's progress.*

2. **RESUME** button: Press to resume the set speed if the vehicle's speed has been lowered via gentle application of the brake pedal.

   Note: ***RESUME*** *should only be used if the driver is aware of the current set speed and intends to return to it.*

3. **-** button: Press and release repeatedly, or press and hold, to decrease the desired set speed, down to a minimum of 3.5 km/h (2.2 mph).

   Note: *Light and gentle application of the brake pedal also lowers the set speed in full function mode. When the brake pedal is fully released, the ATPC system maintains the speed at which the vehicle was travelling when the brake pedal was released. If the brake pedal is pressed when the ATPC system is active, a slight pulsation movement may be felt through the brake pedal.*

4. **CANCEL** button: Press to cancel the set speed. The ATPC system exits full function mode and reverts to descent control mode. See **176, USING ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)**.

When the vehicle is travelling at speeds between 30 km/h (19 mph) and 80 km/h (50 mph), the ATPC system operation is suspended. The system enters standby mode and the instrument panel flashes the ATPC warning lamp. The ATPC system operation resumes when the vehicle's speed is less than 30 km/h (19 mph), but does not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph). If the vehicle's speed exceeds 80 km/h (50 mph), the ATPC system disables and the warning lamp extinguishes. If required, the ATPC system has to be switched on again.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION

Do not adjust the lower touch screen controls, or allow the terrain response system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can potentially lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.

The terrain response system consists of different driving programs that can be selected to suit the prevailing driving conditions, terrain, and the required driving style.

The lower touch screen displays the terrain response driving program options.



Touch the **Vehicle** menu soft key at the top of the lower touch screen to display the **Vehicle** menu. See **204, LOWER TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**.



Rotate the driver's side rotary control to scroll through and select the required terrain response driving program. Alternatively, touch the required on-screen icon. The icon for the currently selected terrain response driving program illuminates to confirm selection. The instrument panel and the rotary control also display the icon. The dynamic, mud ruts, and sand terrain response driving programs are retained for up to 6 hours after the ignition is switched off. After this time, the comfort terrain response driving program is automatically selected when the ignition is switched on.

Note: *The grass/gravel/snow, eco, and comfort terrain response driving programs remain selected indefinitely.*

Information relating to the suitability of each terrain response driving program for different types of surfaces can be displayed on the touch screen. Select the **Off-Road Information** menu from the **4x4i** extra feature. See **187, OFF-ROAD INFORMATION**.

Note: *Make sure that the correct terrain response driving program is selected for the current terrain and driving conditions.*

AUTO



Select the **AUTO** driving program to allow the vehicle to automatically select the appropriate driving program for the current driving style, conditions, and terrain.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

COMFORT



Select the comfort driving program when driving on-road or off-road, on surfaces which are similar to a hard road surface. For example, dry cobbles, tarmac, and dry wooden planks.

The comfort driving program returns all of the vehicle's systems to normal settings. Hill Descent Control (HDC) remains active if it was previously selected manually.

Select the comfort driving program when the need for any other terrain response driving program has passed.

GRASS/GRAVEL/SNOW



Select the grass/gravel/snow driving program when driving on a firm surface that is covered with loose or slippery material.

For deep snow and gravel, it is recommended to select the sand driving program. In the event that automatic brake system operation restricts the vehicle's progress, switch off the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system. The DSC system should be switched on again as soon as the difficulty is overcome. See **155, SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL OFF**.

MUD RUTS



Select the mud ruts driving program for terrain that is muddy, rutted, soft, or uneven.

SAND



Select the sand driving program for terrain which is predominantly soft. For example, dry sand, deep gravel, and deep snow.

In the event that automatic brake system operation restricts the vehicle's progress, switch off the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system. The DSC system should be switched on again as soon as the difficulty is overcome. **155, SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL OFF**.

If the current terrain is damp or wet sand, and deep enough to cause the wheels to sink, select the mud ruts driving program.

ECO



Select the **ECO** driving program to modify the vehicle's settings to help reduce fuel consumption and encourage a more efficient driving style. For example, the accelerator pedal response and the automatic gearshift changes are adjusted.

Selecting the **ECO** driving program may automatically change some of the settings for the heating and ventilation system. Deselecting the **ECO** driving program and the normal operation of each feature, cancels the automatic changes.

The possible automatic changes are as follows:

- The heated seats are switched off.
- The climate seats are switched off.
- The heated steering wheel is switched off.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

- The heated windscreen does not automatically switch on when the engine is started, if configured to switch on via the **CLIMATE SETTINGS**. See **248, CLIMATE SETTINGS**.
- The auto blower speed is set to low, if currently set to a high speed.
- The audio volume may also be adjusted if it is currently set to a high volume.

Note: *The **ECO** driving program may also make subtle changes to the rate of the cabin's heating or cooling, and also the amount of air recirculation.*

Note: *The availability of some features is dependent on the market and the specification of the vehicle.*

When the **ECO** driving program is selected, the instrument panel displays an instantaneous driving style rating.

The current driving style is compared against the **ECO** driving program system's recommended driving style.

The ECO Data system consists of a number of features that provide extra vehicle efficiency data and guidance. The **ECO Data** menu can be accessed via the **EXTRA FEATURES** menu from the touch screen. See **209, EXTRA FEATURES**.

Note: *The ECO Data features only begin recording data after the vehicle has travelled at least 1 km.*

Note: *The ECO Data features only monitor the driver's manual inputs, e.g., accelerator pedal, brake pedal, etc. Any automatic inputs from the vehicle, e.g., operation of the accelerator pedal and brake pedal via the automatic cruise control, are not measured. Any data not being measured and recorded illuminates grey in the instrument panel display.*

DYNAMIC



Select the dynamic driving program to coordinate the vehicle's control systems to deliver a high performance driving experience.

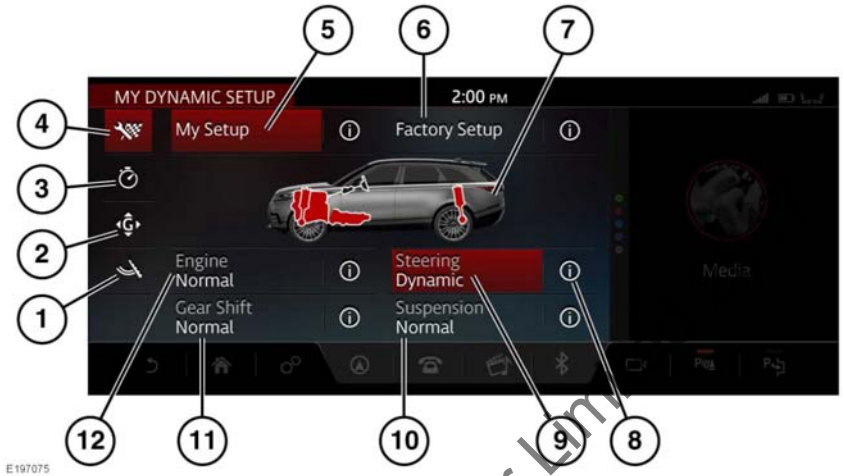
Note: *The dynamic driving program is a driving style setting, rather than a terrain response setting.*

Note: *The dynamic driving program remains selected for approximately 6 hours after the ignition is switched off. If required after this time, the dynamic driving program has to be selected again.*

During manual gear selection, with the dynamic driving program selected and the transmission in Sport (**S**), transmission up-shifts are fully controlled by the driver. In this condition, an automatic transmission does not change up automatically, even when the engine's revolution (rpm) speed limit is reached. The instrument panel briefly illuminates the gearshift indicator warning lamp at the recommended (up-shift) gear change point. See **79, GEARSHIFT (GREEN)**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

CONFIGURABLE DYNAMICS



Do not adjust the touch screen controls, or allow the configurable dynamics system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.

Vehicles supplied with the configurable dynamics feature allow the dynamic driving mode settings to be configured via the touch screen for selected vehicle characteristics.

To access the configurable dynamics feature, select **Dynamic-i** from the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen. See **209, EXTRA FEATURES**.

Alternatively, select the **configurable dynamics** icon from the **Vehicle** menu on the lower touch screen. See **204, LOWER TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**.

The touch screen displays a message if the dynamic driving program is not currently enabled.

Operate as follows:

1. **Pedal graph** icon: Touch to display a brake and accelerator graph, or a live display.
2. **G meter** icon: Touch to display the current amount and direction of G force.
3. **Stopwatch** icon: Touch to display live timings and split timings.

   Note: *When the* ***Press to split*** *soft key is selected, the stopwatch system disables for 3 seconds while the split time displays.*
4. **Settings** icon: Touch to display and adjust the configurable settings for the dynamic driving mode.
5. **My Setup** soft key: Touch to switch the user settings **On** or **Off**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

6. **Factory Setup** soft key: Touch to switch **On** or **Off**.
7. Selected dynamic functions display.
8. **Information** icon: Touch to display further information.
9. **Steering** soft key: Touch to select the **Dynamic** or **Normal** setting.
10. **Suspension** soft key: Touch to select the **Dynamic** or **Normal** setting.
11. **Gear Shift** soft key: Touch to select the **Dynamic** or **Normal** setting.
12. **Engine** soft key: Touch to select the **Dynamic** or **Normal** setting.

DRIVER OVERRIDE OPTIONS

The Hill Descent Control (HDC) system automatically engages for some terrain response driving programs. If required, the HDC system can be manually switched off or on. The instrument panel displays the current HDC status. See **158, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) OVERVIEW**.

The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system automatically engages after the selection of a terrain response driving program. If required, the DSC system can be manually switched off or on. See **155, SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL OFF**.

SYSTEM DIFFICULTIES

Incorrect use of a terrain response driving program impairs the vehicle's response to the current terrain. The vehicle's suspension and transmission systems may also be damaged.

If a temporary fault is detected, then selection of the required terrain response driving program may not be possible. If the fault persists, consult a retailer/ authorised repairer.

In the event of a permanent fault, all the terrain response driving programs' LED indicator lamps extinguish. The instrument panel also displays warning messages. In this event, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

If a participating vehicle system becomes temporarily inoperable, the comfort driving program is automatically selected. In this event, the instrument panel displays the **Terrain Response Special Programs Unavailable** message. Once the participating vehicle system operation resumes, the instrument panel displays the **Terrain Response System Reactivated** message. The comfort driving program remains enabled, but normal operation allows selection of the required terrain response driving program.

The following list of events may cause the currently selected terrain response driving program's LED indicator lamp to flash amber:

- Inappropriate selection of a terrain response driving program.
- Operation of the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system.
- Continued heavy demand of the steering system.
- Driver gear selection via the steering wheel’s paddle shifts.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

In these events, the instrument panel also displays further information. If appropriate action is not taken within 60 seconds, the warnings cease and the instrument panel displays the currently active terrain response driving program.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

4X4I

Do not adjust the lower touch screen controls, or allow the 4x4i system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can potentially lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.

Information and guidance features for off-road driving are displayed on the touch screen by selecting **4x4i** from the **EXTRA FEATURES** menu. See **209, EXTRA FEATURES**.

Alternatively, the 4x4i feature is also accessed via the lower touch screen's **Vehicle** menu.



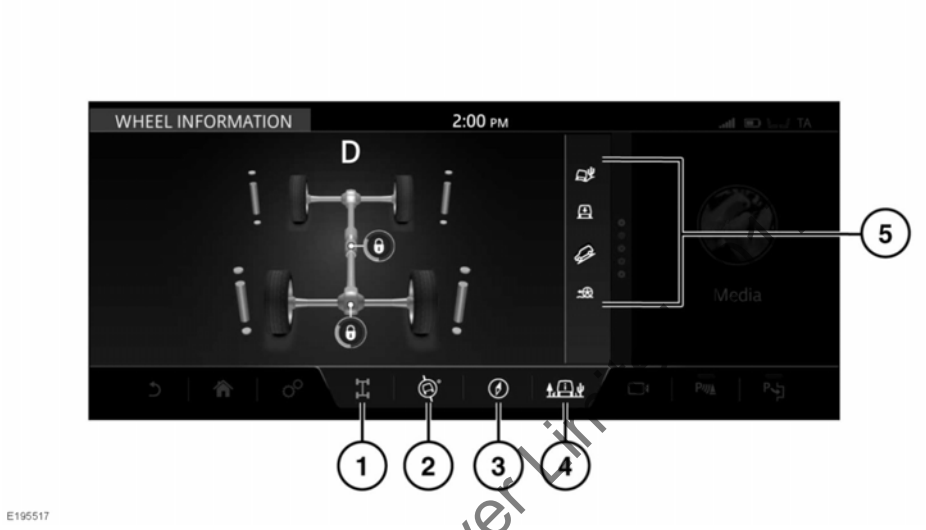
To display the **Vehicle** menu, touch the **Vehicle** soft key at the top of the lower touch screen. See **204, LOWER TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**.



Touch the **4x4i** icon from the **Vehicle** menu on the lower touch screen to enable the 4x4i feature.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

OFF-ROAD INFORMATION



Select **Off-Road Information** from the **4x4i** extra feature. See **186, 4X4I**.

Note: *The number of 4x4i features is dependent on the specification of the vehicle.*

The **Off-Road Information** can also be viewed on a virtual instrument panel by selecting **Info Panel** from the **Display** instrument panel menu. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The touch screen displays the following information:

1. **Wheel information** icon: Touch to display information about the vehicle's wheels, suspension, transmission, and driveline:
   - The current automatic transmission gear selection.
   - Vertical bar images at each wheel, indicate the current suspension movement for vehicles with the electronic air suspension system.
   - The displayed front wheels on the graphic move to indicate the current steering angle.
   - The differential lock symbols display increments to indicate the current status of the locking torque applied to the vehicle's driveline.
   - In the event that a wheel loses traction, i.e., wheel spin, a coloured arrow is displayed on the relevant wheel. A yellow arrow indicates low level wheel spin. An orange arrow indicates medium level wheel spin. A red arrow indicates high level wheel spin.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

2. **Slope assist** icon: Touch to display the vehicle's current pitch and roll angles. Warnings display when the maximum angle values are being approached or exceeded.
3. **Compass** icon: Touch to display the direction orientation of the vehicle. The current latitude, longitude, and altitude are also displayed.
4. **TR information** (terrain response) icon: Touch to display information and guidance for the currently selected terrain response driving program.

   Note: *Make sure that the vehicle is stationary, with the ignition switched on.*
5. Highlighted icons indicate other vehicle features that are currently enabled. For example, Hill Descent Control (HDC) and the currently selected terrain response driving program, etc.

   Note: *The number of available icons is dependent on the specification of the vehicle.*

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS

Various vehicle dimensions can be displayed on the touch screen.

Select **Vehicle Dimensions** from the **EXTRA FEATURES** menu. See **209, EXTRA FEATURES**.

Touch the alternative icon at the bottom of the screen to view other dimensions.

Note: *The current height of the vehicle is dependent on the current setting of the electronic air suspension system.*

LOW TRACTION LAUNCH

Low traction launch helps to further enhance low speed manoeuvring and pulling away from a standstill in adverse conditions.

Select **Low Traction Launch** from the **4x4i** extra feature on the touch screen. Follow the on-screen instructions. See **209, EXTRA FEATURES**.

The operation of low traction launch is further enhanced if the grass/gravel/snow driving program is enabled. See **181, GRASS/GRAVEL/SNOW**.

Low traction launch also operates if either the automatic (**AUTO**) driving program or the comfort driving program is selected. See **180, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

To allow the low traction launch feature to be enabled, make sure that:

- The vehicle is stationary.
- The accelerator pedal is not pressed.
- Either the grass/gravel/snow or the comfort driving program is enabled.
- All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) has not entered full function mode if ATPC is currently enabled. See **176, USING ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)**.

Low traction launch only operates at vehicle speeds below 30 km/h (19 mph).

Low speed manoeuvres, and pulling away from a standstill, are complete when the vehicle's speed reaches 30 km/h (19 mph). Low traction launch is then automatically disabled.

Low traction launch is also disabled if:

- ATPC is enabled and subsequently enters in to full function mode.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

- The dynamic, mud ruts, or sand driving programs are selected.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed to its full travel (kickdown).
- A system fault is detected. In this event, the touch screen and the instrument panel display a warning message.

DRIVE ASSIST

Drive assist is a surround camera feature that assists the driver with forward vehicle guidance while driving off-road. The drive assist feature displays the area directly ahead of the vehicle that may not be visible to the driver.

Select **Drive Assist** from the **4x4i** extra feature. See **209, EXTRA FEATURES**.

Note: *The drive assist feature may not operate correctly in certain conditions. For example, on top of a hill, if low light levels are present, or the cameras are dirty or obscured.*

The drive assist feature is disabled if Reverse (**R**) gear is engaged. The touch screen displays a rear-view camera image.

The drive assist feature is suspended if the vehicle's speed exceeds 30 km/h (19 mph) and the touch screen displays a message. Normal operation resumes when the vehicle's speed is less than 28 km/h (17 mph).

The touch screen camera view displays three images, from the front camera and each door mirror camera. Touch either of the door mirror camera views for a two image display, i.e., the selected door mirror camera view and the front camera view. Touch the **return** icon to return to the three image display.

WADE SENSING

The wade sensing feature should not be used during off-road driving. Rapid increases in water levels may not be detected in time to warn the driver. The potential result can be serious injury or death.

When entering water from a steep gradient, the water level may rise rapidly. The wade sensing feature may not be able to accurately warn the driver of the current water level. The potential result can be serious injury or death.

The wade sensing feature cannot detect accurate water levels if a layer of ice or snow exists on the surface of the water. The potential result can be serious injury or death.

The sensors for the wade sensing feature are located on the base of the door mirrors. The sensors must be kept clean and free from snow, ice, mud, and other debris. Failure to keep them clean can result in sensor miscalculation, potentially leading to vehicle damage.

If the door mirrors are in the fold position, the wade sensing feature operates but displays false information. The potential result may lead to vehicle damage.

The wade sensing feature aids the driver while driving through water. The touch screen displays the current detected water level and the vehicle's maximum wading depth.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

When the detected water level approaches the vehicle's maximum wading depth, warnings display on the touch screen and the instrument panel. Audible warning tones are also emitted.

Select **Wade Sensing** from the **4x4i** extra feature. See **209, EXTRA FEATURES**.

Note: *The wade sensing feature cannot be enabled if the All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) system is currently enabled. See* ***176, USING ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)****.*

If the wade sensing feature limitations are exceeded, the touch screen image illuminates grey and the water level no longer displays.

The wade sensing feature operation is suspended when the vehicle's speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph) or the current gradient exceeds 10°. Operation automatically resumes when the vehicle's speed returns to less than 10 km/h (6 mph) or the current gradient is less than 10°. If the vehicle's speed exceeds 30 km/h (19 mph) for 30 seconds, the wade sensing feature automatically switches off.

Note: *The door mirrors must be in the normal (unfolded) position for correct operation of the wade sensing feature.*

Note: *The wade sensing feature does not operate if the vehicle has fixed side steps, but does operate if the vehicle has fixed side tubes.*

Note: *Operation of the wade sensing feature disables: the parking aid system, the park assist system, and the auto stop/start system.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

BLIND SPOT MONITOR

The blind spot monitor system is a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style and use of the door mirrors and rear-view mirror. The system may not function under all speeds, weather, and road conditions. Drive safely at all times and use the door mirrors and rear view mirror to avoid accidents.

The blind spot monitor system may not be able to give adequate warning of vehicles approaching very quickly from behind.

The blind spot monitor system may not be able to detect all vehicles and may also detect objects such as roadside barriers, etc. Drive safely at all times and use the door mirrors and rear-view mirror to avoid accidents.

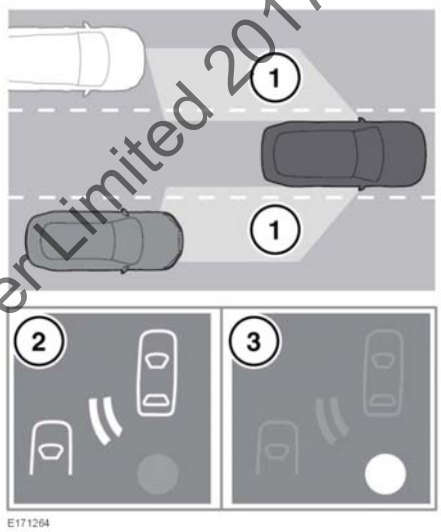
The blind spot monitor system does not correct errors of judgement in driving.

The radar sensors may be impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow, or road spray. The blind spot monitor system's ability to reliably detect a vehicle within the driver's blind spot may be affected.

Make sure that the warning icons and indicators in the door mirrors are not obscured by stickers or other objects.

Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper that may interfere with the radar sensors.

The blind spot monitor system monitors a zone that covers the area adjacent to the vehicle, which is not easily visible to the driver. The radars on each side of the vehicle identify any overtaking vehicle within the driver's blind spot area. The system disregards other objects which may be stationary or travelling in the opposite direction, etc.



1. Driver's blind spot area.
2. Door mirror warning vehicle icon: The amber warning vehicle icon illuminates in the door mirror when an overtaking vehicle is detected.
3. System disabled warning indicator: The amber warning indicator illuminates in both door mirrors when the system is not active.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

If an overtaking vehicle is detected by the blind spot monitor system, an amber warning vehicle icon illuminates in the relevant door mirror to alert the driver. There is a potential hazard in the vehicle's blind spot and, therefore, a lane change might be dangerous.

The radar monitors the area extending from the door mirrors rearward. The radar monitoring extends to the width of a typical carriageway lane. The radar monitoring is approximately 6 m behind the rear wheels and up to 2.5 m from the side of the vehicle. The blind spot monitor system is designed to work most effectively when driving on multi-lane roads.

Note: *The radar sensor is approved in all RTTE countries.*

Note: *The blind spot monitor system covers an area of a fixed lane width. When the lanes are narrower than a typical carriageway lane, objects travelling in non-adjacent lanes may be detected.*

Note: *If overtaking vehicles are detected on both sides simultaneously, the warning vehicle icon illuminates in both door mirrors.*

The blind spot monitor system automatically switches on and becomes active when the vehicle is travelling at more than 10 km/h (6 mph) in a forward gear. When the system initiates, it performs a self-check. During the self-check, the warning vehicle icons (**2**) in the mirrors illuminate alternately for a short period of time.

The amber system disabled warning indicator (**3**) remains illuminated until the vehicle's forward speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph).

The blind spot monitor system is automatically disabled and the amber system disabled warning indicator illuminates in the door mirrors when:

- Reverse (**R**) is selected.
- Park (**P**) is selected for vehicles with an automatic transmission.
- The vehicle's speed is below 6 km/h (4 mph).

The blind spot monitor system can be enabled or disabled in the **Driver Assistance** menu, via the instrument panel. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: *If a trailer is connected to an approved trailer socket, the blind spot monitor system is disabled. If the trailer's electrical plug is not connected to the socket, or a non-approved towing system is fitted, the blind spot monitor system remains active. However the system does not operate as intended.*

Note: *The blind spot monitor system may provide inaccurate results if the sensors are misaligned due to a bumper modification, a minor collision, or an impact.*

CLOSING VEHICLE SENSING

Closing vehicle sensing is a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style and use of the door mirrors and rear-view mirror.

The radar sensors may be impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow, or road spray. The system's ability to reliably detect a vehicle within the driver's blind spot may be affected.

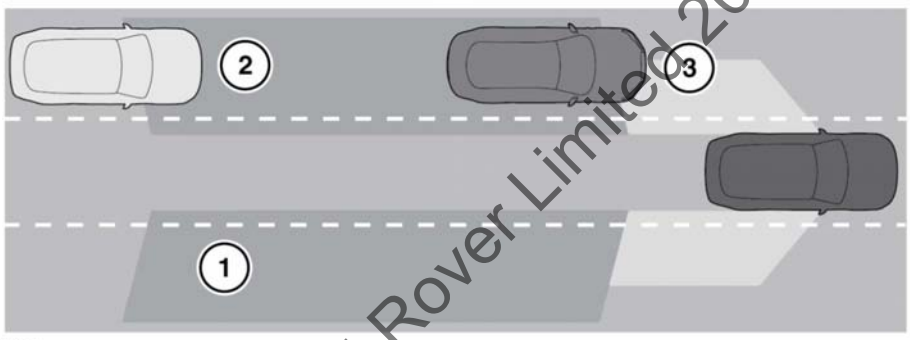
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Closing vehicle sensing does not correct errors of judgement in driving.

Make sure that the warning icons and indicators in the door mirrors are not obscured by stickers or other objects.

Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper that may interfere with the radar sensors.

In addition to the functionality provided by the blind spot monitor system, closing vehicle sensing monitors a larger area behind the vehicle. Closing vehicle sensing is designed to perform best on multi-lane roads with free-flowing traffic. The feature is operational above 10 km/h (6 mph) in a forward gear.



1. Monitored area behind and to the sides of the vehicle: Closing vehicle sensing monitors up to a distance of 70 m and approximately 2.5 m from each side of the vehicle, the width of a typical carriageway lane.
2. Detected vehicle in the monitored area: If a vehicle is detected approaching rapidly, an amber warning vehicle icon flashes in the relevant door mirror to alert the driver.
3. Driver's blind spot area: If the detected vehicle reaches the area monitored by the blind spot monitor system, the amber warning vehicle icon illuminates continuously. Normal operation of the system continues.

Note: *If rapidly approaching vehicles are detected on both sides simultaneously, the amber warning vehicle icons in both door mirrors flashes.*

Note: *Closing vehicle sensing covers an area of a fixed lane width. If the lanes are narrower than a typical carriageway lane, objects travelling in non-adjacent lanes may be detected.*

Note: *Closing vehicle sensing disables when the vehicle is negotiating a tight radius bend.*

Note: *Closing vehicle sensing is disabled when a trailer is attached.*

Note: *If the blind spot monitor is disabled, closing vehicle sensing also disables.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Note: *The radar sensor is approved in all RTTE countries.*

BLIND SPOT ASSIST

⚠ **The blind spot assist feature is a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style and use of the door mirrors and rear-view mirror. The feature may not function under all speeds, weather, and road conditions. Drive safely at all times, and use the door mirrors and rear-view mirror to avoid accidents.**

⚠ **The blind spot assist feature may not be able to detect all vehicles and may also detect objects such as roadside barriers, etc. Drive safely at all times and use the door mirrors and rear-view mirror to avoid accidents.**

⚠ **The blind spot assist feature does not correct errors of judgement in driving.**

⚠ **The blind spot monitor sensors and forward facing camera may be impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow, or road spray. The blind spot assist feature ability to reliably detect a vehicle may be affected.**

Make sure that the warning icons and indicators in the door mirrors are not obscured by stickers or other objects.

Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper and windscreen that may interfere with the blind spot monitor sensors and forward facing camera.

The blind spot assist feature is an enhancement of the blind spot monitor system. The blind spot assist feature determines the possible risk of a side collision, when a lane change manoeuvre is initiated.

The blind spot assist feature uses the blind spot monitor sensors and the forward facing camera.

If a lane change manoeuvre is made while a risk is detected, the door mirror warning vehicle icon flashes in the relevant door mirror. At the same time, a rotational force is automatically applied to the steering wheel to counter the lane change. The applied force indicates that a steering correction should be made to avoid the risk of a collision. The rotational force can still be overridden to make a lane change.

While a risk continues to be detected, the blind spot monitor system door mirror warning vehicle icon flashes.

The blind spot assist feature can be enabled or disabled, via the **Driver Assistance** menu, in the instrument panel. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: *The blind spot assist feature disables when the vehicle's speed falls below 64 km/h (40 mph).*

Note: *The blind spot assist feature disables when the vehicle is negotiating a tight radius bend.*

Note: *If a fault is detected with the blind spot monitor system, the blind spot assist feature becomes disabled.*

Note: *If a fault is detected with the lane departure warning system or Lane Keep Assist Feature (LKA), the blind spot assist feature becomes disabled.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

BLIND SPOT MONITOR SENSORS

The blind spot monitor system automatically disables if either of the sensors become completely obscured. The door mirrors display the amber system disabled warning indicator dot and the message centre displays the warning message **BLIND SPOT MONITOR SENSOR BLOCKED**.

Note: *Blockage testing initiates only when the vehicle's speed is above 10 km/h (6 mph). Testing takes at least 2 minutes of accumulated travelling above this speed, to determine that the sensor is blocked.*

When the sensors become blocked, check that there is nothing obscuring the rear bumper and that it is clear from ice, frost, and dirt.

When a fault with a radar sensor is detected, the door mirrors display the amber system disabled warning indicator dot. The message centre displays the warning message **BLIND SPOT MONITOR NOT AVAILABLE**.

Note: *Even if the detected fault affects the radar sensor on only one side of the vehicle, the whole system is disabled. When the fault is temporary, the system operates correctly once the engine has been switched off and then on again.*

When a fault in the system occurs, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING

The lane departure warning system is a driving aid only. The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention, and in manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users. The driver should still observe all road markings.

Low tyre pressure and/or steering tracking out of alignment affects the performance of the lane departure warning feature. Both of these conditions may apply an effect where constant steering adjustment is required.



The lane departure warning soft key is located on the right steering wheel control. Press (**1**) to enable or disable the lane departure warning system.

Note: *When the ignition is switched off and on again, the lane departure warning system settings remain as previously set.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

When the system is enabled, an icon illuminates in the instrument panel to confirm operation.

The vehicle's position within the lane is displayed graphically via the lane departure warning icon. As the vehicle moves within the lane, the icon displays any change of direction by changing colour. Green is used for tracking information. Red is used for warnings and grey is used when not tracking.

Additionally the driver can display the **Driver Assistance** view in the instrument panel. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

As the vehicle moves within the lane, the **Driver Assistance** view displays any change of direction by changing colour. White is used for tracking information and red is used for warnings.

The system uses the forward-facing camera, located in the base of the rear-view mirror.

Note: *Make sure the windscreen area in front of the rear-view mirror is kept clean and free of obstructions, e.g., stickers, debris, mud, snow, ice, etc.*

The driver is alerted when the vehicle crosses either of the lane markings that it is travelling within, without activation of the appropriate direction indicator. The system alerts the driver via one of the following methods:

- Steering wheel vibration.
- Red warning icons displayed in the instrument panel.

Only for vehicles fitted with both lane departure warning and Lane Keep Assist (LKA), the driver can select between **Steering Vibrate** or **Steering Assist**. See **197, LANE KEEP ASSIST**.

Note: *The lane departure warning system only provides warnings to the driver. The lane departure warning system does not assist in changing the direction of the vehicle or operate any of the vehicle's systems.*

Note: *The lane departure warning system does not detect unmarked edges of the road.*

The lane departure warning system is active between 60 km/h (37 mph) and 180 km/h (112 mph). Warnings are suppressed if driver intervention is detected, as follows:

- Operation of the brakes.
- Activation of the appropriate direction indicator.

Lane departure warning system limitations

- The lane in use must be wider than 2.5 m or less than 5.2 m.
- Not active in off-road conditions.
- Not available when the sand or mud-ruts terrain response programs are selected.

The performance of the lane departure warning system may also be affected in the following conditions:

- Driving in adverse conditions. For example, heavy fog, rain, snow, etc.
- Driving over worn, damaged, or temporary lane markings, e.g., road works, etc.
- Driving toward very bright lights.
- Driving very close to another vehicle.
- Tight deviations of the roads and their gradients.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

If the system detects a fault or is not available, a message is displayed in the instrument panel. If the fault does not clear after the ignition is switched off and on again, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

LANE KEEP ASSIST

Lane Keep Assist (LKA) is a driving aid only. The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention, and in manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users. The driver should still observe all road markings.

Low tyre pressure and/or steering tracking out of alignment affects the performance of the LKA feature. Both of these conditions may apply an effect where constant steering adjustment is required.

The LKA feature is an enhancement of the lane departure warning system.



The LKA feature uses the lane departure warning soft key located on the right steering wheel control. Press (**1**) to enable or disable the LKA feature.

Note: *If the ignition is switched off and on again, the LKA system settings remain as previously set.*

The LKA feature aids the driver to keep the vehicle in the current carriageway lane, e.g., while driving on a multi-lane road. if the vehicle becomes too close to lane markings on either side, without the direction indicators being used, the driver is made aware of it.

A rotational force is automatically applied to the steering wheel. The force can be felt by the driver and it indicates that a steering correction should be made. The rotational force can be overridden to make a lane change without use of the direction indicators.

If an override is made, and a lane change is made without use of the direction indicators, lane departure warning alerts are triggered. See **195, LANE DEPARTURE WARNING**.

For vehicles fitted with both lane departure warning and Lane Keep Assist (LKA), the driver can select between **Steering Vibrate** or **Steering Assist**. Select **Lane Keep Assist (LKA)** via the **Driver Assistance** menu. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The LKA feature is disabled if a fault is detected. A message is displayed in the instrument panel. If the fault does not clear after the ignition is switched off and on again, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

DRIVER CONDITION MONITOR

The purpose of the driver condition monitor is to evaluate driving technique for signs of driver fatigue. If it determines the driver is fatigued, the instrument panel displays the warning, **Take a break!**, for 1 minute, accompanied by an audible chime. If driving continues for more than 15 minutes after the first warning, without taking a break, a further warning is given. The warning continues until the **OK** button on the steering wheel menu control is pressed.

The driver condition monitor is always active at vehicle speeds between 60 km/h (37 mph) and 180 km/h (112 mph). It can be switched off via the **Driver Assistance** menu in the instrument panel. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

If the driver condition monitor develops a fault, a double warning icon displays in the instrument panel. The feature is unavailable until the problem is rectified. If the fault does not clear after the ignition is switched off and on again, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

The traffic sign recognition feature is a driving aid only. The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention. Drive in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users. The driver should still observe all road signs and road markings.

Note: *Make sure that the windscreen area in front of the rear-view mirror is kept clean and free of obstructions. For example, stickers, debris, mud, snow, ice, etc.*

The traffic sign recognition feature uses the forward-facing camera, located in the rear-view mirror. The camera detects speed signs, no overtaking signs, and variable overhead speed signs. Symbols of the detected signs are displayed in the instrument panel. Traffic signs with extra information, e.g., reduced speed limits, are also detected and compared with the vehicle's operating systems. If no speed limit signs are detected, relevant speed limit information from the navigation system is displayed in the instrument panel.

Note: *If the standard road navigation is not available, the traffic sign recognition feature uses the forward-facing camera only. In this circumstance, system performance may be limited.*

The traffic sign recognition system can be switched on and off via the **Driver Assistance** menu, in the instrument panel menu. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The feature operates up to the vehicle's maximum speed.

The three basic functions of the traffic sign recognition system are as follows:

- Speed Limit Detection: A corresponding sign is displayed in the instrument panel.
- Speed Alert: If the vehicle's speed is greater than the detected speed limit, a warning is displayed. The instrument panel displays a flashing red ring around the detected speed limit sign. Speed alert can be switched on or off, or the settings can be adjusted to display three different settings:
  - If the vehicle's speed equals the detected speed limit.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

- If the vehicle's speed is 10 km/h (5 mph) above the detected speed limit.
- If the vehicle's speed is 20 km/h (10 mph) above the detected speed limit.

- No Overtaking Zone: If a no overtaking sign is detected, the system also displays a corresponding sign in the instrument panel.

Note: *The traffic sign recognition feature does not detect road markings or situations where a sign cannot be displayed, e.g., railway crossings, etc.*

Traffic sign recognition limitations

The system may provide false information or function incorrectly in the following conditions:

- The windscreen area in front of the camera is covered by a sticker, misted over, dirty, covered in snow or mud, etc.
- Travelling in adverse weather conditions. For example, heavy fog, rain, snow, etc.
- Travelling in an area not covered by the navigation system.
- Driving toward very bright lights.
- Concealed or covered signs.
- Non-conforming road signs.
- Navigation information is incorrect.

SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM

The driver is responsible for detecting obstacles and estimating the vehicle's distance from them when manoeuvring the vehicle.

Some overhanging objects or barriers, which could cause damage to the vehicle, may not be detected by the camera.

The cameras must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., ice, frost, snow, leaves, mud, or insects. Failure to keep the camera clean may result in miscalculation or false indications.

Do not attach stickers or objects to the vehicle that may interfere with the camera.

Note: *The quality of the camera views may vary in different lighting conditions.*

The surround camera system cameras are located as follows:

- In the centre of the front lower grille.
- Above the rear number plate.
- Underneath each of the door mirrors.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017



1. Parking aid plan view.
2. **Camera** icon: Touch to select the camera feature.
3. **Settings** icon: Touch to select the **CAMERA SETTINGS** menu.
   - **Hitch Assist**: (available only when a tow ball is fitted): Select **ON** or **OFF**.
   - **Parking Guidance**: Select **ON** or **OFF**.
   - **Parking Aid Graphics**: Select **ON** or **OFF**.
   - **Parking Aid Plan View**: Select **ON** or **OFF**.

   Note: *Depending on the vehicle specification, the* ***CAMERA SETTINGS*** *menu may include further camera settings. When the list includes six or more feature settings, a scroll bar displays.*
4. **Parking aid graphics** icon: Touch to switch the parking aid graphics on or off.
5. **Volume** icon: Touch to mute the volume of the parking aid warning tones.
6. **Camera selection** icon: Touch to select a different camera view.

   Note: *A maximum of two views display at any one time, instead of the 360° views. To change a camera view if two views are already selected, first deselect one of the views and then make another selection.*
7. **360° surround camera view** icon: Touch for a 360° view, using all of the cameras.
8. **Tow assist** icon: Touch for trailer set-up.

Camera shortcuts



The function of the camera icon (**2**) varies. Depending on the selected gear and the vehicle's road speed, the icon gives the following options:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

- If in a forward gear, at vehicle speeds below 10 km/h (6 mph):
  - Touch once to select the **T Junction View**.
  - Touch twice to select the **Rear Junction View**.
  - Touch a third time to return to the **T Junction View**.
- If in Neutral (**N**) or Park (**P**):
  - Touch once to select the **360° Plan View**.
  - Touch twice to select the **T Junction View**.
  - Touch a third time to select the **Rear Junction View**.
- If in Reverse (**R**) gear:
  - Touch once to select the **Rear Junction View**.
  - Touch twice to select the **T Junction View**.
  - Touch a third time to return to the **Rear Junction View**.

Pan and Zoom tools

When in a full screen view of a camera image, touch the image to display the pan and zoom tools. The tools allow the image to be viewed at three levels of detail and can be manipulated left, right, up, and down. Double tap the image to jump to the middle level of zoomed detail and allow the same pan and zoom functionality.

FORWARD VEHICLE GUIDANCE

Forward vehicle guidance provides touch screen views of the area directly ahead of the vehicle, that may not be visible to the driver. Also displayed is the projected forward steering path, based on the current steering wheel position. Object detection ahead is also included when front parking aid sensors are active. The feature can be useful when manoeuvring through a narrow gap or around obstacles.

Forward vehicle guidance activates when the plan view, or front camera view, is selected from the **CAMERA** screen. The projected forward steering path and object detection ahead displays when the vehicle is in a forward gear or in Neutral (**N**). The vehicle must be travelling at less than 16 km/h (10 mph).

The projected steering path and object detection can be enabled or disabled via the **CAMERA SETTINGS** menu.

Note: *If a fault is detected with the front parking aid sensors, a message is displayed on the touch screen. If all of the sensors are clean and, after restarting the engine the issue persists, contact a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Touch screen - Home

TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU



In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust, or view the system when it is safe to do so.

Do not adjust the touch screen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving.

Always run the engine during prolonged use of the touch screen. Failure to do so may discharge the vehicle's battery and prevent the engine from starting.

Avoid spilling or splashing liquids onto the touch screen.

Note: *A gloved hand may not operate the touch screen. Remove glove(s) before selecting any touch screen features.*

1. **Navigation**: Touch to select the **NAVIGATION** assistance map.
2. **Media**: Touch to select the **MEDIA** screen. If the media system is already switched on, touch to select the current media source menu.

   Note: *When the system is active, current information for the media being played is displayed.*
3. **Phone**: Touch to select the **PHONE** screen.
4. **Status** icons: Display the status of a vehicle feature or application. See **206, TOUCH SCREEN STATUS ICONS**.
5. Page indicator: Indicates the number of available screens. The solid dot indicates the position of the currently displayed screen.
6. Phone shortcut: Touch to select **Voicemail** when a phone is connected, or the **PHONE** screen when no phone is connected.
7. **Park assist** icon: Touch to switch the **PARK ASSIST** screen on or off.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

8. **Parking aids** icon: Touch to switch the **PARKING AIDS** screen on or off.
9. **Camera** icon: Touch to select the **CAMERA** screen.
10. **Bluetooth** icon: Touch to select the **Bluetooth** ® wireless technology device screen.
11. **Settings** icon: Touch to select **Home Settings**, via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
12. **Home** icon: Touch to select the **PREVIEWS** screen.
13. **Return** icon: Touch to return to a higher menu level.

    Note: *The* ***return*** *icon is disabled on the* ***HOME*** *screen.*
14. Navigation shortcut: Touch to set a destination or to cancel guidance if a destination is already set.
15. Media shortcut: Touch to select the media shortcut:
    - **Bluetooth**® and USB: Alternate between play and pause.
    - Radio: Station mute.

TOUCH SCREEN SIDE PANEL

The touch screen's side panel allows features to be displayed and controlled independently of the main view. See **213, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

The following features can be displayed, alongside the main view:

- **Media**: Displays the currently selected media source, and enables tracks, channels, or stations to be changed and the sound to be muted.
- **Navigation**: Displays either the current location or the set destination, the estimated time of arrival, and the distance to the destination.
- **Phone**: Displays a list of recent calls, details of the current call in progress, **end call** icon and **mute call** icon.
- **Weather**: Displays the temperature and a description of the current weather, and the weather for the set destination and favourite locations.
- **News**: Displays the headlines of the selected news channel and enables news stories to be read out.

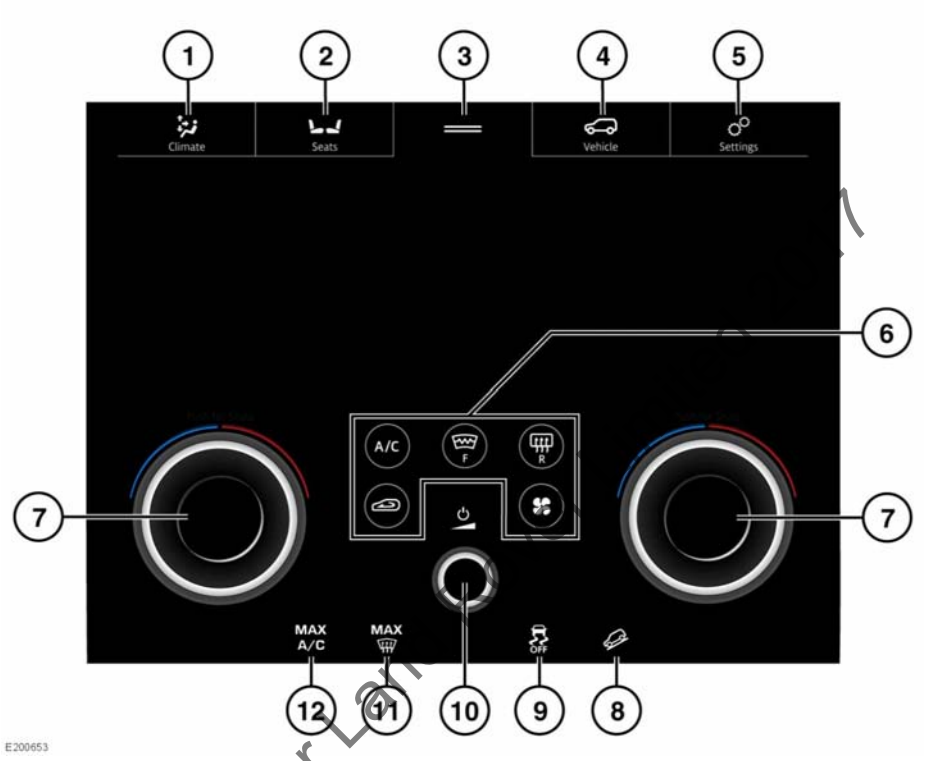
  Note: *The weather and news are features that utilise InControl Pro Services. See* ***304, PRO SERVICES****.*

For more detailed information, touch the centre of the feature to shortcut to the main display.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Touch screen - Home

LOWER TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS



In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust, or view the system when it is safe to do so.

Do not adjust the touch screen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving.

Always run the engine during prolonged use of the touch screen. Failure to do so may discharge the vehicle's battery and prevent the engine from starting.

Avoid spilling or splashing liquids onto the touch screen.

Note: *A gloved hand may not operate the touch screen. Remove glove(s) before selecting any touch screen features.*

1. **Climate** icon: Touch to select the **FRONT CLIMATE** control screen. See **246, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL**.
2. **Seats** icon: Touch to select the **SEATS** screen. See **252, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.

© Jaguar Land Rover

3. Widget bars: Touch and swipe down widget bars to activate media and phone widget options on lower touch screen. Swipe widget bars up to close these options. On activation of the media and phone widget options, swipe the lower touch screen left or right to switch between the media and phone screens.
4. **Vehicle** icon: Touch to select driving programs screen.
5. **Settings** icon: Touch to select **Lower screen display**. See **212, LOWER TOUCH SCREEN DISPLAY SETTINGS**.
6. Climate controls: Further information on climate controls can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **246, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL**.
7. Cabin, seat temperature and massage, terrain response operation, and advanced tow assist rotary controls: Further information on the cabin, seat temperature and massage, terrain response operation, and advanced tow assist rotary controls can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **246, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL**, **253, HEATED SEATS**, **253, CLIMATE SEATS**, **253, SEAT MASSAGE**, **180, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION** and **116, ADVANCED TOW ASSIST**.
8. **Hill Descent Control (HDC)** icon: Further information on hill descent control response operation can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **158, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) OVERVIEW**.
9. **Dynamic stability control** icon: Further information on dynamic stability control operation can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **155, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)**.
10. Power and volume control:
    - Press to switch the media system on and off.

      Note: *The media system operates with the ignition on or off, but always switches off when the ignition is switched off. Switch the system on again, if required.*
    - Rotate to adjust the volume level. The volume level is displayed on the touch screen.

      Note: *If the volume is turned to zero while a media source is playing, the media pauses play. Play resumes when a greater volume is selected.*
11. **Windscreen maximum defrost** icon: Further information on windscreen maximum defrost operation can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **246, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL**.
12. **MAX A/C** icon: Further information on Max A/C operation can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **246, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Touch screen - Home

MY HOME SCREEN



Note: *Screen shown is in edit mode.*

Do not adjust the touch screen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving.

From the **HOME** screen, swipe the touch screen to the right, to access the **MY HOME** screen. See **202, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**

To view all of the **MY HOME** screens, continue to swipe to the right. To return to the **HOME** screen swipe to the left.

The **MY HOME** screen enables the user to display and arrange widgets and shortcuts to applications.

1. **MY HOME** screen: Multiple screens are available.
2. Personalised **MY HOME** screen name: Touch to edit.
3. Widgets and shortcuts: The widgets and shortcuts are available in different sizes and can be moved to different locations.

TOUCH SCREEN STATUS ICONS

The icons displayed at the top of the screen provide information about the status of the vehicle feature or application.

Phone signal strength indicator.

Phone battery level indicator.

Status of the heated or climate seats.

TA Traffic Alerts.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017


Wi-Fi signal.


Connecting.


Phone set to divert incoming calls.



Network connection status.


No mobile network connection.

EDITING SHORTCUTS, WIDGETS AND SCREENS

Adding a widget: Touch and hold the screen to display edit mode. Touch any of the **+** symbols on the screen and select from the available categories in the **CONTENT LIBRARY**. Scroll through the gallery of widgets using the direction arrows, or swipe the screen. Touch to select a widget. The widget is then displayed on the **MY HOME** screen.

Moving a widget: Touch and hold the screen to display edit mode. Drag the widget to a new location. To move the widget to another **MY HOME** screen, drag it to the side of the screen.

Resizing a widget: Touch and hold the screen to display edit mode. When the widget has been selected, moved to a new location, or newly created, a resize toggle is displayed. Touch the toggle to resize the widget.

Delete a widget: Touch and hold the screen to display edit mode. Drag the widget to the delete bar.

Edit a personalised screen name: Touch and hold the screen to display edit mode. Touch the screen name and enter text using the keyboard. Touch **OK** to complete.

Moving a screen: Touch the **home** icon to display the **PREVIEW** screen for the **HOME**, **MY HOME** and **EXTRA FEATURES** screens. Touch the preview to display the chosen screen. Touch and hold the screen to display the **EDIT PREVIEWS** screen. Touch and drag the screen preview to the required position.

Adding a screen: While in the **PREVIEW** screen, touch and hold the screen to display the **EDIT PREVIEWS** screen. Touch the **+** symbol to create a new **MY HOME** screen. When adding or moving a widget, it can be dragged to the left side of the screen to create a new **MY HOME** screen.

Note: *A maximum of four **MY HOME** screens can be added.*

Deleting a screen: While in the **PREVIEW** screen, touch and hold the screen to display the **EDIT PREVIEWS** screen. Touch and hold the chosen **MY HOME** screen, and drag it to the delete bar and release.

TOUCH SCREEN USE

Do not use excessive pressure when selecting items on the touch screen.

Definitions for the various button taps and touch screen gestures used in this handbook:

- Touch: Briefly touch the screen's surface with a fingertip.
- Touch and hold: Touch the screen's surface for an extended period of time.
- Swipe: Move a fingertip over the screen's surface in a fast linear movement.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

- Drag: Touch an object and move it with a fingertip over the screen's surface, without losing contact.
- Pinch: Spread two fingers apart on a map or image to zoom in. Pinch two fingers together on a map or image to zoom out.

TOUCH SCREEN CARE

Do not use abrasive cleaners on the touch screen. For approved cleaning products, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.

Follow the cleaning instructions. See **334, CLEANING SCREENS AND DISPLAYS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

EXTRA FEATURES

Do not adjust the touch screen controls or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.

In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.

From the **HOME** screen, swipe the touch screen to the left, to access the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen. See **202, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**.

Extra features can be enabled or disabled, or the settings adjusted. Touch the extra feature to launch the required application or settings screen:

- **Eco Data**: The eco data system is designed to help the driver maximise fuel economy by providing vehicle data and driving tips. Real-time eco data can also be displayed in the instrument panel.
- **Cameras**.
- **InControl Apps**.
- **Live**: Part of InControl Pro Services.
- **Valet Mode**.
- **Contacts**.
- **Voice**.
- **Bluetooth**.
- **Rear Media**.
- **Web Browser**.
- **Timed Climate**.
- **Ambient Lighting**.
- **Vehicle Dimensions**.
- **Dynamic-i**.
- **4x4i**.
- **Deployable Tow Bar**.
- **Deployable Side Steps**.

Note: *The number of extra features varies, depending on the specification of the vehicle.*

SELECTING VALET MODE

Valet mode allows the vehicle to be driven and locked by a parking attendant, without giving access to the loadspace and glovebox. Valet mode also prevents operation of the touch screen, to prevent access to phone numbers or navigation addresses. Only essential driver assist features are available, such as cameras, parking aid, etc.

Valet mode can be activated via the **Master PIN** (set in **GENERAL SETTINGS**). Alternatively use a temporary PIN, if the Master PIN is unknown, to allow someone other than the owner to set valet mode.

When set with the Master PIN, only the Master PIN can unlock valet mode. When set with a temporary PIN, the temporary PIN or the Master PIN unlocks valet mode.

To select valet mode:

1. Touch **Valet** in the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen. See **209, EXTRA FEATURES**.
2. Enter the **Master PIN** or a memorable four digit temporary PIN. When a temporary PIN is used, it has to be entered a second time to confirm the PIN. To cancel the PIN, touch the **return** icon. If the confirmation PIN is incorrectly entered, then a prompt to re-enter the PIN is displayed. See **211, GENERAL SETTINGS**.
3. The **VALET MODE** screen is displayed to indicate that a PIN has been accepted and valet mode is active.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

The loadspace and glovebox are now securely locked in valet mode and the **Valet Mode On** screen is displayed.

DESELECTING VALET MODE

To deselect valet mode:

1. When re-entering the vehicle, touch the touch screen.
2. Enter the **Master PIN** or temporary PIN, if used to set the valet mode, and touch **OK**.

The **Home screen** is displayed to indicate that the PIN has been accepted and valet mode has been deactivated.

- The loadspace and glovebox are returned to the previously set security requirement.
- The touch screen is enabled.

Note: *If the Master PIN is forgotten, valet mode can only be deactivated by a retailer/authorised repairer.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

GENERAL SETTINGS

Accessing the touch screen settings allows the adjustment of general system settings.

Touch the **settings** icon from any screen, followed by **All Settings** and then **General**.

The **GENERAL SETTINGS** menu is divided into categories:

- **Time and Date**.
- **Display**.
- **Screensaver**.
- **Master PIN**.

  Note: *The default Master PIN is **1926**. Change the Master PIN to a personal PIN as soon as possible.*
- **Legal information**.
- **Data Collection** (only when set).

Touch to display the list of settings for the required system.

SYSTEM SETTINGS

Touch the **settings** icon from the **HOME** screen, followed by **All Settings** and then **Features**.

The **FEATURES** settings menu is divided into categories.

- **Home**.
- **Navigation**.
- **Media**.
- **Phone**.
- **Connectivity**.
- **InControl Apps**.
- **Live**.
- **Low Traction Launch**
- **Voice**.
- **Bluetooth**.

Touch to display the list of settings for the required system.

Note: *The list varies, depending on the specification of the vehicle.*

TOUCH SCREEN DISPLAY SETTINGS

⚠ **The touch screen display has an anti-trap protection fitted. Before stowing or adjusting the touch screen display, make sure that no occupants have any part of their body in a position which could be trapped. Even with an anti-trap system, serious injury could occur.**

⚠ **Closing the touch screen display onto any part of the body can result in serious injury.**

The tilt angle of the touch screen is able to be adjusted.

Touch the **settings** icon from the **HOME** screen, followed by **Upper display**.

The **UPPER DISPLAY** settings menu is divided into categories.

- **Factory default**: Touch to return the screen to factory default mode.
- **Last used**: Touch to store the screen in a specific position. On re-entry to the vehicle the last used position is remembered and restored.
- **Stow screen**: Touch to return the screen to the stowed position. The screen will automatically revert to the stowed position when the ignition is switched off.
- **Deploy to default**: Touch to adjust the screen angle to the full tilt position.

The tilt angle of the screen can also be adjusted by touching the **+** or **-** symbols on the screen.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

LOWER TOUCH SCREEN DISPLAY SETTINGS

Touch the **Settings** icon on the lower touch screen to access the **Lower screen display**.

The lower screen display settings menu is divided into two features. Touch the required feature to launch the settings screen:

- Climate.
- Seats.

The lower screen start up display can be programmed via the **Start up screen**.Touch the right arrow or displayed feature after the **Start up screen** to access the menu features.

Touch one of the following menu features, to store and open, when lower touch screen starts up:

- Climate.
- Seats.
- Vehicle.
- Phone.
- Media.
- Last used: Select to return to last used feature on screen start up
- No feature: Select to display a blank screen on screen start up.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

MEDIA CONTROLS



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

⚠ **In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust, or view the system when it is safe to do so.**

⚠ **Sustained exposure to high sound levels, greater than 85 decibels, can damage hearing.**

Media

Duplicated icons and source features can be operated from the lower touch screen when the media controls widget is displayed. Further information on the lower touch screen can be found in the relevant section of the of the Owner's Handbook. See **204, LOWER TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**.

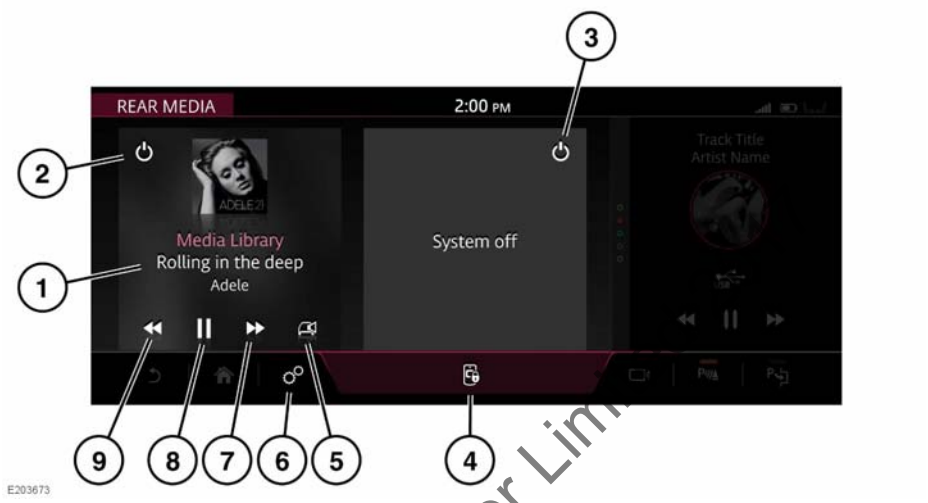
1. Media source: Touch to select the media source.
2. Side panel: Displays the last used feature.
3. **Media** icon: Touch to select the media system. If the media system is already switched on, touch to select the media source.
4. **Settings** icon: Select **Audio Settings** or specific media settings, via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. See **217, AUDIO SETTINGS**.
5. **Return** icon: Touch to return to a higher menu level.
6. Power and volume control:
   - Press to switch the media system on or off.

     Note: *The media system operates with the ignition switched on or off, but always switches off when the ignition is switched off. Switch the media system on again, if required.*
   - Rotate to adjust the volume level (displayed on the touch screen).

     Note: *If the volume is turned to zero while a media source is playing, the media pauses play. Play resumes when a greater volume is selected.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

REAR MEDIA CONTROL FROM THE TOUCH SCREEN



In the interest of safety, only operate, or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.

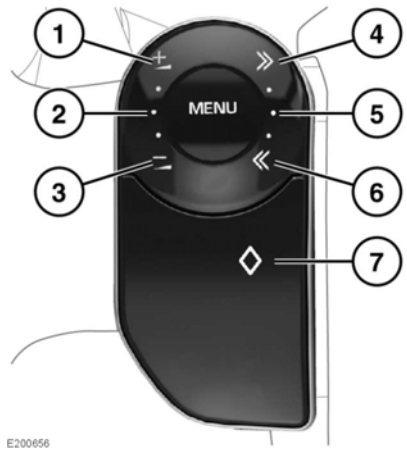
Touch **Rear Media** on the media screen, to select the **REAR MEDIA** control screen.

1. Rear media source: Touch the media screen, followed by **Source**, to select media from the **SELECT REAR SOURCE** screen.
2. **Power** icon: Touch to switch the left-side rear screen on and off.
3. **Power** icon: Touch to switch the right-side rear screen on and off.
4. **Remote control lock** icon: Touch to lock or unlock the remote control.
5. **Cabin audio** icon: Touch to listen to the selected media via the cabin's sound system.
6. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **Rear Media Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
7. Forward or skip: Touch to forward or skip the selected screen.
8. Pause or play: Touch to pause playback. Touch again to resume playback (if applicable to the source selected).
9. Rewind or skip: Touch to rewind or return to the previous screen.

Note: *When the main **REAR MEDIA** control screen is displayed on the touch screen, the remote control is locked out.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



Note: *Customisation of the audio steering wheel controls can only be performed if the vehicle is stationary and valet mode is exited.*

Note: *If valet mode has been selected, no customised audio steering wheel selections are available.*

Note: *When a customised audio steering wheel function is selected, a notification is displayed on the instrument panel and the touch screen.*

Note: *The favourites icon is set to a factory default setting until a customised function has been stored.*

1. Volume up: Press to increase the volume for any source.
2. Volume sweep: Finger sweep clockwise to increase, counter clockwise to decrease.
3. Volume down: Press to decrease the volume for any source.
4. Seek up:

   Press and release:
   - To select the next radio favourite.
   - To select the next track on the chosen media library or the connected portable media source.
   - When the phone is in use, press to scroll up lists of calls or contact entries.
   - To select the next TV channel on the channel list or the next video.
   - To seek up the frequency to the next radio station.
5. Seek sweep:
   - Finger sweep clockwise to scroll to next channel, track or frequency of selected media source.
   - Finger sweep counter clockwise to scroll to previous channel, track or frequency of selected media source.
6. Seek down:

   Press and release:
   - To select the previous radio favourite.
   - To select the previous track or the start of the current track on the chosen media library or the connected portable media source.
   - When the phone is in use, press to scroll down lists of calls or contact entries.
   - To select the previous TV channel on the channel list or the previous video.
   - To seek down the frequency to the next radio station.
7. **Favourites** button:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

- Press to display the stored favourites on the touch screen. Favourites can be stored or deleted via the **CUSTOMISABLE BUTTON** touch screen.
- Press to scroll through the stored favourites. Stored favourites can also be selected via the touch screen.

Note: *This feature is not operational on this vehicle.*

AUDIO SETTINGS

To view, touch the **settings** icon from any screen and then **Audio Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. To adjust the sound settings:

- Touch **+** or **-** to adjust the **Bass**, **Treble**, or **Subwoofer** levels. Alternatively, touch the slider bar and drag, or touch anywhere on the bar, and release.

To adjust the balance and fade settings:



Front.



Left.



Right.



Rear.



Home point.



Sound focal point.

Touch the arrows to move the sound focal point to the desired area of the vehicle. Alternatively, touch the sound focal point and drag it to the required position, or touch anywhere on the vehicle graphic, and release. To return to the default setting, touch the home point.

To adjust the surround sound settings:

- If **Meridian Surround** or **Meridian Reference** is available, touch **Meridian**, **Dolby Pro Logic IIx** or **DTS Neo:6** to select **Surround Sound**. Select **Stereo** to switch **Surround Sound** off.

Note: *Surround sound options are not available for certain sources where the surround sound mode is set automatically.*

GRACENOTE® END USER LICENSING AGREEMENT

Gracenote Terms of Use

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to do disc or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended end-user functions of this application or device.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

This application or device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licence to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licence ends, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its rights under this agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote **Privacy Policy** for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

© 2013. Gracenote, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

LICENSING



E180920



E135227



E145346



E132539

Manufactured under licence from Dolby Laboratories.

Dolby, Dolby Audio, Dolby Digital, Pro Logic, and the double-D symbol are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.



E132540

Manufactured under licence, under U.S. Patent number's: 5451942, 5956674, 5974380, 5978762, 6487535, 7003467 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS, the Symbol, and Neo:6 are registered trademarks, & DTS Digital Surround and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



E132541



E132542

Manufactured under licence, under U.S. Patent number's: 5451942, 5956674, 5974380, 5978762, 6487535 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS and the Symbol are registered trademarks, & DTS 2.0+ Digital Out and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

DTS, the Symbol, DTS and the Symbol together, and DTS Neo:X are registered trademarks or trademarks of DTS, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



E132544

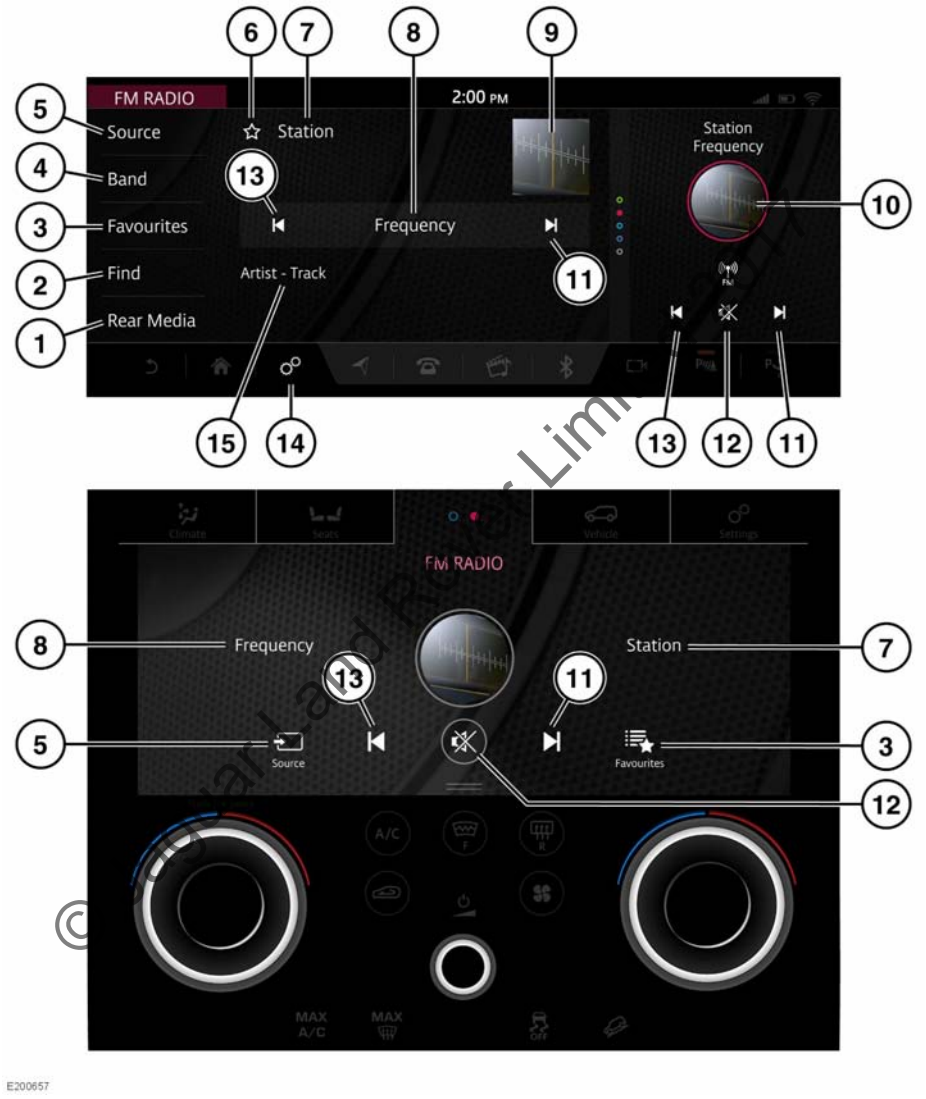
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Music and video recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information, please visit: **www.gracenote.com**.

CD, DVD, Blu-ray Disc, and music and video-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. One or more patents owned by Gracenote apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents. Gracenote, CDDB, MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

AM/FM RADIO CONTROLS



⚠ **In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.**

⚠ **Sustained exposure to high sound levels, greater than 85 decibels, can damage hearing.**

AM/FM radio

From the **SELECT SOURCE** screen, on media controls, select the media source. See **213, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

Duplicated icons can be operated on the lower touch screen when the AM or FM radio widget is displayed. Further information on the lower touch screen can be found in the relevant section of the of the Owner's Handbook. See **204, LOWER TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**.

1. **Rear Media**: Touch for rear media options.
2. **Find**: Touch to display options for finding a required station, frequency, or genre.
   - **STATION LIST**: Touch to display a list of available stations on the selected waveband.
   - **FREQUENCY INPUT**: Touch to display the keypad. Enter the required frequency.
   - **GENRE**: Touch to display a list of available genres. Select the required genre from the list.
3. **Favourites**: Touch to display a single list of **AM**, **FM**, and **DAB** favourite stations. Touch the **favourites** icon to add or delete the selected station from the favourites list. Touch the station's frequency or name to select that station and play it. To rearrange the order of the list, touch the **edit** icon. Drag and drop selected items to the desired position. Touch **OK** to confirm.
4. **Band**: Touch to view and select a radio band: **AM**, **FM**, or **DAB**. The radio tunes to the last used station on that radio band.
5. **Source**: Touch to display all media sources.
6. **Favourites** icon: Touch to add stations to, or delete from, the favourites list. When the tuned station is set as a favourite, this is highlighted.
7. Station information display.
8. Frequency of the current station: Touch on the frequency to access the **FREQUENCY INPUT** keypad. Enter the required frequency.

   Note: *The keypad only allows the input of possible frequencies valid for the vehicle's market.*
9. Artist or station image: Touch to view further information. Touch again to close the information display.

   Note: *If unavailable, a generic image is displayed.*
10. AM or FM radio shortcut: Touch to view the **AM** or **FM RADIO** screen. Swipe up or down to access other features.
11. Seek up:
    - Touch, or swipe the touch screen to the left, to seek up to the next radio station.
    - Touch and hold to seek up to the next radio station.
12. **Mute** icon: Touch to mute the volume.
13. Seek down:
    - Touch, or swipe the touch screen to the right, to seek down to the previous radio station.
    - Touch and hold to seek down to the previous radio station.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

14. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **AM/FM Settings**. Touch to activate or deactivate the following features: **RDS**, **Traffic Alerts (TA)**, **News**, **Station List Order**, **Alternate Frequency** (AF) and **Regionalisation**. See **223, RADIO DATA SYSTEM (RDS)**.
15. Broadcasting station information display: Touch to view further information. Touch again to close the information display.

Note: *Electronic devices used within, connected to, or within close proximity to the vehicle, may affect the performance of this system. For example, radio reception, etc.*

Mexico only

Operation of Radio equipment is subject to the following two conditions:

1. The device and/or system does not cause harmful interference.
2. The device and/or system must accept any interference, including any undesired operation.

RADIO DATA SYSTEM (RDS)

The radio is equipped with a Radio Data System (RDS), which enables the media system to receive extra information with normal FM radio signals.

Note: *Not all FM radio stations broadcast RDS information.*

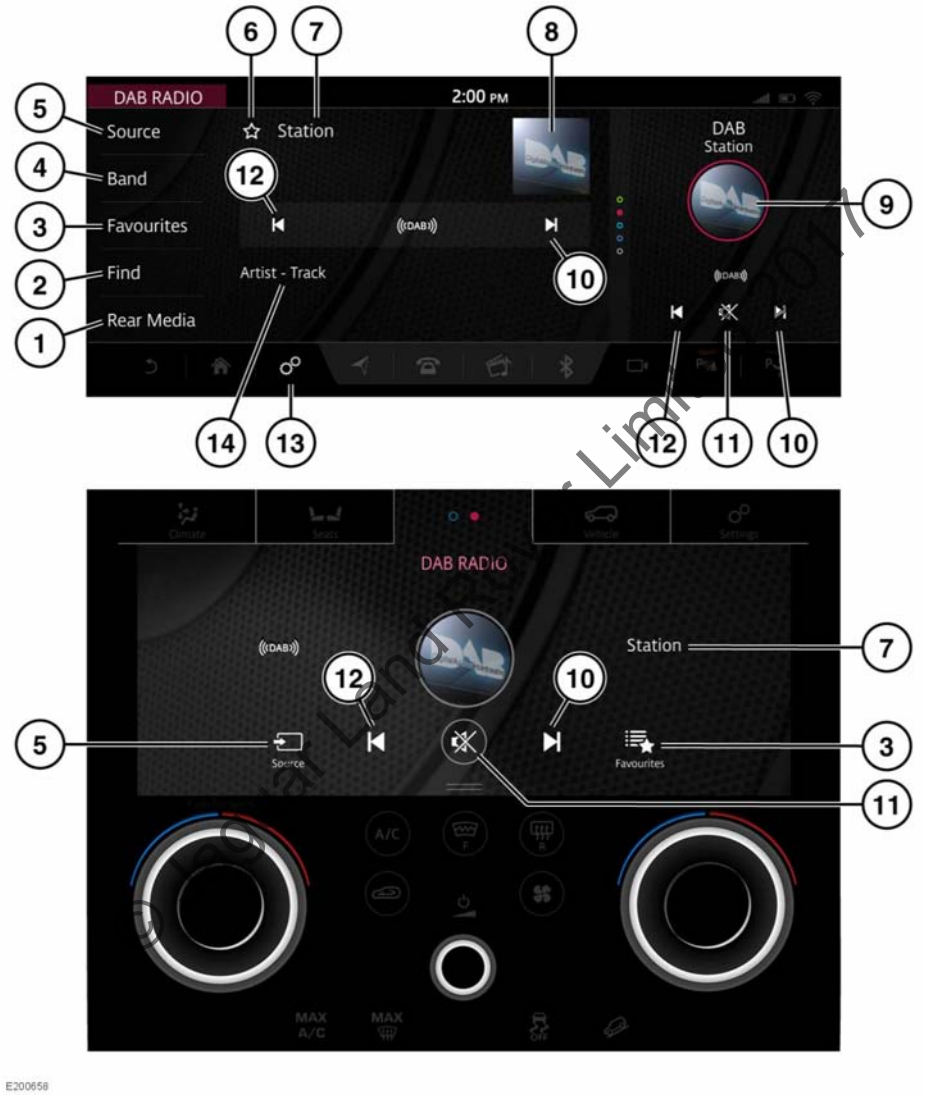
Touch the **settings** icon to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **AM/FM Settings** to view or alter the **RDS** settings.

- **RDS**: Select **ON** or **OFF**.
- **Traffic Alerts (TA)**: Provides local travel information.
- **News**: Provides news information.
- **Station List Order**: Lists stations by name or frequency.
- **Alternative Frequency**: Select to allow the radio to automatically retune to a stronger Alternative Frequency (AF) for the current station. This is useful on a journey where the vehicle travels through different transmitter areas.
- **Regionalisation**: When **ON**, then no regional switching occurs. It allows AF switching when AF is **ON**, to other station frequencies with identical content.
  When regionalisation is **OFF** and AF is **ON**, it allows AF switching to other station frequencies with similar content.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

DAB radio

DAB RADIO CONTROLS



⚠ **In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.**

⚠ **Sustained exposure to high sound levels, greater than 85 decibels, can damage hearing.**

From the **SELECT SOURCE** screen, on media controls, select the media source. See **213, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

Duplicated icons can be operated on the lower touch screen when the DAB radio widget is displayed. Further information on the lower touch screen can be found in the relevant section of the of the Owner's Handbook. See **204, LOWER TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**.

1. **Rear Media**: Touch for rear media options.
2. **Find**: Touch to display options for finding a required station.
   - **DAB STATION LIST**: Touch to view a list of available stations. The DAB station list is arranged in alphabetical order. Select the up or down arrows to scroll through the list.
   - **DAB GENRE**: Touch to list available genres. The stations are grouped into categories: **Pop Music**, **Travel**, etc.
   - **SEARCH**: Touch to search using the keyboard. Enter the required station name and select **OK**.
3. **Favourites**: Touch to display a single list of **AM**, **FM**, and **DAB** favourite stations. Touch the **favourites** icon to add or delete the selected station from the favourites list. Touch the station's frequency or name to select that station and play it. To rearrange the order of the list, touch the **edit** icon. Drag and drop selected items to the desired position. Touch **OK** to confirm.
4. **Band**: Touch to view and select a radio band: **AM**, **FM**, or **DAB**. The radio tunes to the last used station on that radio band.
5. **Source**: Touch to display all media options.
6. **Favourites** icon: Touch to add stations to, or delete from, **RADIO FAVOURITES**. When a tuned station is set as a favourite, this is highlighted.
7. DAB station display: Displays the current station.
8. Artist or station image: Touch to view further information. Touch again to close the information display.

   Note: *If unavailable, a generic image is displayed.*
9. DAB radio shortcut: Touch to view the **DAB RADIO** screen.
10. Seek up:
    - Touch, or swipe the touch screen to the left, to select the next station.
11. **Mute** icon: Touch to mute the volume.
12. Seek down:
    - Touch, or swipe the touch screen to the right, to select the previous station.
13. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **DAB settings**. Touch to activate or deactivate the following features: **Link to FM Stations**, **Frequency Band**, and **Announcements**. See **226, DAB RADIO SETTINGS**.
14. Station information: Touch to view DAB information.

Note: *Electronic devices used within, connected to, or within close proximity to the vehicle, may affect the performance of this system. For example, radio reception, etc.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

DAB RADIO SETTINGS

In **DAB Settings**:

- **Link to FM Stations**: Can be switched on via the **DAB Settings** screen. When the DAB signal strength, for a station, falls below an acceptable level, this is activated. The media system automatically switches to the FM version of this station, when the option is available.
- Choose **Frequency Band** if moving to a region that uses a different digital band. Available formats are:
  - **Band 3**.
  - **Band 3 China**.
- Select **Announcements**, e.g., **Traffic**, **News**, etc., from the list. The selected announcement interrupts the current programme, when broadcast.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS

On vehicles with rear climate control, disconnect the media device, before stowing the centre armrest. Failure to do so can result in damage to the media device or media hub.

The front media hub, for portable media devices to be connected to, is located in the centre console cubby box.

The rear media hub, for portable media devices to be connected to, is located in one of the following:

- The rear of the centre console, on vehicles without rear climate control.
- Behind the centre stowed armrest, on vehicles with rear climate control.

Compatible portable devices include:

- USB mass storage devices, e.g., a memory stick. Devices must use FAT or FAT32.

  Note: *External hard drives are not recommended to be left inside the vehicle for extended periods, as it could reduce the life of the device.*
- iPod: iPad, iPod Touch, iPod Mini, iPhone, iPod Nano and iPod Classic Gen4, Gen5, Gen6 are supported. Full functionality for older devices cannot be guaranteed. iPod Classic Gen1, Gen2, Gen3, and iPod Shuffle are not supported.

  Note: *Album artwork displays if the iPod device is fully supported. Some Generation level devices cannot recognise or support the album artwork.*
- Media devices that support HDMI or MHL.

If connecting an iPod, mass storage, or **Bluetooth**® wireless technology device, use the touch screen to operate and search the device. See **202, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**.

Please disconnect the iPod when leaving the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in the iPod battery discharging.

Note: *The media system plays MP3, WMA, WAV, AIFF, M4A, FLAC, AAC, AMR, LPCM, and ALAC files. Other formats are available.*

Note: *If a software update has been activated on the connected portable media device, it will be necessary to restart the media device to ensure it is recognised by the media system.*

To maximise playback quality, it is recommended that lossless compression is used for any media files on USB. Failing this, it is recommended that compressed files utilise a minimum bit rate of 192 kb/s. A higher bit rate is strongly recommended.

Note: *iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries.*

Note: *Some MP3 players have their own file system that is not supported by this system. To use an MP3 player, set it to* ***USB Removable Device*** *or* ***Mass Storage Device*** *mode.*

Bluetooth® connections

Information on pairing and connecting a **Bluetooth** wireless technology device can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **233, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE MEDIA PLAYER**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

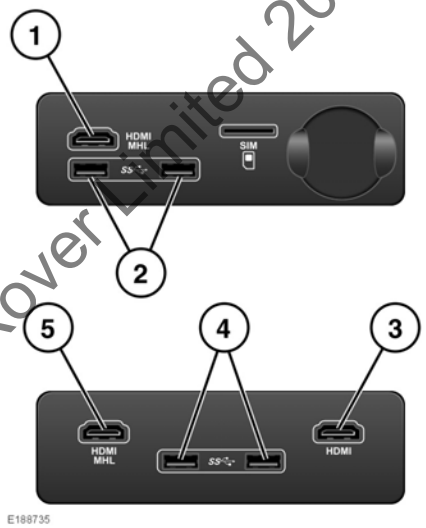
Further information on **Bluetooth** wireless technology can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **281, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION**.

For a list of compatible **Bluetooth** wireless technology devices, please refer to the Land Rover website at: **www.landrover.com**.

The **Bluetooth** wireless technology devices listed have been tested for compatibility with Jaguar Land Rover vehicles. Performance varies, based on the device's software version and battery condition. Devices are warranted by their manufacturer, not the vehicle manufacturer.

CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE

Read the manufacturer's instructions for any device, before it is connected to the media system. Make sure that the device is suitable. Comply with any instructions regarding connection and operation. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle's media system or the media device.



Vehicles with rear climate control, disconnect the media device, before stowing the centre armrest. Failure to do so can result in damage to the media device or media hub.

Connect the device into the appropriate socket:

1. Front HDMI/MHL socket.
2. Front USB sockets.
3. Rear media HDMI socket.
4. Rear media USB sockets.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

5. Rear media HDMI/MHL socket.

The front sockets are located in the centre console's cubby box.

The rear media sockets are located in one of the following:

- The rear of the centre console, on vehicles without rear climate control.
- Behind the centre stowed armrest, on vehicles with rear climate control.

Note: *Use the cable supplied with the media device to connect to the USB socket.*

Note: *High quality cables are recommended to be used with Apple devices as this enhances operation.*

Note: *A USB socket cannot be used to connect more than one USB device to the media system.*

Note: *Devices connected to the USB socket are charged. Devices that are fully discharged do not play.*
Higher-rated devices that require more than 7.5W to charge may not display an indicator when charging. These devices are charged without the indicator being displayed.

Note: *HDMI devices are not charged.*

Note: *Apple devices should be updated to the latest iOS version, otherwise, full support cannot be guaranteed.*

Note: *Voice command is only available for newer Apple devices, i.e., devices that are connected to the system via a lightning connector.*

Note: *Voice command will not operate devices connected to the system via* ***Bluetooth®*** *wireless technology devices.*

Note: *Options, such as* ***Repeat*** *and* ***Shuffle****, relate to the device currently playing. The options do not apply to any subsequent device. Previous* ***Repeat*** *and* ***Shuffle*** *selections deactivate when a new queue has been created.*

Note: *The available sockets vary, according to vehicle specification.*



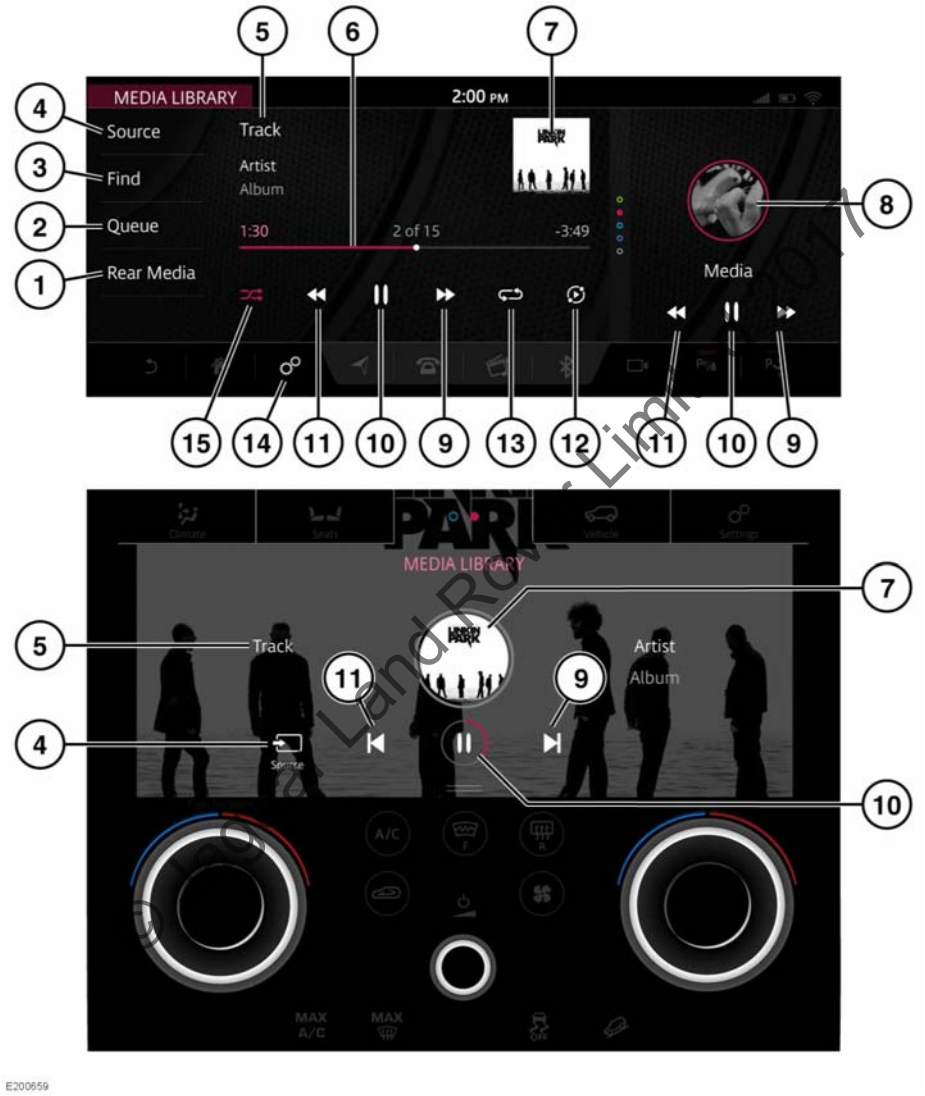
E180361

The SuperSpeed USB Trident Logo is a registered trademark of USB Implementer Forum, Inc.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Portable media

PORTABLE MEDIA CONTROLS



E200659

Land Rover - Limited

Do not adjust the touch screen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.

Sustained exposure to high sound levels, greater than 85 decibels, can damage hearing.

Portable media includes **Media Library** (internal storage), iPods, iPads, iPhones, USB mass storage, HDMI or MHL, and **Bluetooth**® wireless technology devices.

Select the portable media device from the **SELECT SOURCE** touch screen. See **213, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

Duplicated icons can be operated on the lower touch screen when the media library widget is displayed. Further information on the lower touch screen can be found in the relevant section of the of the Owner's Handbook. See **204, LOWER TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**.

1. **Rear Media**: Touch for rear media options.
2. **Queue**: Opens the current queue of tracks selected from the portable media devices. To add a track, album, artist, or genre to the queue, touch and hold the respective item at any time. A pop-up list gives further instructions.

   Note: *Selecting a track, album, artist, or genre not currently in the queue to play causes the current queue to be erased.*
3. **Find**: Select the **artist**, **album**, or **song** icon to display results in alphabetical order. Select the **more** icon to display a list of further available options: **Genres**, **Videos**, **Folder Browse**, etc.
   - Select **Folder Browse** to view the contents of the connected device, which are displayed as dictated by the file structure.
   - Select a file to start playback. Select a folder or subfolder to view their contents.
   - To return to the **MEDIA LIBRARY** screen, touch the **return** icon.
4. **Source**: Displays all media sources.
   - The list of media devices is dynamically populated based on whether they are connected.

   Note: *Sound quality and volume levels available from connected media devices may vary widely.*
5. Track information display: Touch the displayed text to view a list of the tracks in an album. Touch again to return to the current track information display.

   Note: *Only connected devices that support ID3 tags have the information displayed.*
   Information is also displayed in the instrument panel.
6. Interactive time progress bar: Touch or drag to move forward or backward through the current track.
7. Album image display: Touch to view the list of tracks on the album, the queue list, or information for the current track. Touch again to revert back or press the **return** icon.

   Note: *Album artwork displays if the media is recognised by **Gracenote**®. If the album artwork is not recognised a generic image displays.*
8. Media library shortcut: Touch to view the **MEDIA LIBRARY** screen.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Swipe up or down to access other features.

9. Skip or scan forward:
   - Touch and release to skip forward to the next track.
   - Touch and hold to scan forward through the current track. Playback is resumed when released.
   - Swipe the touch screen to the left to skip to the next track.
10. Pause or play: Select to pause playback. Select again to resume playback.
11. Skip or scan backward:
   - Touch and release to skip back to the previous track.
   - Touch and hold to scan backward through the current track. Playback is resumed when released.
   - Swipe the touch screen to the right to skip to the previous track.
12. **More like this** icon: Select to automatically generate a smart playlist based on similar tracks. Touch, at any time, to create a new list based on the track currently being played.

    Note: *Loading time is dependent on content type.*
13. **Repeat** icon: Touch to repeat the current track continuously. The **repeat** icon is highlighted when active. Touch again to cancel.
14. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **All settings**, select **Features**, select **Media** and then select **Media Player Settings** to manage the vehicle's memory (import and delete files).
15. **Shuffle** icon: Touch to shuffle the current music queue continuously. The **shuffle** icon is highlighted when active. Touch again to cancel.

PLAYING A PORTABLE DEVICE

If using a USB mass storage device or compatible Apple device, control playback using the touch screen controls.

If using a **Bluetooth**® wireless technology device, control playback using the touch screen. Some controls may be unavailable, depending on what the device and the media player system supports.

If using any media device via the HDMI/MHL socket, control playback from the device itself.

It is recommended not to use a hard disc drive via the USB link while the vehicle is in motion. These devices are not designed for in-vehicle use and may be damaged.

CONNECTING MULTIPLE DEVICES

Multiple devices can simultaneously be connected to the portable media interface and switch between them using the touch screen. Select **iPod**, **USB**, **Bluetooth**, or **HDMI/HML** to switch between inputs.

After changing to a newly-docked device, upon return to a previous device, playback is resumed from the point at which it was left (USB and iPod only).

See **228, CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE MEDIA PLAYER

Note: *The process of pairing and connecting the media device with the vehicle, using the media device, varies depending on the type of media device.*

1. Switch on the ignition and make sure that the touch screen is active.
2. From the opening **MEDIA CONTROL** screen, touch the **settings** icon. Select **All Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Next, select **Features**, followed by **Bluetooth**.
3. The **BLUETOOTH SETTINGS** screen displays. Select **Pair New Device**.
4. The vehicle's **Bluetooth**® wireless technology system remains discoverable while in the pairing screen.
5. Using the media device, search for devices.
   On some media devices, this is referred to as a new paired device. See the device's operating instructions for further information.
   The vehicle's name is displayed as the default discoverable name.
6. When the vehicle's discoverable name is discovered, follow the on-screen instructions.
   Select **Yes**, when prompted, to confirm the pairing. On some media devices, this completes the pairing.
   Alternatively, on other media devices, the vehicle's system displays a PIN. When prompted, either enter the PIN on the device, or select **Yes** to confirm that the PIN displayed, matches the vehicle's PIN.
7. Once the media device is paired and connected to the system, a confirmation message displays. Either, select the **return** icon or return to the previously selected media and select **Source**.
8. Select the media device from the displayed media options.

Note: *If, when playing media through a wireless connected Apple device, the Apple device is then also connected to a USB port, the wireless connection is disabled. To reconnect via wireless, the USB connection needs to be disconnected and the Apple device reconnected via the* ***BLUETOOTH SETTINGS*** *screen.*

Note: *Apple devices with a large quantity of media on them can take a considerable amount of time to synchronise. During this time, playback can only be accessed from the Apple device's media player and not via voice commands.*

Note: *After the Apple device has been synced with the media system, the device can then be controlled via the media system or operated by the voice system. If the Apple device's track list is updated after the device was previously synced, the device needs to be re-synced to the media system. During this time, the Apple device's voice commands become temporarily unavailable.*

Further information on **Bluetooth** wireless technology can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **281, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION**.

CHANGING/DISCONNECTING A DEVICE

To connect or disconnect a paired **Bluetooth**® device:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

1. Touch the **settings** icon to select **All Settings** via the **SYSTEM SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Next, select **Features**, followed by **Bluetooth**.
2. The **BLUETOOTH SETTINGS** screen displays. Select **Paired Devices**.
3. Paired devices are listed. Select **Connect** or **Disconnect**.

To unpair a paired **Bluetooth** device:

1. Select **All Settings** via the **SYSTEM SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Next, select **Features**, followed by **Bluetooth**.
2. The **BLUETOOTH SETTINGS** screen displays. Select **Paired Devices**.
3. Paired devices are listed. Select the device's name, followed by **Forget Device**.

To forget all paired **Bluetooth** devices:

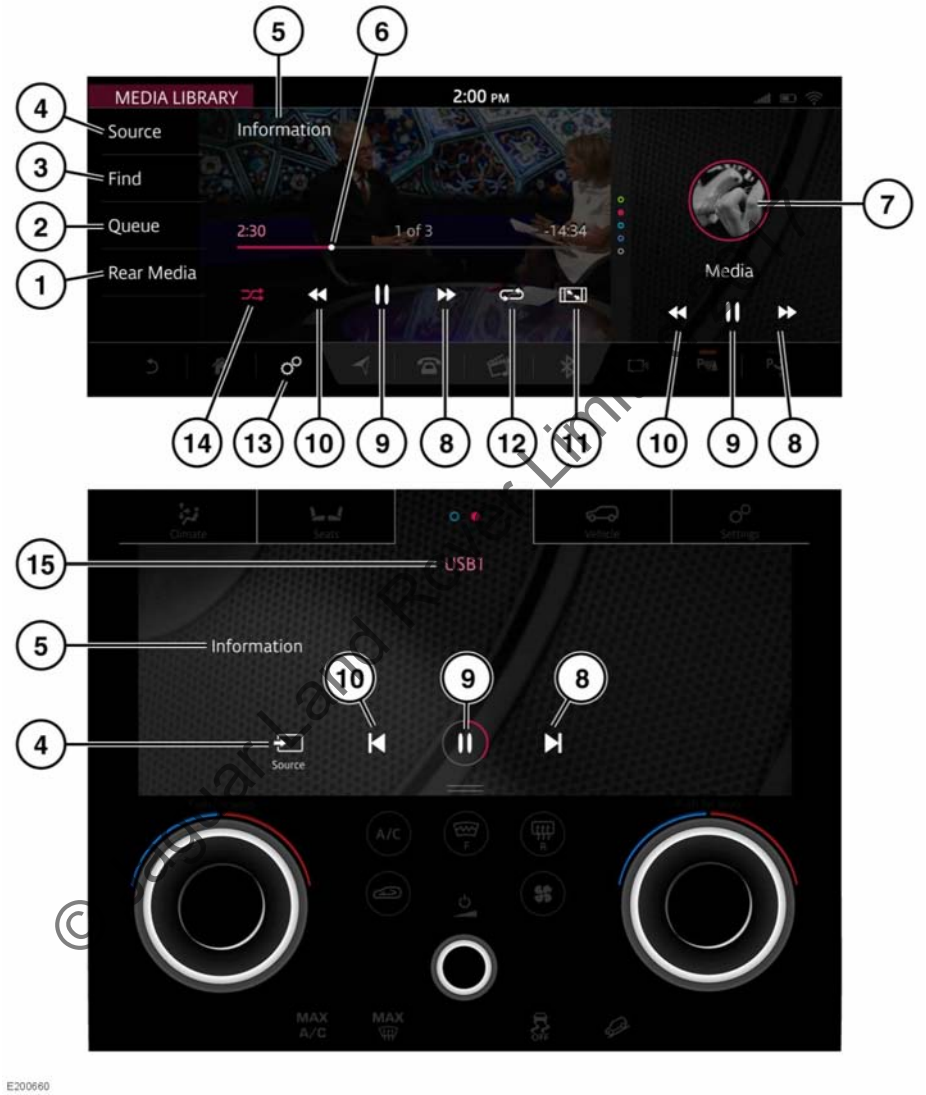
1. Select **All Settings** via the **SYSTEM SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Next, select **Features**, followed by **Bluetooth**.
2. The **BLUETOOTH SETTINGS** screen displays. Select **Forget All Devices**.

IMPORTING/RIPPING MEDIA

The vehicle's internal storage, is used for navigation data, speech data, and metadata databases. Media can also be imported and stored from USB memory devices, via the **MEDIA PLAYER SETTINGS** screen.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

VIDEO MEDIA PLAYER CONTROLS



⚠ **In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust, or view the system when it is safe to do so.**

⚠ **Sustained exposure to high sound levels, greater than 85 decibels, can damage hearing.**

Portable media

Note: *The system plays MPEG1, MPEG2, WMV9, VC-1, H.264, H.263, MPEG4 ASP, RAW, VP6, and VP8 files.*

Note: *To maximise the playback quality, it is recommended not to playback video files with a resolution greater than 1 080p.*

Note: *The quality of video playback may be affected by the USB 3 memory device's speed.*

Select the portable media device from the **SELECT SOURCE** touch screen. See **213, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

Duplicated icons can be operated on the lower touch screen when the media device widget is displayed. Further information on the lower touch screen can be found in the relevant section of the of the Owner's Handbook. See **204, LOWER TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**.

1. **Rear Media**: Touch for rear media options.
2. **Queue**: Opens the current queue of videos selected from the relevant device.
3. **Find**: Touch to search, or select from, the list of videos. The list is displayed in alphabetical order.
4. **Source**: Touch to display all media sources.

   Note: *The media source, e.g., USB 3 memory devices are displayed, only if they are inserted or connected.*
5. Video playback: Touch to select full screen mode or wait for the preview screen to time-out. Touch the screen again to view the controls at any time.
6. Interactive time progress bar: Touch or drag to move forward or backward through the current video track.
7. Media library shortcut: Touch to view the **MEDIA LIBRARY** screen. Swipe up or down to access other features.
8. Skip or scan forward:
   - Touch and release to skip forward to the next video track.
   - Touch and hold to scan forward through the current video track. Playback is resumed when released.
   - Swipe the touch screen to the left, to skip to the next video track.
9. Pause or play: Touch to pause playback. Select again to resume playback. A second touch stops and resets the video.
10. Skip and scan backward:
    - Touch and release to skip backward to the previous video track.
    - Touch and hold to scan backward through the current video track. Playback is resumed when released.
    - Swipe the touch screen to the right, to skip to the previous video track.
11. **Zoom** icon : Select to zoom in or out between the two available options.
12. **Repeat** icon: Touch to repeat the current video continuously. The **repeat** icon is highlighted when active. Touch again to cancel.
13. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **All settings**, select **Features** and then select **Media**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

14. **Shuffle** icon: Touch to shuffle the current video queue. The **shuffle** icon is highlighted when active. Touch again to cancel.
15. Portable media source device display.

VIDEO MEDIA INHIBIT WITH VEHICLE MOVING

When the vehicle is moving, the video picture is automatically inhibited. A relevant safety message is displayed on the touch screen.

FULL SCREEN VIEW

When full screen mode is selected, the seek controls operate in the same manner as they do in preview mode.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Television

TELEVISION CONTROLS



⚠ **In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust, or view the system when it is safe to do so.**

⚠ **Sustained exposure to high sound levels, greater than 85 decibels, can damage hearing.**

Note: *When the vehicle is moving the video picture is automatically inhibited. See* ***237, VIDEO MEDIA INHIBIT WITH VEHICLE MOVING***

Note: *While continuing to work closely with partners to develop TV standards worldwide. We cannot guarantee the TV feature in all countries at all times.*

From the **SELECT SOURCE** screen, on media controls, select the media source. See **213, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

Duplicated icons can be operated on the lower touch screen when the television widget is displayed. Further information on the lower touch screen can be found in the relevant section of the of the Owner's Handbook. See **204, LOWER TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**.

1. **Rear Media**: Touch for rear media options.
2. **Options**: Touch to display various TV options.
   - Touch the **zoom** icon to zoom in from 16:9 or 4:3 to fit screen. Touch again to zoom out.
   - Touch the **audio** icon to access available alternative audio tracks for the current broadcast.
   - Touch the **video** icon to access available alternative video feeds for the current broadcast.
3. **Find**: Touch to display options for finding a TV channel or programme. * See find icons below.
   - **CHANNEL LIST**: Touch to view a list of available channels. Select the up or down arrows to scroll through the list, or swipe the touch screen up or down. Touch the name of the channel to tune to and view that channel.
   - **WHAT'S ON**: Touch the icon to view the Electronic Programme Guide (EPG).

     To set a programme reminder: Select a programme that is currently not broadcasting, to display a summary page. Select **Set Reminder**. Once set, an icon is displayed in the EPG. Only 4 reminders can be set for the same time.

     To view a programme currently being broadcast, select the required programme to display a summary page. Select **View Now** to tune to that channel. The selected programme displays in full screen view.

     Note: *The TV system is continually checking the availability of channels. It is possible for a channel to be in the list, but not actually available. For example when driving through different transmitter regions.*
4. **Favourites**: Touch to display a single list of favourite stations. To rearrange the order of the list, touch the **edit** icon in the footer. Drag and drop selected items to the desired position. Press **OK** to confirm.
5. **Source**: Touch to display all radio and media options.
6. Seek down: Touch, or swipe the touch screen to the right, to tune to and view the previous channel in the TV channel list.
7. Current channel and programme title display.
8. **Favourites** icon: Touch to add to, or delete from, the **Favourites** list.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

9. Seek up: Touch, or swipe the touch screen to the left, to tune to and view the next channel in the TV channel list.
10. Television shortcut: Touch to view the **TELEVISION CONTROLS** screen. Swipe up or down to access other features.
11. **Mute** icon: Touch to mute the volume.
12. Seek up: Touch to browse to the next TV programme on the programme schedule list. Touch the programme to select it.
13. Programme schedule: Shows the TV programme currently playing and what is coming up next.
14. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu and then select **TV Settings**. Select the **Parental Lock**, **BCAS Serial Number**, **Channel Lock**, **Genre Lock**, or **Rating Lock** options.

    Note: *Available options are dependent upon regional television standards.*
15. Seek down: Touch to browse to the previous TV programme on the programme schedule list. Touch the programme to select it.

The audio and video options are operated via the media system. See **213, MEDIA CONTROLS**, or steering wheel controls. See **216, AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS**.

* Find icons:



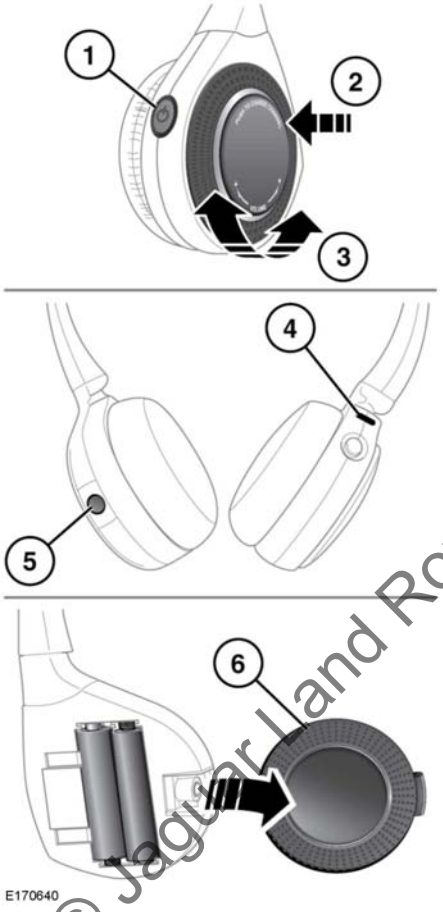
Channel list icon.



What's on icon.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

HEADPHONES



1. Power button: Press to switch the headphones on or off.
2. Channel button: Press to change the media channel.
3. Volume control: Rotate to adjust the headphone volume.
4. The status LED indicator lamp:
   - When a signal is being received, the lamp illuminates continuously.
   - When a signal is not being received, the lamp flashes.
   - When the battery power is low, the lamp flashes and then extinguishes after a short delay.
5. The battery access cover's securing screw.
6. The battery access cover.

When the battery power is low, the headphones emit a beeping sound every 90 seconds.

To replace the batteries, use the following procedure:

1. Remove the battery access cover's securing screw (**5**).
2. Pull the battery access cover (**6**) away from the headphones.
3. Remove the used batteries.
4. Fit the new AAA batteries.

   Note: *Make sure that the polarity of the batteries matches that shown inside the headphone's battery compartment.*
5. Replace the battery access cover and fit the battery access cover retaining screw.

   Note: *The headphones do not operate if the batteries are fitted incorrectly.*

   Note: *Under normal usage, the expected battery life is six months.*

   Note: *Always use good quality batteries of the same type.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

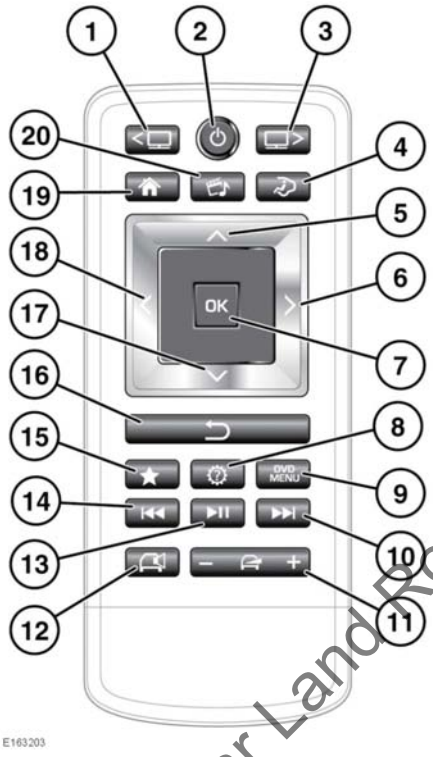
Headphones



Used batteries must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on battery disposal from a retailer/authorised repairer and/or the local authority.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

REAR SEAT REMOTE CONTROL



1. **Left screen** button: Press to select, or reactivate the screen when in standby mode (illuminates when selected).
2. **Power** button: Press and release to switch the selected screen on and off (all selected audio from sources will continue).
   Press and hold to switch the system off completely (audio and video source will stop).
3. **Right screen** button: Press to select, or reactivate the screen when in standby mode (illuminates when selected).
4. **Rear climate** button: Press to toggle between the **CLIMATE** and **SEATS** screens.
5. **Up** button: Press to move up the selection*.
6. **Right** button: Press to move right*.
7. **OK** button: Press to confirm selection.
8. **Settings** button: Some settings for features displayed on the rear screens are available, however full functionality is controlled from the front touch screen.
9. **DVD menu** button: Press to select from DVD menu.
   Note: *This feature is not operational on this vehicle.*
10. **Forward** button: Press for next track, file, channel, or station depending on the media.
11. **Volume control** button: Press to increase, decrease, or mute cabin audio volume (volume control for the headphones is on the side of the headphones).
12. **Cabin audio** button: Press to turn the cabin audio on or off (when switched off, the headphone's audio will be available).
13. **Play or Pause** button: Press to play or pause media.
14. **Backward** button: Press for previous track, file, channel, or station depending on the media.
15. **Favourite** button: Press to mark the selection as a favourite.
16. **Return** button: Press to return to a higher menu level.
17. **Down** button: Press to move down the selection*.

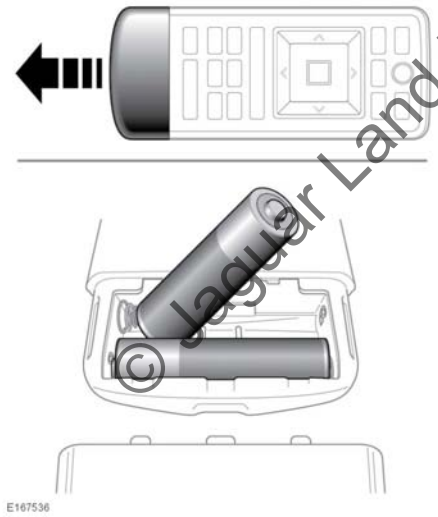
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

18. **Left** button: Press to move left*.
19. **Home** button: Press to select the rear **HOME** screen.
20. **Media source** button: Press once to view the selected media source. Press again to access the **SELECT SOURCE** menu.

*These are multi-function keys depending on the source selected.

If the remote control becomes unpaired from the rear screens, re-pair via the **Rear Media Settings**, on the touch screen **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Once this is complete, both the left and right screen buttons will flash twice. See **211, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

REAR SEAT REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY



Low battery power is indicated by the remote control power button flashing three times when pressed.

To renew the batteries:

- Remove the chrome battery cover.
- Remove the used batteries.
- Install two AAA batteries. Make sure the polarity of the batteries matches that shown inside the remote control battery compartment.

  Note: *Make sure that the batteries are installed correctly or the remote control will not operate.*

  Note: *Always use good quality batteries of the same type.*
- Replace the chrome battery cover.



Battery disposal: Used batteries must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from a retailer/ authorised repairer and/or the local authority.

REAR SEAT SCREEN - HOME SCREEN

The rear screens allow rear seat passengers to use selected features that are also available to the front occupants.

The features displayed on the rear screens can only be controlled by using the rear screen remote control. See **245, REAR SEAT SCREENS OVERVIEW**.

The following features are available for use by the rear passengers:

- **Media**: The media system can be accessed via the rear screens. Some of the features available will be different to the front touch screen options. See **221, AM/FM RADIO CONTROLS**, **227, PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS**, and **238, TELEVISION CONTROLS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

- **Navigation**: The navigation system can be viewed and operated from the rear screens. Some of the features available will be different to the front touch screen options. See **288, REAR SEAT NAVIGATION**.
- **Seats**: The rear seat heating or cooling temperature can be adjusted via the rear screens. See **252, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.
- **Climate**: The rear climate control system, can be adjusted via the rear screens. The system can be locked via the front lower touch screen. A **padlock** icon is displayed when the rear climate control system has been locked.
  The rear climate control system cannot be switched off via the rear screens. See **249, REAR CLIMATE CONTROL**.
- **Settings**: Some settings for features shown on the rear screens are available by pressing the **settings** button on the remote control, however, full functionality is controlled from the front lower touch screen. See **212, LOWER TOUCH SCREEN DISPLAY SETTINGS**.

REAR SEAT SCREENS OVERVIEW

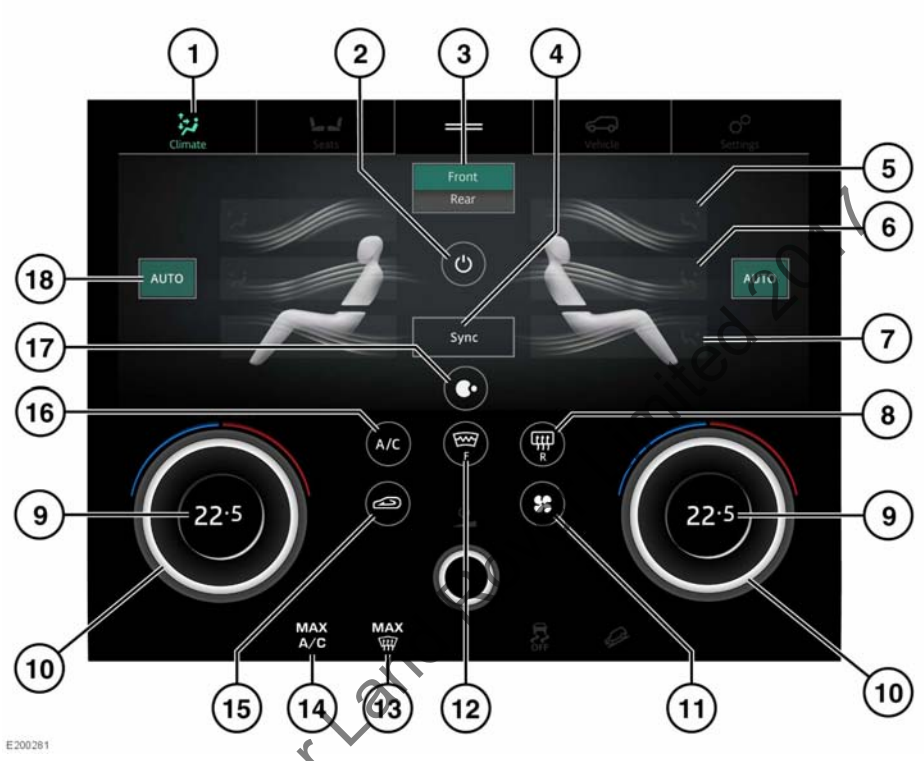
To activate the system using the rear seat remote control, press the appropriate screen select (**1**) or (**3**), followed by the power button (**2**).

Select the desired system. Subsequent selections on the remote control will operate the last selected system.

Note: *To prevent accidental damage, always store the remote control in the stowage area provided, when not in use.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL



In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.

Do not adjust the touch screen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.

Note: *A biocidal product may be fitted to this vehicle. The biocidal product is contained within an air ioniser. The air ioniser purifies the air in the passenger compartment by suppressing bacteria. The active substance is free radicals generated in situ from the ambient air or water.*

To access the front climate screen, touch the **Climate** icon on the lower touch screen. See **204, LOWER TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**.

1. Touch to access the **Climate** screen.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

2. **Power** icon: Touch to switch the climate control system on or off.
3. **Front** or **Rear** icon: Touch to switch between **Front** climate or **Rear** climate menu screens.
4. **Sync**: Select to synchronise the front passenger and rear passengers climate settings to the driver's settings.
5. Air distribution to the front windscreen: Touch to switch on or off.
6. Air distribution to the face: Touch to switch on or off.
7. Air distribution to the feet: Touch to switch on or off.
8. **Heated rear screen** icon: Touch to switch on or off. If left on, it deactivates after a timed period, dependent on the outside temperature.

   Do not attach labels to the rear screen. Do not scrape or use abrasive materials to clean the inside of the rear screen.

   Note: *The heated windscreen and rear screen operate only when the engine is running.*
9. Press to switch between cabin temperature control and front seat temperature control. See **253, HEATED SEATS** and **253, CLIMATE SEATS**.
10. Rotary controls: Rotate to adjust the cabin or seat temperature.
11. **Blower speed control** icon: Touch to switch blower speed adjustment on or off. Rotate the passenger rotary control to manually adjust the blower speed.

    Note: *The blower speed is automatically set in* ***AUTO*** *mode. Adjusting the blower speed cancels* ***AUTO*** *mode.*
12. **Heated windscreen** icon: Touch to switch on or off. If left on, it deactivates after a timed period, dependent on the outside temperature.

    Note: *In cold ambient conditions, the windscreen and rear screen heaters switch on automatically when the engine is started. The function can be switched on or off via* ***Climate*** *settings. See* ***248, CLIMATE SETTINGS****.*
13. **Maximum defrost** icon: Touch and hold to switch maximum defrost for the windscreen on or off.
14. **MAX A/C** icon: Touch and hold to switch maximum A/C mode on or off.
15. **Recirculation** icon: Touch to recirculate air inside the vehicle.
    - Touch briefly to select timed recirculation. Recirculation switches off automatically after a set time (dependent on the ambient temperature).
    - Touch and hold to select latched recirculation. Recirculation remains on until the button is pressed again.

    Note: *Prolonged use at low temperatures may cause the windows to mist.*
16. **A/C** icon: Touch to switch the Air Conditioning (A/C) system on or off. The A/C system can be switched on or off independently of the other climate control functions.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

17. **Air ionisation** icon: Touch to activate air ionisation. The mode can only be activated when air distribution to the face mode has been selected. Selection of **AUTO** mode will deactivate the air ionisation mode.
18. **AUTO** mode: Touch to switch fully automatic mode on. Dependent on the vehicle's specification, the various options for **AUTO** mode can be set via the **Climate** settings menu. See **248, CLIMATE SETTINGS**.

    Note: *AUTO mode is the recommended normal operating mode. The Air Conditioning (A/C) and heating and ventilation controls automatically provide an optimum environment at the selected temperature.*

Note: *Some of the buttons have an LED indicator lamp that illuminates to confirm selection.*

Note: *If the climate control system is switched off, pressing an **AUTO** button or the defrost button switches the climate control system on.*

Note: *Water expelled by the A/C system may collect underneath the vehicle, when parked. The expelled water is not a cause for concern.*

CLIMATE SETTINGS

To view the climate settings menu, select the **Settings** icon, on the lower touch screen, then select **Climate** from the **Lower screen display**.

- Automatic heated screens: Automatic operation of the heated windscreen and/or the rear heated screen can be enabled or disabled.
- **Air Purity**: The air quality sensor, for automatic recirculation, can be adjusted. See **248, AIR QUALITY SENSOR**.
- **Auto Air Flow**: The blower speed for automatic operation can be set to **Soft and Quiet**, **Balanced**, or **Powerful and Fast**.

AUTOMATIC RECIRCULATION

The climate control system monitors exterior air pollution, and selects recirculation if it reaches a predetermined level. Automatic recirculation only operates when the **Air Purity** function is active. The sensitivity of the air quality sensor can be set via the **Climate** settings screen. See **248, AIR QUALITY SENSOR**.

Note: *It is recommended that automatic recirculation is enabled, to maintain the optimum air quality within the vehicle.*

AIR QUALITY SENSOR

The sensitivity of the air quality sensor can be adjusted by changing the **Air Purity** level.

To adjust the **Air Purity** level:

1. Select the **Settings** icon, on the lower touch screen, then select **Climate** from the **Lower screen display**.
2. Select **Air Purity**, and then select the appropriate level: **Low**, **Medium**, or **High**.
   To deactivate, touch **OFF**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

REAR CLIMATE CONTROL



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

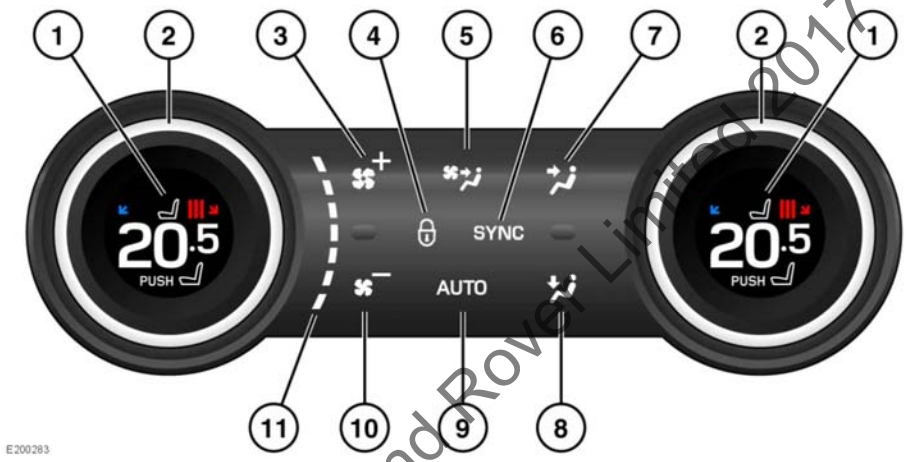
Note: *A biocidal product may be fitted to this vehicle. The biocidal product is contained within an air ioniser. The air ioniser purifies the air in the passenger compartment by suppressing bacteria. The active substance is free radicals generated in situ from the ambient air or water.*

To access the rear climate screen, touch the **Climate** icon on the lower touch screen. See **204, LOWER TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**.

Control the rear climate as follows:

1. Touch access the **Climate** screen.
2. **Front** or **Rear** icon: Touch to switch between **Front** climate or **Rear** climate menu screens.
3. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **Lower screen display**on the lower touch screen, then select **Climate**.
4. **Padlock** icon: Touch to disable the rear climate control switches, in order to prevent the rear passengers from adjusting the rear climate settings. Touch again to enable the controls.

5. Rear booster blower: Touch to enable or disable.
6. Air distribution to the feet: Touch to switch on or off.
7. **AUTO** icon: Touch to switch automatic operation on.
8. **Air ionisation** icon: Touch to activate air ionisation. The mode can only be activated when front and rear air distribution to the face mode has been selected. Selection of **AUTO** mode will deactivate the air ionisation mode.
9. Air distribution to the face: Touch to switch on or off.



The rear climate can be adjusted with the controls located in the rear of the centre console.

Control the rear climate as follows:

1. Press to switch between cabin temperature control and rear seat temperature control. See **253, HEATED SEATS** and **253, CLIMATE SEATS**.
2. Temperature controls: Rotate to adjust the cabin or seat temperature.
3. Blower speed increase: Press to increase the blower speed.
4. **Padlock** icon: The LED illuminates to show that the rear climate controls have been locked via the driver's controls.
5. Rear booster blower: Press to enable or disable.
6. **Sync**: The LED illuminates to show that the rear climate controls have been synchronised to the driver's settings.
7. Air distribution to the face: Press to switch on or off.
8. Air distribution to the feet: Press to switch on or off.
9. **AUTO** control: Press to switch automatic operation on.
10. Blower speed decrease: Press to decrease the blower speed.
11. Blower speed level indicator: The LED displays the current blower speed level.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Note: *Some of the buttons have an LED indicator lamp that illuminates to confirm selection.*

Note: *In addition to the selectable controls, the* ***REAR CLIMATE*** *screen displays symbols that indicate the status of heating and ventilation functions.*

Note: *If the climate control system is switched off, pressing the rear* ***AUTO*** *button switches the climate control system on.*

Note: *If the system is in defrost mode, all rear controls are disabled and no airflow is available to the rear occupants.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

To access the seats screen, touch the **Seats** icon on the lower touch screen. See **204, LOWER TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**.

Control the seat comfort and adjustment as follows:

1. Touch to access the **Seats** screen.
2. **Front** or **Rear** icon: Touch to switch between **Front** seats or **Rear** seats menu screens.
3. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **Lower screen display**on the lower touch screen, then select **Seats**.
4. **Seat massage** icon: Touch to select seat massage function. See **253, SEAT MASSAGE**.
5. **Seat zone** icon: Touch to select seat top zone.
6. **Seat zone** icon: Touch to select seat base zone.
7. Rotary controls: Press to select or deselect the seat control function. Rotate to adjust the seat temperature or massage intensity.

8. **Power** icon. Touch to switch selected function on or off, for massage, heated or climate seat.
9. **Heated and climate seat** icon: Touch to select the heated and climate seat function. See **253, HEATED SEATS** or **253, CLIMATE SEATS**.

HEATED SEATS

Note: *Heated seats consume a large amount of battery power. They only operate when the engine is running.*

Note: *The heated rear seats (non-climate) can only be operated by pressing the buttons located at the rear of the centre console.*



Heated seat icon.

Press the relevant heated seat button to switch the required heated seat on at the maximum setting. The three LED indicators in the button illuminate.

Press a second time to set the heated seat at the medium setting. Two LED indicators illuminate.

Press a third time to set the heated seat at the lowest setting. One LED indicator illuminates.

Press a fourth time to switch off.

Note: *The heated front seats are controlled via the lower touch screen. See* ***253, CLIMATE SEATS****.*

Note: *On vehicles with rear climate seats, the rear heated seats are controlled in the same manner as climate seats. See* ***253, CLIMATE SEATS****.*

CLIMATE SEATS

Note: *The climate seats only operate when the engine is running.*

To access the heated or climate seats screen, touch the **Seats** icon on the lower touch screen, then touch the heated and climate seats icon. See **252, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**

1. Touch the **power** icon to switch the selected climate seat on or off.
2. Touch the required **seat zone** icon: Top, base or both icons.
3. Rotate the outer part of the rotary control to adjust the seat temperature. See **252, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**

   Note: *The temperature status of the selected seat zone is displayed on the touch screen. The status range is, red for heated operation and blue for cooled operation.*

   Note: *The rotary control displays a numeric* ***+*** *or* ***-*** *status. The outline of the rotary control illuminates to display a red for heated operation and blue for cooled operation.*

SEAT MASSAGE

Note: *Seat massage only operates when the engine is running.*
Seat massage does not operate when the vehicle's interior temperature is below 0°C or above 50°C.

To access the seat massage screen, touch the **Seats** icon on the lower touch screen, then touch the seat massage icon. See **252, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**

1. Touch the **power** icon to switch the selected seat massage on or off.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

2. Touch the required top **seat zone** icon.
3. Touch the appropriate icon for **Wave**, **Up**, **Down**, **Shoulder** or **Lumbar** massage.
4. Rotate the outer part of the rotary control to adjust the seat massage intensity. See **252, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**

   Note: *The outline of the rotary control illuminates to display the level of seat massage intensity.*

Auto Massage can be set in **Seat Settings**. See **254, SEAT SETTINGS**.

Note: *The massage programs have a 10 minute cycle, which need to be reselected for repeated use.*

SEAT SETTINGS

Seats settings can be accessed via the **Settings** icon on the lower touch screen. See**204, LOWER TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**.

Touch the **Settings** icon to access the **Lower screen display** on the lower touch screen, then select **Seats**.

The following options can be selected:

- **Auto Massage**: Switch the automatic massage feature **On** or **Off**.
- **Time delay**: Touch to select the time delay options. A time delay for the seat massage can be set from the start of a journey.

AUXILIARY HEATER

Do not operate the auxiliary heater when refuelling the vehicle. Doing so may cause fuel vapours to combust, causing a fire or explosion.

Do not operate the auxiliary heater while the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Doing so can cause a build up of highly toxic fumes, which may cause unconsciousness or death.

The auxiliary heater is powered by fuel drawn from the vehicle's tank. The auxiliary heater operates at low ambient temperatures and helps to boost the temperature of the engine's coolant. Raising the temperature of the engine's coolant improves the cabin heating and engine starting performance. It can also be controlled by the timed climate control system or from the timed climate remote control.

When the auxiliary heater is operating, exhaust fumes from the heater may be visible exiting from under the front of the vehicle. Exhaust fumes from the auxiliary heater is normal and is not a cause for concern.

TIMED CLIMATE

Do not operate the timed climate system when refuelling the vehicle. Doing so may cause fuel vapours to combust, causing a fire or explosion.

Do not operate the timed climate system while the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Doing so can cause a build up of highly toxic fumes, which may cause unconsciousness or death.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

The timed climate system, when in operation, provides a comfortable temperature inside the cabin in advance of using the vehicle. The timed climate system can also maintain a temperature when leaving the vehicle for a short period of time.

The timed climate system draws in fresh air to cool the cabin, or operates the auxiliary heater to heat the cabin. Heating and cooling of the cabin is selected by the timed climate system and is dependent on the external ambient temperature.

The timed climate system can be controlled via the touch screen, or it can be operated using the timed climate remote. The touch screen control has options for either timed or manual settings.

The timed climate system may not operate, or switches off automatically, in the following scenarios:

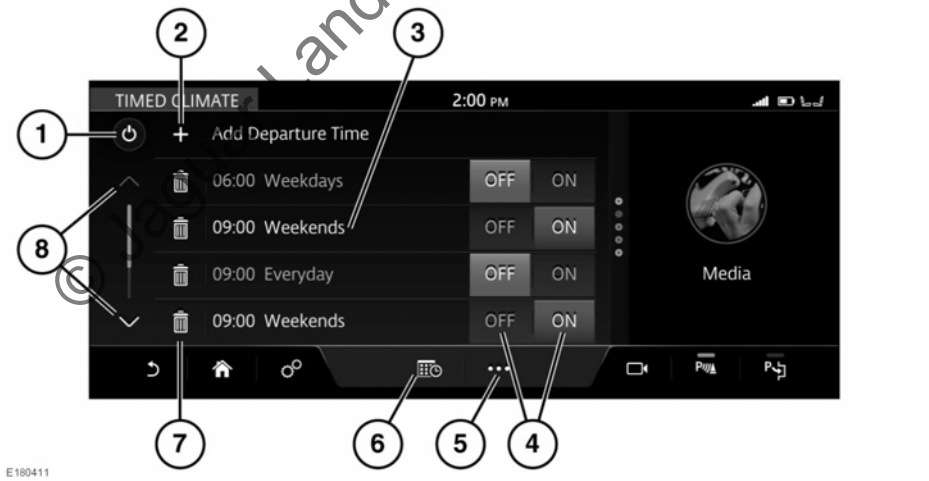
- If the fuel level is low.
- If the vehicle's battery charge is low.
- If the coolant temperature is at, or above, its required temperature.
- If the system has been in operation for 30 minutes.

TIMED CLIMATE TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS

The touch screen can be used to either preset activation times or to operate the system manually.

When the system is operating, the LED of the climate control **Max defrost** icon flashes. The choice of operation is automatically determined by the system, depending on the external temperature.

Note: *The system ceases operation if the engine is started.*

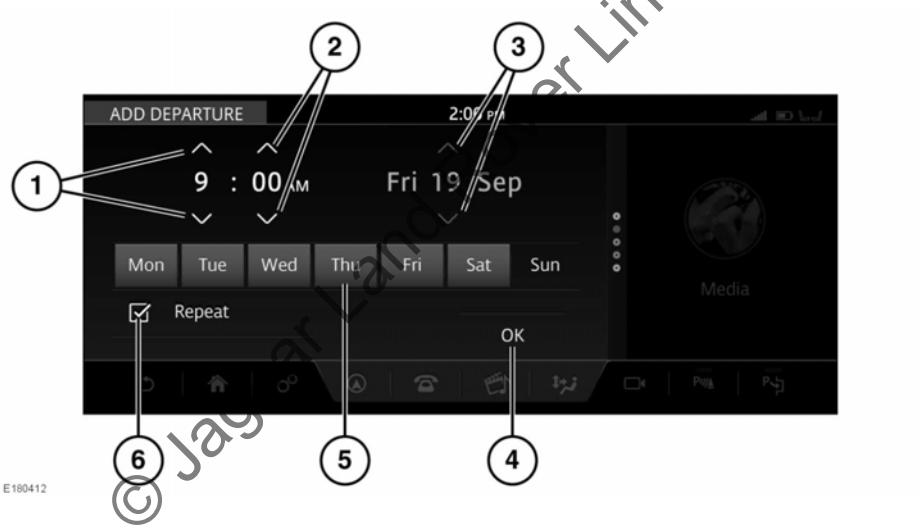


© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

To access the **TIMED CLIMATE** screen, select **Timed Climate** from the **EXTRA FEATURES** page. See **209, EXTRA FEATURES**.

To control the timed climate system via the touch screen:

1. **Power** icon: Touch to switch the timed climate system on or off.
2. Add: Touch to access the **ADD DEPARTURE** screen.
3. Departure time: Touch to edit a departure time.
4. **ON** or **OFF**: Touch to switch a stored departure time on or off.
5. Manual operation menu: Touch the **...** icon, followed by **Heat Now** or **Vent Now** to manually operate the timed climate system. Touch **Heat Now** or **Vent Now** in the **TIMED CLIMATE** screen to switch off the timed climate system.
6. **Calendar** icon: Touch to view the active departure times for the next 7 days.
7. Delete: Touch to delete the stored departure time.
8. Scroll bar: Touch the up and down arrows to scroll through the stored departure times.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Select the **ADD DEPARTURE** screen from the **TIMED CLIMATE** screen.

To set a single or repeated departure time:

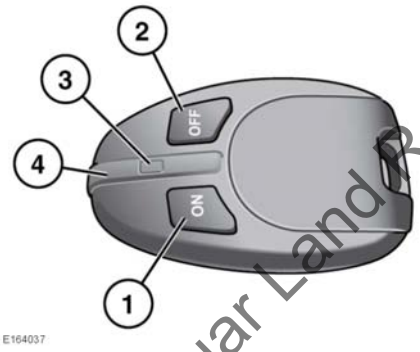
1. Hour: Touch to adjust the hour.
2. Minute: Touch to adjust the minutes.
3. Day: Touch to adjust the day.
4. **OK**: Touch **OK** to set the departure time and days.
5. Day selection: Touch to select the days that require the repeated departure time.

6. **Repeat**: Touch to enable the departure time to be repeated on other days. Touch again to cancel repeated departure times.

Note: *Make sure that the required departure times are switched on or off, as required, on the* ***TIMED CLIMATE*** *screen.*

Note: *The time format, 12 or 24 hour clock, is determined by the time settings currently selected in the* ***GENERAL SETTINGS*** *menu. See* ***211, GENERAL SETTINGS****.*

USING THE TIMED CLIMATE REMOTE



1. **ON** button.
2. **OFF** button.
3. Light Emitting Diode (LED) operation indicator.
4. Antenna.

   Note: *Avoid touching the antenna when operating the* ***ON*** *or* ***OFF*** *button.*

The remote control has an approximate range of 100 m. There is no need to point the remote control at the vehicle.

Press and hold the **ON** button for approximately 2 seconds.

The LED operation indicator signals various states and conditions for the remote timed climate. When a button is pressed, the LED illuminates green and then indicates the following status:

- A series of short green flashes: Operation of the heater has been requested.
- 12 long green flashes: The heater is switched on.
- 12 long red flashes: The heater is switched off.
- 18 short red flashes (in groups of 3 flashes): No communication with the receiver.
- 12 short red flashes: There is an error.

If the LED operation indicator emits 6 short red flashes when a button is pressed, the battery in the remote needs to be replaced. See **258, REPLACING THE REMOTE BATTERIES**.

The remote timed climate program continues for 20-30 minutes, after which it switches off automatically to prevent the vehicle's battery from discharging. The remote timed climate program also switches off automatically if the engine is started.

Note: *The timed climate remote only operates once per engine start to maintain battery condition.*

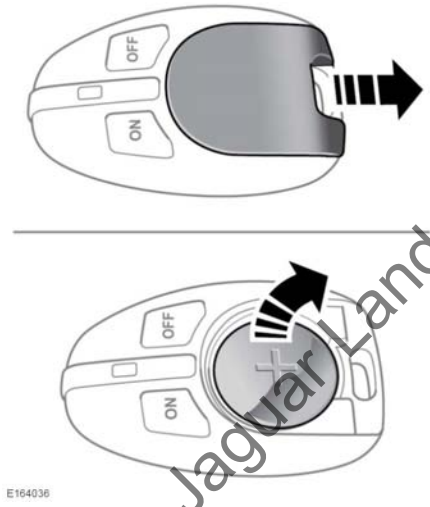
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

ADDITIONAL REMOTES

Additional remote controls can be programmed to operate the timed climate. A maximum of four remote controls can be programmed to the vehicle. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer to purchase additional remote controls and have them programmed to the vehicle.

REPLACING THE REMOTE BATTERIES

With the front of the remote control facing upward, press down on the rear of the access cover and push completely off to reveal the battery compartment. Note that the battery should be inserted with the positive side facing upward. Remove the old battery and making sure that the correct polarity is maintained, insert a new, unused 3 volt CR2032 battery. Align and push the cover back to the original position.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

USING THE PARKING AID

The sensors for the parking aid system do not detect moving objects, such as children and animals, until they are dangerously close. The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention during low speed manoeuvres.

The sensors for the parking aid system may be externally influenced by hot exhaust gasses from nearby vehicles. The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention during low speed manoeuvres.

The sensors for the parking aid system may not detect some obstructions. For example, narrow posts or small objects close to the ground. Objects above sensor level may not be detected, e.g., when approaching a flatbed truck the protruding part of the flatbed is not detected.

When washing the vehicle, do not aim high pressure water jet directly at any of the sensors. Do not use abrasive materials, or hard or sharp objects, to clean the sensors. Only use approved vehicle shampoo.

Accessories that are fitted to the front or rear of the vehicle, particular care must be taken when using the parking aid. Accessories that are mounted in a position where it obstructs operation of a sensor or sensors will only detect the distance from the bumper to the accessory. The accessory then displays as an obstacle. Any obstacle beyond the detected accessory may not be indicated on the touch screen display.

Note: *The sensors must be kept clean to maintain accuracy and performance.*

Note: *When a trailer is connected to an approved trailer socket, the rear parking sensors are disabled. When the trailer's electrical plug is not connected to the socket, or a non-approved towing system is fitted, the parking sensors do not operate as intended.*

Note: *The 360° parking aid feature is not available in some markets.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Parking features



1. **Settings** icon: Touch to select the **PARKING AID SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
2. **Parking aid** icon: Touch to activate the parking aid feature.
3. Vehicle steering trajectory lines: Projected reversing path, based on the current steering wheel position.
4. Parking aid sensor detection zones:
   - Grey blocks indicate objects detected that do not pose a threat, i.e., not in a collision path with the vehicle.
   - Coloured blocks indicate objects detected that pose collision threats.
5. **Cameras** icon: Touch to select the cameras feature.
6. **Volume** icon: Touch to lower the volume of the beeps for the parking aid system.

The parking aid system assists the driver while manoeuvring the vehicle at low speed in confined spaces. When active, object tracking along the front, sides, and rear of the vehicle is displayed on the touch screen. The front, side, and outer rear sensors monitor a fixed distance around the vehicle. The inner rear sensors monitor a greater distance at the rear of the vehicle. The four side sensors provide the 360° parking aid monitoring along the vehicle's sides, creating a virtual detection zone.

The parking aid system can also detect low objects, e.g., kerbs in the front and rear detection zones. The kerbs can be tracked as the vehicle approaches even when the kerbs are no longer seen by the sensors.

While the vehicle is passing an object within its sensor range, the vehicle's integrated systems calculate its trajectory. The trajectory is displayed on the touch screen in the parking aid monitored area.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2021

When a detected object is calculated to be a collision threat, it is displayed as coloured blocks. The distance from a collision threat is colour coded: yellow to amber to a red, with red being the closest. Other detected objects that are not a collision threat are displayed as grey blocks.

Note: *When the parking aid system is active, the system only provides information of obstacles when a threat is detected.*

A warning tone is given, which increases in speed as the vehicle approaches the object. The tone becomes continuous when the object is within 300 mm of the vehicle. The warning tone sounds from the area in which a collision threat has been detected.

While the vehicle is stationary, the sensors for the parking aid system do not detect objects or people approaching from the side. Also, at vehicle start-up, the vehicle has no sensor information about side objects or people. In these situations, **!** is displayed on the touch screen in these virtual detection zones.

Note: *At vehicle start-up, the front sensors may not detect low objects, even if the objects were detected during the original parking manoeuvre.*

To manually enable the parking aid system, touch the **parking aid** icon (**2**). The icon illuminates while the parking aid system is enabled. Touch the icon again to disable the system. The LED extinguishes.

The parking aid system also activates when the following is selected:

- Reverse (**R**) or Neutral (**N**) is selected.

The parking aid system can be set to activate automatically for when:

- The vehicle's speed falls below 10 km/h (6 mph).
- Drive (**D**) is selected.

To enable the auto on feature, select, the **settings** icon to access the **PARKING AID SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **Automatic PDC ON**.

PARKING AID VOLUME

To adjust the volume of the parking aid warning tones, rotate the sound system volume control while the tones are active. See **213, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

Touch the **volume** icon, in the parking aid or camera features, to reduce the volume for that manoeuvre only.

PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The parking aid system is deactivated and cannot be reactivated if:

1. The vehicle's speed is greater than 16 km/h (10 mph).
2. Park (**P**) is selected.
3. Wade sensing is active.
4. All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) is active.
5. There is a system fault.

If a parking aid system fault is detected, the instrument panel displays a message. If all of the sensors are clean and the fault is not rectified after an ignition cycle, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

PARKING AID SYSTEM FAULT

If a parking aid system fault is detected, a long high-pitched tone sounds and the touch screen **parking aid** icon flashes. The touch screen displays a parking aid message. If all of the sensors are clean and the fault is not rectified after an ignition cycle, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.

PARK ASSIST

Park assist is a driving aid only. The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention during parking manoeuvres.

Park assist sensors may not detect moving objects, such as children and animals, until they are dangerously close. Always use extreme caution when manoeuvring, and always use the mirrors.

Park assist sensors may not detect some obstructions, e.g., narrow posts, small objects close to the ground and mesh fences. In some circumstances, bicycles or motorbikes parked alongside the kerb may not be detected. Objects above sensor level may not be detected, e.g., when approaching a flatbed truck, the protruding part of the flatbed will not be detected.

Do not use the **Parking Exit** feature when leaving a **Perpendicular Parking** space. **Parking Exit** is programmed for leaving only a **Parallel Parking** space. Damage to the vehicle, or surrounding objects, may occur if **Parking Exit** is used when leaving a **Perpendicular Parking** space.

All sensors must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., leaves, mud, snow, ice, frost, or insects. Failure to keep the sensors clean may result in sensor miscalculation or false indications.

The driver must maintain full control of the accelerator and brake pedals throughout the parking manoeuvre.

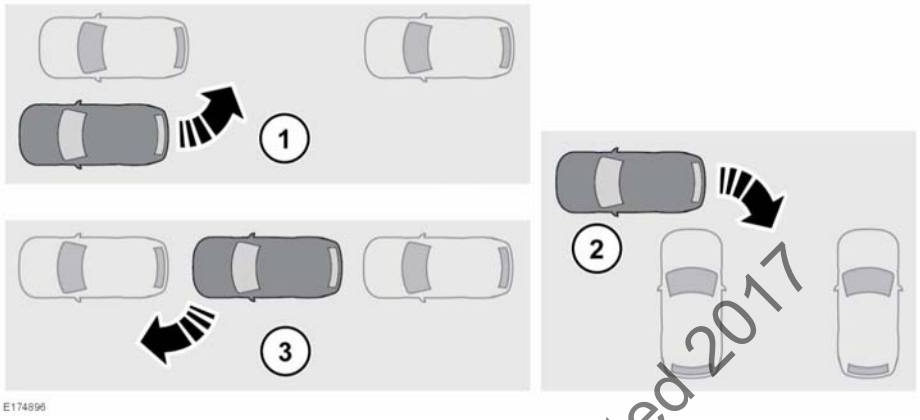
Note: *A park assist manoeuvre can be cancelled at any point. Hold or turn the steering wheel, or touch the* ***park assist*** *icon.*

Note: *All of the doors and the tailgate must be securely closed when using park assist.*

Note: *During any park assist manoeuvre, the parking aid system remains active and emits a warning sound when objects are detected close to the vehicle.*

The park assist system is an aid to manoeuvre the vehicle in and out of parallel or perpendicular parking spaces. Park assist takes control of the vehicle's steering system to manoeuvre the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017



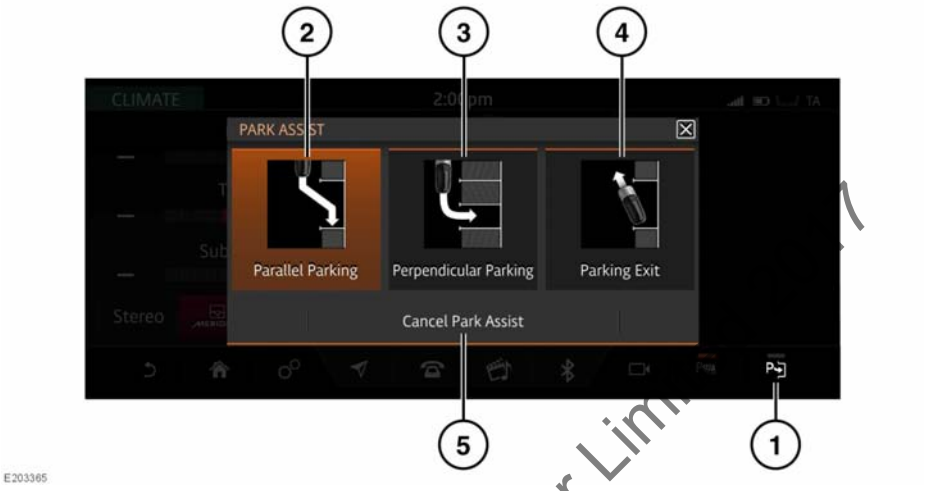
The park assist system comprises three different modes:

1. **Parallel Parking**: For reversing into a parking space that is parallel to the vehicle.
2. **Perpendicular Parking**: For reversing into a parking space that is at a 90° angle to the vehicle.
3. **Parking Exit**: For exiting only a parallel parking space.

All park assist instructions are displayed in the instrument panel.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

SELECTING PARK ASSIST



1. **Park assist** icon: Touch to select **PARK ASSIST**.
2. **Parallel Parking**: Touch to select the **Parallel Parking** mode.
3. **Perpendicular Parking**: Touch to select the **Perpendicular Parking** mode.
4. **Parking Exit**: Touch to select the **Parking Exit** mode.
5. **Cancel Park Assist**: When parking assistance is no longer required, touch **Cancel Park Assist** to exit the selected park assist mode.

Touch the **park assist** icon (**1**) on the touch screen to access the **PARK ASSIST** pop-up menu. Select the required mode. The icon illuminates while the park assist system is enabled. Touch the icon again to disable the system. The LED extinguishes.

The instrument panel displays the selected mode. Follow the instructions and alerts shown in the instrument panel to complete the required manoeuvre.

Note: *Park assist can be activated in any gear except Reverse (**R**).*

USING PARK ASSIST

In the interest of safety, operate or adjust the system only when it is safe to do so.

Park assist must not be used if a temporary spare wheel is in use.

Park assist must not be used if a sensor is damaged, or the bumper is damaged sufficiently enough to affect a sensor mounting point.

Park assist must not be used if a sensor is obstructed by items attached to the vehicle, e.g., bumper covers, a bicycle rack, or stickers.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

Park assist must not be used if the vehicle is being used to transport a load that extends beyond the vehicle's perimeter.

For assistance when parking

Select **Parallel Parking** or **Perpendicular Parking**.

As the vehicle is driven forward, the size of a potential parking space, on the side opposite the driver, is assessed. To search for a space on the driver's side, signal a turn in that direction, using the direction indicators.

Note: *For park assist to search effectively for a space, the park assist system must maintain a distance of 0.5 m to 1.5 m. The distance of 0.5 m to 1.5 m is between the vehicle and the row of parked vehicles or obstacles.*

Note: *The park assist auto-searching feature becomes active when the vehicle's speed is less than 30 km/h (18 mph). When park assist is selected, a space may already have been detected by the auto-searching feature. An appropriate message is displayed in the instrument panel.*

Note: *Park assist may determine that other vehicles are too close, on either side, to perform a parking manoeuvre. A detected space can be rejected, even if it is large enough for the vehicle. The driver retains the option to switch park assist off and attempt the manoeuvre manually.*

The park assist sensors assess the kerb in a parking space so that the vehicle can be aligned against it. When the kerb shape is irregular, or not detectable, vehicles either side of the parking space are used for aligning the vehicle. When there is a tall object alongside the kerb, e.g., a post or bin, it will affect vehicle positioning. Resulting in the vehicle positioning being further away, or closer to the kerb than normal. Occasionally, this may result in the kerb being mounted.

When a suitable space is found, a short confirmation tone is given and a message is displayed in the instrument panel.

For assistance when exiting a parallel parking space

The **Parking Exit** mode operates only when the vehicle has been parallel parked. **Parking Exit** does not manoeuvre the vehicle from a **Perpendicular Parking** space. The driver is responsible and must not to use **Parking Exit** mode to exit a **Perpendicular Parking**.

Do not perform a **Parking Exit** manoeuvre until the message **DRIVE FORWARD WITH CARE** is displayed in the instrument panel.

When the vehicle is parallel parked and the ignition is subsequently switched off, the park assist memory is cleared. When the ignition is switched on again, the direction indicators must be operated to indicate an exit intention. The operated direction indicators notify the park assist feature on which side the driver intends to leave the parking space.

Select **Parking Exit**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

For the **Parking Exit** mode to operate correctly, the vehicle must be parked in a space where other vehicles or objects are either:

- Parked in front of the vehicle.
- Parked in front and behind the vehicle.

All park assist features

Although the vehicle takes control during the parking or exiting manoeuvre, the driver must maintain full control of the accelerator and brake pedals throughout. When the manoeuvre is not as expected, take control of the steering and make necessary adjustments.

Note: *When the vehicle's speed exceeds 5 km/h (3 mph) during the manoeuvre, park assist displays an overspeed message until the vehicle's speed decreases to less than 5 km/h (3 mph). When the vehicle's speed exceeds 7 km/h (4 mph), park assist deactivates.*

For all three park assist modes, follow the instructions in the instrument panel until the parking or exiting manoeuvre is complete.

If a system fault is detected, a continuous tone sounds and a message is displayed in the instrument panel. Consult a retailer/ authorised repairer.

PARK ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Park assist is a supplement to, and not a replacement for, good observation and a safe driving style. The driver is responsible for driving at all times, to make sure that reversing manoeuvres are carried out safely.

When washing the vehicle, do not aim high pressure water jets directly at any of the sensors. Do not use abrasive materials, or hard or sharp objects, to clean the sensors. Only use approved vehicle shampoo.

Note: *When an approved tow bar is fitted, park assist adjusts to compensate for the extra length.*

The park assist system is not available when:

- The vehicle's speed is greater than 30 km/h (18 mph).
- Park (**P**) is selected.
- All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) is on.
- Reverse (**R**) is selected.
- Wade sensing is active.
- The suspension height is set to off-road.
- There is a system fault.
- A trailer is connected.

The park assist system may provide inaccurate results if:

- The size or shape of the parking space changes after it was measured.
- There is an irregular kerb alongside the parking space, or the kerb is covered with leaves, snow, etc.
- The vehicle is being used to transport a load that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle.
- The sensors are misaligned due to a minor collision or impact.
- The vehicle had a repair or alteration that was not approved by a retailer/ authorised repairer.
- The vehicle is fitted with non-approved wheels or tyres.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

- The vehicle is fitted with replacement tyres. After the normal running-in period, the system adapts to the replacement tyres.
- One of the parked vehicles has an attachment at a raised height such as a flatbed truck, snow plough, or cherry picker.
- The parking space is located on a corner or bend.
- The sensors are dirty or covered in mud, ice, or snow, etc.
- The weather is foggy, raining, or snowing, etc.
- The road surface is uneven or rutted.
- The vehicle encounters an obstruction that is thin or wedge shaped.
- The vehicle encounters an obstruction that is elevated and/or protruding, such as ledges or tree branches.
- The vehicle encounters an obstruction with corners and sharp edges.
- A non-approved tow bar or trailer hitch is fitted.
- The sensors are in close proximity to hot exhaust gasses from nearby vehicles.
- The sensors have been damaged during vehicle cleaning.

PARK ASSIST TROUBLESHOOTING

The following may be a reason why the park assist system is not searching for a parking space:

- The system may not be activated.
- The vehicle may be travelling above 30 km/h (18 mph).
- The sensors may be covered or partly obscured by dirt, mud, ice, or snow, etc.

The following may be a reason why the park assist system does not offer a certain parking space:

- The sensors may be covered or partly obscured by dirt, mud, ice, or snow, etc.
- The space may not be large enough to accommodate the vehicle.
- There may not be enough space on the opposite side of the vehicle for the front to swing out during the manoeuvre.
- The vehicle may have been driven more than 1.5 m from the row of parked vehicles.
- The vehicle may have been driven within 41 cm to the row of parked vehicles.
- The vehicle may have been driven in Reverse (**R**). Park assist searches for a parking space only when the vehicle is in Drive (**D**).
- The approach angle may not be suitable.

The following may be a reason why the park assist has not positioned the vehicle accurately within the space:

- One or more of the system limitations criteria may have been met. See **266, PARK ASSIST LIMITATIONS**.

REAR CAMERA

The driver is responsible for detecting obstacles and estimating the vehicle's distance from them when manoeuvring the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Parking features

Some overhanging objects or barriers, which could cause damage to the vehicle, may not be detected by the camera.

The camera must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., ice, frost, snow, leaves, mud, or insects. Failure to keep the camera clean may result in miscalculation or false indications. See **331, SENSORS AND CAMERAS**.

Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper that may interfere with the camera.

The rear camera is located above the rear number plate.

When Reverse (**R**) is selected, the touch screen automatically displays a high definition, colour image from the rear of the vehicle. Overlaid on the image are lines to aid with reversing and parking.

Note: *The rear camera display has priority over the parking aids display and many other touch screen features. To cancel the rear camera display, at any time, touch the* ***home*** *icon or the* ***return*** *icon.*



1. **Parking aid graphics** icon: Touch to switch the parking aid graphics on or off.
2. **Volume** icon: Touch to mute the volume of the parking aid warning tones.
3. **Camera** icon: Touch to select a alternative camera view.
4. **Surround camera** icon: Touch for a 360° view, using all cameras.
5. **Tow assist** icon: Touch for trailer setup.
6. Parking guidance broken lines: Indicates the safe working width of the vehicle. The door mirrors are included.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

7. Parking guidance solid line: The projected reversing path, based on the current position of the steering wheel.
8. Parking aid information: Colour graphics indicate detected collision threats.
9. Tailgate access line: Do not reverse beyond this line if access to the tailgate is required.
10. Parking aid plan view: Touch to view the full screen view of the parking aid feature.

The rear camera display discontinues automatically when either of the following apply:

- Drive (**D**) is selected for longer than 5 seconds.
- Drive (**D**) is selected and/or the vehicle's speed is greater than 18 km/h (11 mph).

FORWARD TRAFFIC DETECTION

The forward traffic detection system is a supplement to, and not a replacement for, safe driving, good observation, and use of the door mirrors and rear-view mirror.

The driver is responsible is for detecting obstacles and estimating the vehicle's distance from them when manoeuvring the vehicle.

The cameras must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., ice, frost, snow, leaves, mud, or insects. Failure to keep the camera clean may result in miscalculation or false indications.
Do not attach stickers or objects to the windscreen that may interfere with the camera.

Note: *The quality of the camera views may vary in different lighting conditions.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Parking features



1. **Vehicle warning** icon: The **CAMERA** screen or the **PARKING AID** screen, depending on the current selection, displays a **vehicle warning** icon on the relevant side(s) of the screen to indicate the presence of a moving vehicle. An audible warning also sounds.
2. Parking aid plan view.
3. **Camera** icon.
4. **System disabled warning** icon: The **system disabled warning** icon displays when the system is not active.

The forward traffic detection feature is an enhancement of the surround camera system. The feature alerts the driver with a warning when a potential side impact is imminent when pulling out from a junction or parking space in a forward direction.

When the driver approaches a T-junction, the driver's visibility might be reduced. The forward traffic detection feature provides additional support and warns the driver of the risk of other vehicles approaching. The feature can detect vehicles from either side, up to 64 km/h (40 mph) with a time to collision of 3 seconds. An audible alert is also provided to aid the driver, when a potential risk is detected.

The feature is active from a stationary position to 6 km/h (4 mph). Once the vehicle reaches a speed of 6 km/h (4 mph), the visual and audible alerts will no longer be generated while the camera views remain on the screen.

On approaching a junction the driver must press the **camera icon** (**3**) for the feature to become active. The feature is not autonomous.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

The forward traffic detection system automatically disables if the camera becomes partially or completely obscured. The message **Forward Traffic Detection Camera Sensor Blocked** is displayed in the instrument panel.

Check that there is nothing obscuring the camera's surface. Check that it is clear from ice, frost, snow, mud, and dirt.

If a fault is detected, or the feature is not available, the **system disabled warning** icon (**4**) displays on the touch screen. The message **Forward Traffic Detection System Not Available** is also displayed in the instrument panel.

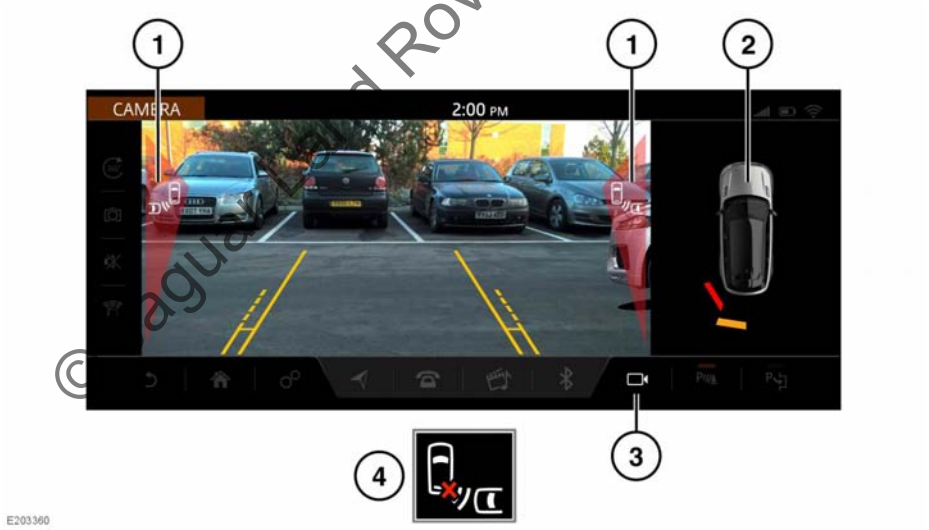
If a fault occurs that is not rectified when the engine is switched off and then on again, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

REVERSE TRAFFIC DETECTION (RTD)

The Reverse Traffic Detection (RTD) system is a supplement to, and not a replacement for, safe driving, good observation, and use of the door mirrors and rear-view mirror.

Note: *RTD automatically disables when park assist is active and when a trailer is connected.*

RTD adds extra functionality to the rear camera. The RTD system warns the driver of any moving vehicle, on either side, that may pose an accident risk during a reversing manoeuvre.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

1. **Vehicle warning** icon: The **CAMERA** screen or the **PARKING AID** screen, depending on the current selection, displays a **vehicle warning** icon on the relevant side(s) of the screen to indicate the presence of a moving vehicle. An audible warning also sounds.
2. Parking aid plan view.
3. **Camera** icon.
4. **System disabled warning** icon: The **system disabled warning** icon displays when the system is not active.

RTD is enabled or disabled via the instrument panel menu. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

To move from the **CAMERA** screen to the **PARKING AID** screen, touch the parking aid plan view on the touch screen.

To move from the **PARKING AID** screen to the **CAMERA** screen, touch the **CAMERA** icon.

The RTD system automatically disables if any of the sensors become partially or completely obscured. The message **Reverse Traffic Sensor Blocked** is displayed in the instrument panel.

Check that there is nothing obscuring the rear bumper's surface. Check that the bumper is clear from ice, frost, snow, mud, and dirt.

If a fault is detected, or the feature is not available, the **system disabled warning** icon (**4**) displays on the touch screen. The message **Reverse Traffic Detection System Not Available** is also displayed in the instrument panel.

Note: *Even if the detected fault affects a radar sensor on only one side of the vehicle, the whole system is disabled. When the fault is temporary, the system operates correctly once the engine is switched off and then on again.*

If a fault occurs that is not rectified when the engine is switched off and then on again, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW

Do not adjust the touch screen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.

Note: *The touch screen displays the list in the order that the calls were recorded. If this information is not available on the connected phone, the list displays as sent from the phone. Some phones may arrange the list in another order.*

Note: *The system removes duplicate entries of the same call type from the same caller. For example, multiple calls from the same caller are reduced to one call.*

The phone system can be operated and viewed via the touch screen or lower touch screen.

Duplicated icons can be operated on the lower touch screen when the phone widget is displayed. Further information on the lower touch screen can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **204, LOWER TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Phone system: Touch screen



1. **Change phone**: Touch to change the phone.
2. **Options**: Touch to access the voicemail and auto-reject options.
3. **Keypad**: Touch to access the keypad dialing mode.
4. **Contacts**: Touch to view the downloaded contacts.
5. **Recents**: Touch to display a list of recently dialed, received, and missed calls. When a call is unanswered or missed, the number is indicated inside a circle on the **Recents** soft key.
6. Feature display: The selected feature is displayed in this area.
7. **Phone** icon: Touch to select the **PHONE** screen. When the **PHONE** screen is selected, the icon changes to an active icon, as illustrated above. Touch the icon to select an alternative paired phone. When a call is in progress, touch the icon to end the call.
8. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select one of the following options to manage the features: **Settings for All Phones**, **Settings for 'name of phone'**, and **Bluetooth Settings**.
9. Scroll bar: If more than five features are available, touch the scroll bar or arrows to move up or down the list. Alternatively, swipe the list in the direction required.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

Phone system: Lower touch screen



E200698

1. **Auto-reject** icon: Touch to access auto-reject options.
2. **Voicemail** icon: Touch to access voicemail options.
3. **Recents** icon: Touch to display a list of recently dialed, received, and missed calls. When a call is unanswered or missed, the number is indicated inside a circle on the **Recents** soft key.

PHONE SAFETY

Switch off the phone in areas with a high explosion risk, e.g., filling stations, fuel storage areas, or chemical factories. Further high explosion risks are found where the air contains fuel vapour, chemicals, or metal dust. The phone could trigger an explosion or cause a fire.

Always store the phone securely. In an accident, loose items can cause injury.

© Jaguar Land

The functioning of cardiac pacemakers or hearing aids may be impaired when the phone is in use. Check with a doctor or the device's manufacturer whether any such devices that the vehicle's occupants are using are sufficiently protected against high-frequency energy.

Even when using the Bluetooth® wireless technology hands-free feature, using the phone while driving is dangerous. The use of a phone diverts the driver's attention from the traffic situation. When using the phone, stop at an appropriate place where other vehicles are not endangered or inconvenienced.

Drivers should talk on the phone only when it is safe to do so and when such use does not distract the driver from the road.

Drivers should never text message while driving. Texting while driving diverts attention from the road and can lead to accidents, which may cause serious injury or death.

The Health Industry Manufacturers' Association recommends that a minimum separation of 15 cm is maintained between a wireless phone antenna and a pacemaker. The recommendation is to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. The recommendations are consistent with the independent research by, and recommendations of, Wireless Technology Research.

PHONE COMPATIBILITY

Please refer to the **OWNERSHIP** section of the website at: **www.landrover.com** for a list of compatible phones.

Note: *The* ***Bluetooth®*** *wireless technology devices listed have been tested for compatibility with Jaguar Land Rover vehicles. Performance varies, based on the phone's software version, battery condition, coverage, and the network provider. Phones are warranted by the phone manufacturer, not by Jaguar Land Rover.*

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE

Note: *The process of pairing and connecting with the vehicle, from the phone, varies depending on the type of phone used.*

Note: *The process of pairing and connecting the phone is the same for both the touch screen and the lower touch screen.*

Pairing and connecting a phone:

1. Switch the ignition on and make sure that the touch screen or lower touch screen is active.
2. When pairing a device for the first time, select **Tap to connect phone** from the **PHONE** screen. The vehicle's **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device is discoverable. See **202, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**. See **204, LOWER TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

3. Using the phone, search for **Bluetooth** devices. On some phones, this is referred to as a new paired device. See the phone's operating instructions for further information. The vehicle's discoverable **Bluetooth** name is the same as the vehicle's name.
4. When the vehicle's name is discovered, follow the on-screen instructions. Select **Yes**, when prompted, to confirm the pairing. Alternatively, some older phones request a PIN to be entered. Either enter the PIN **1234**, or select **Yes**, to confirm that the PIN displayed on the phone matches the vehicle's PIN.
5. If there is a prompt for a **phonebook** or **contacts** download, accept it. See **279, CONTACTS**.

   Note: *Wait 10 seconds after pairing is complete. When prompted, select the* ***Remember This Setting*** *option once the* ***Phonebook*** *or* ***Contacts*** *information has been downloaded.*
6. Once the phone is paired and connected to the system, select the **return** icon or the **PHONE** screen. See **202, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**. See **204, LOWER TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**.

   Note: *Some phones require the* ***Bluetooth*** *device pairing to be set as authorised or trusted, in order to automatically connect. Refer to the phone's operating instructions for further information.*

To select the paired phone's settings, select the **settings** icon from the **PHONE** screen. Select **Phone Settings** from the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. A list of all paired phones is displayed. Touch the paired phone's name.

Paired phones have the option to be used as a phone, a media device, or both. Device types can be selected via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **All Settings**, **Features**, **Bluetooth** and then the **Paired Devices** list to manage any devices.

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO

E203308

https://goo.gl/CEYss2

MANAGING TWO CALLS

Note: *When more than two calls, e.g., a conference call, are active on the phone when connecting to the vehicle's phone system, they are maintained. However, a maximum of two call details are displayed. When more than two calls are in progress when connecting, any calls that are not active, i.e., on hold or incoming, are rejected.*

Two calls can be taken on the same phone. Notification is given when a second call is received. When accepting a second call, the first call is automatically put on hold.

Alternatively, a second call can be dialled from the displayed screen options. From the screen options, select **Add Call** and then **Contacts** to display the list of contacts. Select **Keypad** to enter the number.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

When there are two separate calls, the **hold** icon changes to a **swap** icon. Touch the **swap** icon, or the contact's name or number, to swap between the current call and the call on hold.

Touch the **end call** icon to end the current call and return to the remaining call. Touch and hold the **end call** icon to end both calls.

MERGE CALLS

If two calls are in progress on the same phone, both calls can be merged into one conference call. Select the displayed **Merge** option.

While the calls are merged, touch the **hold** icon or the **mute** icon to mute both calls, or the **end call** icon to end both calls.

Merge cannot be deselected. If one caller ends the call, the remaining call stays active.

PHONE SYSTEM ICONS

Depending on the part of the phone system in use, the following icons display on the touch screen:

Call icon: Touch to send or accept a call.

End call icon: Touch to end or reject a call.

Hold icon: Touch to hold a call. Touch again to return to the call.

Swap icon: Touch to swap between connected calls.

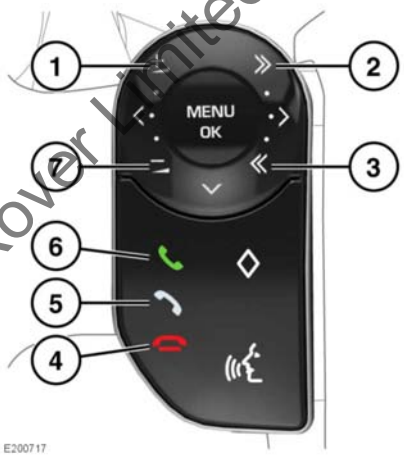
Handset icon: Touch to switch the call to the phone handset.

Mute icon: Touch to mute the microphone and initiate privacy mode. While selected, the caller cannot hear the conversation.

Phone signal strength indicator.

Phone battery level indicator.

STEERING WHEEL PHONE CONTROLS



1. Press to increase the volume. Sweep clockwise to increase the volume during a call.
2. Press to scroll up through the displayed list.
3. Press to scroll down through the displayed list.
4. Press to end a call.
5. Phone not in use.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

6. Press to answer an incoming call. Press again to end a call. Press to access the recent calls list on the touch screen. Press and hold to access the contacts list on the touch screen.
7. Press to decrease the volume. Sweep counter-clockwise to decrease the volume during a call.

Note: *When scrolling through a list, each contact is displayed in the instrument panel.*

Note: *To enable scrolling through a list, button **6** must first be pressed to display the list.*

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO



https://goo.gl/HNKXk6

PHONE CALL VOLUME

While a phone call is active, rotate the media system's volume control to adjust the call volume. Alternatively, adjust via the steering wheel controls. See **278, STEERING WHEEL PHONE CONTROLS**.

If the media system is in use when a phone call is active, the media system source is muted for the duration of the call.

CONTACTS

Contacts stored in the memory of a paired phone can be automatically downloaded to the vehicle's **Contacts** list. The contact list is downloaded each time the phone is connected to the system. See **276, PHONE COMPATIBILITY**.

Certain phones store the contacts in two different areas: the SIM card and the phone's memory. The vehicle's system accesses only those numbers stored in the phone's memory.

To access contacts on touch screen:

1. From the **PHONE** screen, select **Contacts**. See**273, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.
2. Use the scroll bar, or swipe the list, to search the list alphabetically.
3. Identify the required contact from the displayed list. Touch to call. When a contact has more than one number stored, select the required number from the list.

   Note: *To view the entire list, use the scroll bar.*

To access contacts on lower touch screen:

1. From the **PHONE** screen, select the **recents** icon. See **273, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.
2. Use the scroll bar, or swipe the list, to search the list alphabetically.
3. Identify the required contact from the displayed list. Touch to call. If a contact has more than one number stored, select the required number from the list.

   Note: *To view the entire list, use the scroll bar.*

If the phone supports contact cards, contact information can be viewed in the vehicle's **Contacts** list.

The order in which the **Contacts** list is displayed can be changed:

1. Select the **settings** icon from the **PHONE** screen.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

2. Select **Phone Settings** from the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
3. Select the required phone. Select **First Name** or **Last Name** to change the display for the connected phone.

To delete the **Contacts** list:

1. Select the **settings** icon from the **PHONE** screen.
2. Select **Phone Settings** from the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
3. Select **Delete From Car** for the connected phone.

See **273, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.

Once the **Contacts** list is deleted, **Auto Update Contacts** is unavailable for selection until the paired phone's contact list is downloaded again.

Note: *If a contact, or the* ***Contacts*** *list, is deleted, incoming calls display the number but no name.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION

Note: *Some devices require the* ***Bluetooth®*** *wireless technology device pairing feature to be set as authorised or trusted, in order to automatically connect. Refer to the device's operating instructions for further information.*



Bluetooth® is the name for short-range Radio Frequency (RF) technology that allows electronic devices to communicate wirelessly with each other.

Note: *The* ***Bluetooth®*** *word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc and any use of such marks by Jaguar Land Rover Limited is under licence.*

The vehicle's **Bluetooth®** system supports **Bluetooth®** Hands-Free Profile (HFP), Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP), Audio Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP), and Message Access Profile (MAP).

Note: *HFP, A2DP, and AVRCP profiles can be connected independently. A phone can be connected via one profile, while a media device can be connected via the other at the same time.*

Before making use of the vehicle's **Bluetooth®** phone system, the **Bluetooth®** device must be paired and connected to the vehicle's system. The recommended method of connection is via the device to the vehicle. See **276, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE**.

Each time the ignition is switched on, the vehicle's system attempts to connect with the last connected phone or media device.

Phones and media devices have a wide range of audio and echo characteristics. The phone and media devices may take a few seconds for the vehicle's system to adapt and deliver optimum audio performance. To achieve this, it may be necessary to reduce the sound system volume, and also reduce the climate blower speed slightly.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.

Note: *The speed camera alert feature is not available in certain markets.*

Note: *The speed camera alert feature can be enabled or disabled in the* ***NAVIGATION SETTINGS*** *menu. See* ***289, SETTINGS****.*

Note: *Certain features and location-based services utilise the vehicle's current location. Features that are able to utilise mobile data, and the vehicle's location, can be managed in the connectivity and navigation settings.*

Navigation instruction is by map and turn information displayed on the touch screen and in the instrument panel, and can be complemented by voice guidance. The system uses signals from Global Positioning System (GPS) satellites, and information from vehicle sensors and data stored on the hard drive. The vehicle's position is established using this information.

Using this combination of data sources, the vehicle's navigation computer enables the driver to plan and follow a route map to the desired destination.

The touch screen is used to control navigation via menus and map displays. The vehicle's instrument panel can be set up to show navigation instructions and maps.

The requirements of national Road Traffic Regulations always apply.

Observation of traffic signs and local traffic regulations always take priority.

The navigation system serves solely as an aid to navigation. In particular, the navigation system cannot be used as an aid to orientation when visibility is poor.

GPS signals may occasionally be interrupted due to physical barriers, such as roads under raised carriageways and tunnels.

However, direction and speed sensors on the vehicle minimise any adverse effect on the navigation system. Normal operation resumes once the obstruction has been passed.

Under certain conditions, it is possible for the vehicle's position shown on the screen to be incorrect. Incorrect vehicle positioning may happen when:

- Driving on a spiral ramp in a building.
- Driving on or beneath elevated roads.
- Driving between tall buildings.
- Two roads are close and parallel.
- The vehicle is transported to another location.
- The vehicle has been rotated on a turntable.
- The vehicle's battery has been disconnected.

USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

The navigation system is not a substitute for driving safely, with due care and attention. Drivers should not assume that a feature will correct errors in judgement when driving. The driver is responsible for staying alert, driving safely, and being in control of the vehicle at all times, relative to the prevailing conditions. The driver is responsible for determining the safety of the route suggested by the navigation system. The navigation system may not function properly in all circumstances.

Do not adjust the touch screen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.

To access the navigation system, touch one of the navigation soft keys on the touch screen's **HOME** menu. See **202, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**.

Note: *A first time user should set up personal preferences in the settings area. Personal preferences include settings for managing which features can connect to the internet when on the home network or while roaming. The settings are applied whenever navigation is used.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017



When navigation is selected, and the vehicle is stationary, the navigation system displays a map view of the current vehicle position. A side panel containing quick access tiles is also displayed.

Note: *The quick access tiles act as shortcuts, to allow quick access to certain navigation system functionality.*

Note: *The quick access tiles are hidden when the vehicle's speed reaches a predetermined level. The quick access tiles do not appear again until the ignition is switched off and back on again. If required, the options can be accessed via the navigation menus.*

Note: *If the navigation system is started when the vehicle's speed is already above the predetermined level, the quick access tiles do not appear.*

Control the navigation system as follows:

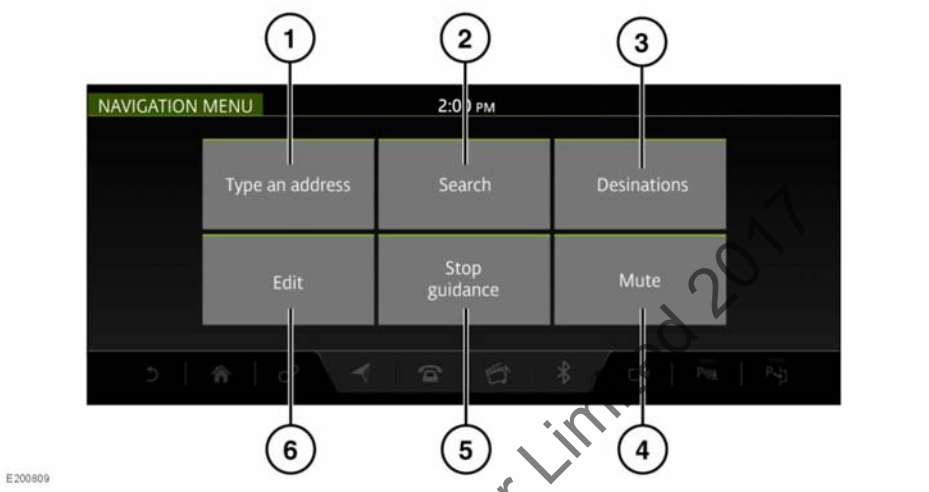
1. Scroll bar: Touch to scroll up or down the tile list.
2. Quick access tile options: Options include:
   - My commute.
   - Fuel search.
   - Recent destinations.
   - Home.
   - Licence information.
3. The current vehicle position and direction.
4. **View options** icon: Touch to select **2D**, **3D**, or **Satellite** map view. When guidance is active, combination views based on **2D**, **3D**, and **Satellite** map view become available, such as traffic, next manoeuvre, and route overview. See **290, VIEW OPTIONS**.

   Note: *Internet connectivity is required for satellite map view.*
5. **Navigation menu** icon: Touch to select the **NAVIGATION MENU**.
6. **Settings** icon: Touch to select **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **Navigation Settings** to view or adjust settings.
7. **Return** icon: Touch to return to a higher menu level.

When the vehicle is in motion and no active route is selected, an assistance map is displayed.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

MAIN MENU



When shown, touch the **navigation menu** icon to access the **NAVIGATION MENU**.

Note: *Some of the options listed are only available when a route has been selected.*

The following options are available:

1. **Type an address**: Provides a choice of options for typing an address. See **285, ADDRESS ENTRY**.
2. **Search**: Type the required text into the search box, or select from the Point Of Interest (POI) categories listed.
3. **Destinations**: Shows saved locations, e.g., home address, saved favourites, and the most recent destinations.

Note: *When signed into an* ***Touch Pro Duo*** *navigation profile and account, destinations can be automatically synchronised between the vehicle, the internet, and the* ***Land Rover InControl Route Planner*** *smartphone app. See* ***294, PROFILES*** *and* ***304, PRO SERVICES****.*

4. **Mute**: Touch to mute the navigation system's voice guidance.
5. **Stop guidance**: Cancels the current route guidance, if a route is selected.
6. **Edit**: Touch to edit the current route. See **289, EDIT ROUTE**.

ADDRESS ENTRY

Note: *If the full address is not known, the search feature may be more effective. See* ***286, SEARCH****.*

When searching, only the relevant keys for the next valid character are highlighted for selection.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Previous entries, or search history, is also displayed below the text entry box.

To enter an address:

1. Touch **Type an address** in the **NAVIGATION MENU** menu screen. See **285, MAIN MENU**).
2. Input the **Country**.
3. Input the **City**, **town**, or **postcode**. Previous entries and narrowed search results are displayed. Select the required entry and touch **Ok**.
4. Input the **Street** name, **Number**, or **Junction**, if applicable. Previous entries and narrowed search results are displayed. Select the required entry and touch **OK**.

   Note: *In some markets, the entry fields may vary from those listed above.*
5. The map displays the entered location, as the address is entered. If the location displayed is correct, touch **Show place details**, to confirm.
6. The navigation system calculates and displays a number of routes. Select **Start** to begin navigation. If the highlighted route is not the desired route, select **Route preferences** to change the route. The navigation system displays the distance and Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA) for each route.
7. Select the chosen route and then touch **Start navigating**.

   Note: *The routes are calculated using the selected route preferences, e.g., avoiding toll roads or ferries. The route preferences can be adjusted while setting the destination, if required.*

Note: *An address can be added as a waypoint after a destination has been selected.*

Note: *Previous entries, or search results as they are narrowed, are displayed on the touch screen, behind the keyboard. If required, hide the keyboard for better access.*

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO



https://goo.gl/9NOxXM

SEARCH

Note: *If the full address is known, the address entry feature may be more effective. See **285, ADDRESS ENTRY**.*

Search can be used to locate an address or a Point Of Interest (POI).

To search for an address:

1. Touch **Search** in the **NAVIGATION MENU**. See **285, MAIN MENU**.
2. If a route is already active, the following list of search areas are available from the drop-down menu:
   - **Along the route**.
   - **Most relevant**.
   - Near the waypoint **1**, **2**, or **3**, etc.

     Note: *The selected route must include one or more waypoints for this option to be available.*
   - **Near your destination**.
3. Input the search choice into the text box.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Touch the **hide keyboard** icon to view the search results. Touch the text box to continue typing.

4. Select the search result from the list provided.
5. Touch **Start** to begin navigation.

   Note: *The routes are calculated using the selected route preferences, e.g., avoiding toll roads or ferries. The route preferences can be adjusted while setting the destination, if required.*



Hide keyboard icon.

To search for a POI:

1. From the **NAVIGATION MENU**, touch **Search**.
2. If a route is already active, the following list of search areas are available from the drop-down menu:
   - **Along the route**.
   - **Most relevant**.
   - Near the waypoint **1**, **2**, or **3**, etc.

     Note: *The selected route must include one or more waypoints for this option to be available.*
   - **Near your destination**.
3. Select a search category from the list:**Petrol Station**, **Eat & Drink**, **Parking Facility**, **ATM/Bank/ Exchange**.

   Note: *Petrol stations can be sorted by the price of their fuel. See* ***293, FUEL PRICES SERVICE****.*
4. Select the search result from the list provided.

The following POI details and options may also be available:

- POI phone number: Touch to view the POIs phone number and to phone the POI, if required.
- Add to favourites: Touch to add the selected POI to favourites.
- Nearest car park: Touch to search for nearby car parks, if the selected destination or waypoint is not a car park.
- Extra information, e.g., postal address, opening times, reviews, photographic view of the POI.

Note: *A POI or address can be added as a waypoint after a destination has been selected.*

Note: *If the vehicle is connected to the internet, the search function can be performed using cloud-based information. The feature can be enabled and disabled in the* ***NAVIGATION SETTINGS*** *menu. See* ***289, SETTINGS****.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

MAP SPLIT SCREEN



When a route has been selected, the navigation system displays a guidance map.

1. Active route: Next direction display.
2. The current vehicle position and direction.
3. **View options** icon: Press to select **2D**, **3D**, **North Facing** or **Satellite** map view.

   Note: *Internet connectivity is required for satellite map view.*
4. Information bar: Displays information including time, distance, and ETA.
5. Current location.
6. **Navigation menu** icon: Touch to access the **NAVIGATION MENU**.
7. **Settings** icon: Touch to select **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **Navigation Settings** to view or adjust settings. See **289, SETTINGS**.
8. **Return** icon: Touch to return to a higher menu level.
9. Selected extra view option: Route overview, next manoeuvre, compass, or traffic.

MAP AUTO ZOOM

When auto-zoom is enabled, the map automatically zooms in when the vehicle is travelling at slow speeds and zooms out when travelling at higher speeds.

Auto-zoom can be enabled and disabled in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **289, SETTINGS**.

REAR SEAT NAVIGATION

The navigation system can be viewed from the rear screens and opearted via the rear screen's remote.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited

Note: *The navigation features available on the rear screens are different from the front touch screens.*

Rear seat passengers can monitor the selected route, e.g., ETA, distance to destination, etc. and view or suggest new locations.

To view the navigation map on a rear screen, select the **home** button on the remote control. Use the cursor controls to select **Navigation**. Press the **OK** button to confirm.

To view the navigation menu, press the **OK** button again. Use the cursor controls to select **Search**, **Browse map**, or **Settings**.

Select **Search**, to display a list of options for selecting a new location. After selecting a new location, select **Send To Driver**. The driver receives a prompt on the front touch screen to accept or refuse the selection. See **243, REAR SEAT REMOTE CONTROL** and **245, REAR SEAT SCREENS OVERVIEW**.

SETTINGS

To view the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu, select the **settings** icon, then select **Navigation settings** from the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. See **289, SETTINGS**.

The following options are available:

- **Profile**:
  - **Edit Profile** - Edit or set up profile.
- **Map views**:
  - **Map features** - Enable or disable from a list of available features.
  - **Auto-zoom** - Enable or disable auto-zoom. See **288, MAP AUTO ZOOM**.
- **Navigation**:
  - **Route options** - Select to avoid certain road features.
  - **Alerts** - Enable or disable from a list of alert categories. See **290, ALERTS**.
- **Advanced**:
  - **Keyboard layouts** - Select extra keyboard layouts.
  - **Manage profile data** - Clear the search history or delete all profile data.
- **About**:
  - **App details** - View details of the installed navigation system.
  - **Installed maps** - View the details of the maps currently loaded to the vehicle's navigation system.

NAVIGATION SYSTEM VOLUME

To adjust the volume of the navigation voice guidance, rotate the media system's volume control while spoken guidance is given. See **213, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

Note: *The volume of the safety camera alert feature is linked to voice guidance volume.*

EDIT ROUTE

A waypoint can be added or deleted, a route rearranged, or a round trip created for a selected route.

Note: *Waypoints can also be added from **Destinations**, **Type an address**, or **Search** in the **NAVIGATION MENU**, or by selecting a point on the map.*

Touch **Edit** in the **NAVIGATION MENU**. See **285, MAIN MENU**.

The following options can be used:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

- Add waypoint: Touch to add a waypoint to the current route.
- Remove waypoint: Touch the **bin** icon to remove the waypoint from the current route.
- Change the order of the waypoints: Touch the up and down arrows to re-order the waypoints.
- Return Journey: Touch to make a selected destination into a round trip.

  Note: *The return journey does not include any of the selected waypoints. If waypoints are required, they must be added in the normal manner.*



Bin icon.

VIEW OPTIONS

Touch the **view options** icon on the map to view the **VIEW OPTIONS** screen. See **282, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.

The navigation map and guidance views can be adjusted as follows:

- **2D**: Flat two-dimensional view.
- **3D**: Three-dimensional perspective view.
- **Satellite**: Birds-eye view of the surroundings.

  Note: *Satellite view requires an internet connection.*
- **Manoeuvres**: Shows a detailed view of the next junction or turn.
- **Full route**: View of the full route.
- **Compass**: Shows a digital compass, with the vehicle's heading shown in degrees.
- **Route remaining**: View of the remaining route.

ALERTS

Alerts can be selected from the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **289, SETTINGS**.

The following options are available:

- **Show manoeuvre details**: A list of the next required manoeuvres.
- **Junction view**: Active on multi-lane carriageways, when approaching a junction. Junction view shows the lane information for the next junction.
- **Safety camera**: Notification of safety cameras.
- **Low fuel**: Available online and offline. Petrol stations are listed by price. The preferred station name and type of fuel can be selected.

FAVOURITES

When detailed information is displayed about an address or place, tap the **add favourite** icon and the place is added to the list of favourites.

Displayed information that is already a favourite displays the **edit favourite** icon. Touch the **edit favourite** icon to view information about the favourite location and have the option to change the icon and name, or delete it from the list of favourites.

If no route is selected, select the required favourite to set it as a destination. If a route is selected, select the required favourite to add it as a waypoint.

Note: *When signed into a* ***Touch Pro Duo*** *navigation profile and account, favourites can be automatically synchronised between the vehicle, the internet, and the* ***Land Rover InControl Route Planner*** *smartphone app.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

See **294, PROFILES** and **304, PRO SERVICES**.



Add favourite icon.



Edit favourite icon.

MAP UPDATES

The USB drive must not be removed, or the ignition switched off, before the update is complete. The map update is cancelled and potentially leaves the system without any available map data.

Note: *Due to the map data file size, it is recommended that a USB 3.0 memory device is used to update the map data.*

Note: *The vehicle must be stationary to enable the map update to start. Once the update process has started, the vehicle may be driven.*

Note: *The navigation system cannot be interacted with until the map update is complete. If a route was active before the map update started, the navigation guidance is limited to voice guidance only.*

The map data in the navigation system can be updated by downloading the updated map data to a USB memory device.

Insert the USB drive into the USB socket and follow the on-screen instructions within the navigation system to update the maps.

Note: *Only the USB sockets in the front cubby box can be used for map updates. See **103, STORAGE COMPARTMENTS**.*

Information on the installed maps is available in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **289, SETTINGS**.

For further information on navigation system updates, please visit: **www.landrover.com/navigation** or contact a Land Rover retailer.

FUEL FINDER

When the fuel level falls below a predetermined level, an alert is triggered and the navigation system searches for nearby fuel stations.

Preferred fuel stations can be stored in the **Alerts** menu. See **290, ALERTS**.

The alert can be enable and disabled in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **289, SETTINGS**.

INSTRUMENT PANEL VIEW

The instrument panel can be set up to show a view of the navigation map. In this view, essential information, e.g., vehicle speed, fuel level, range, etc. is displayed as an information bar in the instrument panel.

The instrument panel view, press the **MENU** button located on the left steering wheel control. Select **Display** from the instrument panel. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

CONNECTED NAVIGATION

A number of features are available that utilise **Pro Services**. See **304, PRO SERVICES**.

Note: *Unless stated otherwise, the features listed require an internet connection to function.*

Pro Services features include:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

- **My Commute**. See **292, MY COMMUTE**.
- **Real time traffic flow**. See **292, REAL TIME TRAFFIC FLOW**.
- **Fuel price service**. See **293, FUEL PRICES SERVICE**.
- **Approach mode**. See **293, APPROACH MODE**.

  Note: *This feature does not need an internet connection to function. However, functionality may be enhanced with an internet connection.*
- **Online search**. See **293, ONLINE SEARCH**.
- **Satellite views**. See **293, SATELLITE VIEWS**.
- **Online routing**. See **293, ONLINE ROUTING**.
- **Cloud sync**. See **294, PROFILES**.
- **Door to door routing**. See **294, DOOR TO DOOR ROUTING**.
- **Sharing**. See **294, SHARING**.

Note: *User preferences are available in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. The settings for managing which features can connect to the internet when on the home network or while roaming can also be applied. See **289, SETTINGS**.*

MY COMMUTE

A commute is a journey with a common start point, a common end point, and at a regular time of day. When **My Commute** is enabled, the navigation system is designed to recognise a commute.

The following conditions must be met for the commute to be automatically learned:

- The start point must be consistent.
- The start time must be within one hour of the current time.
- The end point must be consistent.

All of the alternative routes that you have used on the same commute are grouped and stored.

Commute mode shows a highlighted route on the map and uses the learned routes, combined with live traffic information, to calculate the fastest of the previously used routes.

If more than one commute is available, the alternative commutes are available for selection.

Note: *Commute mode shows a map on the touch screen, but does not give voice guidance.*

Note: ***My Commute*** *can be enabled and disabled in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **289, SETTINGS**.*

REAL TIME TRAFFIC FLOW

Real time traffic provides significantly greater amounts of detail, across a far greater road coverage than conventional broadcast-based traffic information systems. Real time traffic makes it easier to plan routes either manually or automatically. The system utilises live feeds and historical traffic patterns to continuously update traffic information, and enhance the calculation of the selected route.

Note: *Historical and internet traffic information are not available in all markets.*

Roads are displayed as colour coded, in order of traffic flow. The colour codes are:

- Red: Very heavy or stationary traffic.
- Yellow: Heavy traffic.
- Green: Free-flowing traffic.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

- Black: Closed road.

Real time traffic can be displayed with a route selected or with no route selected.

A traffic-enabled route can be selected. A traffic-enabled route displays improved and updated routes to the destination, avoiding traffic congestion and delays. An option can also be enabled to possibly find a route to the destination, avoiding an alerted incident or traffic flow issues.

Note: *A live internet connection is required to receive updated traffic information during the journey.*

FUEL PRICES SERVICE

When **Petrol station** is selected during a POI search, the nearby petrol stations can be sorted according to the price of their fuel. Fuel prices are updated to the vehicle's database from the internet.

Note: *Fuel pricing information may not be updated in real time and cannot be guaranteed to be accurate.*

Note: *In some markets, a relative price index is shown instead of live fuel prices.*

APPROACH MODE

When the vehicle approaches a selected waypoint or destination, information that may be of use to the driver is displayed. If the vehicle is connected to the internet, a photographic view of the street is shown, where available.

Note: *The image can be rotated. Sswipe on the image to view a 360° view of the surrounding area.*

If the destination or waypoint is not a car park, and parking is available nearby, a **parking** icon displays on the touch screen.

Touch the **parking** icon to show nearby parking and to update the destination to include the selected parking. The original destination remains active for selection on the smartphone app, to enable guidance from the vehicle to the destination.

ONLINE SEARCH

The online search feature provides information, via the internet, for real-time information on Points Of Interest (POIs). An online search can provide significantly more information on POIs than the database on the vehicle.

SAFETY CAMERAS

The **Safety camera** feature provides the location of potential accident black spots or areas that have been identified as a potential danger by the presence of safety cameras.

Note: *Safety camera information is not available in all countries.*

SATELLITE VIEWS

The navigation system uses a satellite view of the local area, overlaid with the navigation system graphics.

Note: *If the satellite view feature is used continuously, it may consume large amounts of mobile data. Check the data allowance is appropriately configured for providing high-data services.*

ONLINE ROUTING

The selected route is calculated in the cloud and applies any settings that have been selected.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Online routing takes into account the current traffic conditions and the traffic patterns for the relevant time of day, on all routes.

DOOR TO DOOR ROUTING

The **Land Rover InControl Route Planner** smartphone app allows a route to be planned in its entirety from one location to another. The **Land Rover InControl Route Planner** smartphone app uses a combination of the phone and the vehicle's navigation system.

The app provides guidance via the phone:

- From the current location to the vehicle, e.g., public transport information.
- From the vehicle to the end destination.

Guidance along the driven section of the route is given via the vehicle's navigation system.

Note: *Using the* ***Land Rover InControl Route Planner*** *smartphone app does not mandate that the vehicle is used. For example, if the user is close to the location and the vehicle is far away, then the application may suggest an alternative form of transport.*

ROUTE PLANNING WEB PORTAL

The route planning web portal enables a user to search, plan routes and destinations, and manage places, e.g., Points Of Interest (POI), favourites, etc., using a computer. Destinations, places, and routes can be synchronised with the **Land Rover InControl Route Planner** smartphone app and the vehicle's navigation system.

For further information on the route planning web portal, please visit: **www.landrover.com/navigation**, or contact a Land Rover retailer/authorised repairer.

SHARING

Send a message, via SMS or email, to inform others of the journey details. Details include the vehicle's current location, destination and ETA. The message is automatically updated if the journey time is extended.

To share the ETA, touch the ETA banner on the touch screen information bar and follow the on-screen instructions. See **288, MAP SPLIT SCREEN**.

PROFILES

A **Touch Pro Duo** navigation profile enables personalised settings and information to be stored and easily switched for each driver.

Touch Pro Duo navigation profiles can be created by signing up for an **Touch Pro Duo** navigation account within the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. **Touch Pro Duo** navigation profile can also be edited, switched, and reset. See **289, SETTINGS**.

To sign up for an **Touch Pro Duo** navigation account, the following needs to be supplied:

- Name.
- Date of birth.
- Country.
- A valid email address.
- Password.

Note: *Internet connection to the vehicle is required to sign up for an account.*

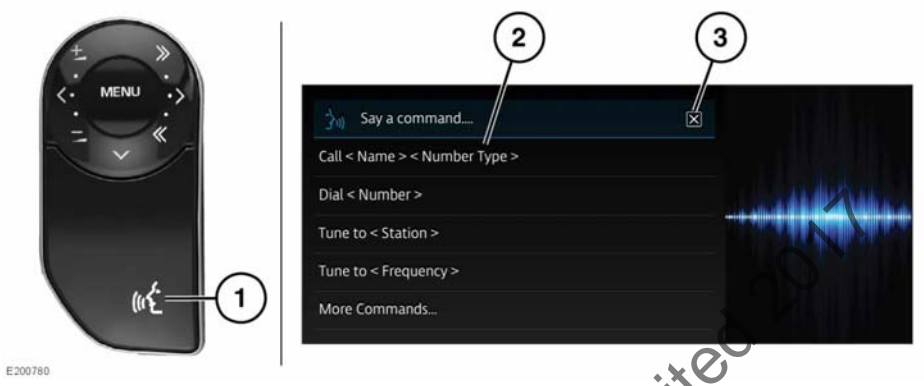
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

The **Touch Pro Duo** navigation profile information on the navigation system can be synchronised with the information stored on other devices via the cloud. Cloud synchronisation can be set up in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu to be synchronised automatically or manually. See **289, SETTINGS**.

Note: *If a* ***Touch Pro Duo*** *navigation profile is deleted, all of the profile information is unretrievable, with the exception of favourites, which are also stored in the cloud.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

USING VOICE CONTROL



In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.

1. **Voice** button: Press briefly to start a voice session. Press and hold to cancel a voice session.
   A voice session cancels, if:
   - a higher priority activity occurs.
   - a warning is displayed on the touch screen.
   - there is no user input for a sustained length of time.
2. Command list: Displayed on the touch screen, providing feedback and some example commands at each stage of the voice session. Say or select an available command.
   The related screen is shown, when the spoken instructions are understood. The voice session can then continue either manually or by voice. The command bar, at the top of the screen, shows available commands at each stage of the conversation.
3. Touch to cancel the current voice session and continue manually.

The following commands can be spoken at any time to assist in the operation of Voice control:

- Help
- Cancel
- Go back
- Replay.

Note: *The voice system has been designed to recognise a number of languages. However, it cannot be guaranteed that the system is compatible with every accent group within those languages.*

VOICE TUTORIAL

To listen to a tutorial detailing the operation of the voice system:

1. Briefly press the **voice** button to start a voice session.
2. Wait for the tone to sound, then say voice tutorial.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Alternatively, from the **HOME** screen, select the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen followed by **Voice** and then **Tutorial**. See **297, VOICE SETTINGS**.

The voice tutorial can be cancelled at any time. Cancel via the displayed pop-up, or press and hold the **voice** button.

Alternatively, briefly press the **voice** button and say **cancel**.

VOICETAGS

Voicetags enable the user to personalise the voice system. Meaning a single name can be used to call up a phone number, radio station, or television channel.

To add a voicetag:

1. Briefly press the **voice** button to start a voice session.
2. Wait for the tone to sound and say **store phone voicetag**, **store radio voicetag** or **store TV voicetag**.
3. For radio and television, the user must be listening to the station or channel they wish to create a voicetag for.

Alternatively, voicetags can be managed via the touch screen as follows:

1. From the **HOME** screen, select **EXTRA FEATURES**.
2. Select **Voice** and then **Voicetags**.
3. Select the system that the voicetag is to activate: **Phone**, **Radio** or **Television**.

Follow the on-screen and audible instructions. See **297, VOICE SETTINGS**.

VOICE SETTINGS

The following features can be selected from the **Voice** option. See **209, EXTRA FEATURES**.

- **Commands**: View the categories and the example voice commands. Select the **>** icon to view alternative examples of saying the same command.
- **Voicetags**: View the categories. Select a category to manage the voicetags for the chosen system. See **209, EXTRA FEATURES**.
- **Tutorial**: Select for detailed instructions. Cancel via the displayed pop-up, or by pressing and holding the **voice** button. Alternatively, briefly press the **voice** button and say **cancel**. See **296, VOICE TUTORIAL**.

Select **Voice settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. The following settings are displayed:

- **Voice Command Confirmation**: Select **On** or **Off**.
- **Voice Feedback**: Select **On** or **Off**.

Alternatively:

- Briefly press the **voice** button and say **voice confirmation on** or **voice confirmation off**.
- Briefly press the **voice** button and say **voice feedback on** or **voice feedback off**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

INCONTROL OVERVIEW

Note: *Several InControl features require an internet connection. The owner is responsible for providing a data-enabled micro SIM card.*

Note: *An InControl account can be created by the retailer/authorised repairer for the owner of the vehicle. Alternatively, the owner can create an InControl account.*

Note: *The owner is responsible for removing the vehicle from the InControl account when ownership of the vehicle is transferred.*

InControl uses smartphone and in-vehicle mobile technology to remotely connect the vehicle to a number of services and convenience features.

Note: *For further information on InControl, please refer to the Land Rover website at:* ***www.landrover.com***.

Before using InControl, please complete the set-up of **Touch Pro Duo**. See **298, TOUCH PRO DUO SETUP**.

InControl features such as **Remote** and **Secure Tracker**, require an InControl account. To register, connect, and activate an InControl account, please refer to the My Land Rover InControl website at: **https://incontrol.landrover.com**. Please follow the on-screen instructions.

InControl features

- **Remote:**
  - Vehicle Status.
  - Beep & Flash.
  - Vehicle Security.
  - Remote Climate.
  - Journeys.
  - Assistance.
  - Settings.
  - Wake Up Timer.
  - SOS Emergency Call.
  - ERA GLONASS test procedure.
  - Optimised Roadside Assistance.
- **Connect Pro:**
  - Pro Services.
  - Wi-Fi Hotspot.
- **InControl Apps**
- **Secure Tracker:**
  - Stolen Vehicle Tracking.

Note: *The availability and functionality of* ***Secure Tracker*** *depends on the market in which the vehicle is used.*

TOUCH PRO DUO SETUP

Touch Pro Duo is an advanced multimedia system that consists of a sound system, navigation system, and an interactive upper and lower touch screen.

In order to operate **Touch Pro Duo**, the following steps must be completed:

Step 1: Fitting a SIM card

Note: *The responsibility is the owner's to provide a suitable data-enabled micro SIM card. Please contact a network provider if a replacement SIM card is required.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

If a data-enabled micro SIM card requires fitting, please refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **311, FITTING A SIM CARD**.

Step 2: Enable mobile data connectivity

Note: *For all SIM cards, please check and enable mobile data connectivity, if required.*

The vehicle must be able to connect to the internet. To enable mobile data, please refer to relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **311, MOBILE DATA CONNECTIVITY**.

Step 3: Create a Touch Pro Duo navigation profile

Note: *More than one* ***Touch Pro Duo*** *navigation profile can be created. The* ***Touch Pro Duo*** *navigation profile allows each user to select favourite destinations, previous destinations, and navigation settings.*

On first use of **Touch Pro Duo**, the user is prompted to create and name a profile.

When prompted, scroll to the bottom of the page, and select **Turn On All** to enable all connected navigation features.

Alternatively, select **Turn On** to enable individual connected navigation features.

To disable connected navigation features, select **Cancel**.

Step 4: Create a Touch Pro Duo navigation account

Note: *A* ***Touch Pro Duo*** *navigation account is required to use certain connected navigation features.*

For vehicles fitted with **Pro Services**, once a **Touch Pro Duo** navigation profile has been created, the user will have to create a **Touch Pro Duo** navigation account.

In the main navigation screen, select **Sign In**.

Follow the on-screen instructions to register a new account.

REMOTE

Note: ***Remote*** *features require an InControl account. To register, connect, and activate an InControl account to a vehicle, if it has not already been activated, please refer to the My Land Rover InControl website at:* ***https://incontrol.landrover.com****. Please follow the on-screen instructions.*

Note: *When an InControl account is set-up, the user of the account creates a PIN. The PIN is required for certain* ***Remote*** *features.*

Note: *The availability and functionality of* ***Remote*** *depends on the specification of the vehicle and the market in which the vehicle is used.*

Note: *Not all smartphones are compatible. The* ***Land Rover InControl Remote*** *smartphone app is compatible with an iPhone™ running iOS 7 and above, and Android phones running v4.0 and above.*

Note: *Apple and iPhone™ are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.*

Note: *Google Play Store is a registered trademark of Google Inc. The availability and functionality of the Remote features depends on the specification of the vehicle and the market in which the vehicle is used.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Before using **Remote** features, the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app must be downloaded to the phone. The app can be downloaded from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.

Downloading and installing:

1. Search for the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.
2. From the list of results, select **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app and install it.
3. When the installation is complete, open the launcher and select the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app icon.
4. Follow the app's Quick Start Guide (QSG) instructions to complete the set-up.

The **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app communicates with the vehicle remotely, to check the vehicle's fuel level and estimated range available. Journey logs can be viewed, and the status of the doors and windows checked. The last parked position of the vehicle can be confirmed, along with directions back to that position.

Note: *Features of the* ***Land Rover Incontrol Remote*** *smartphone app can be viewed using the* ***Demo Mode*** *function. The features are also explained in the* ***Land Rover Incontrol Remote*** *smartphone app tour on the settings page.*

Home Screen

The home screen of the **Land Rover Incontrol Remote** smartphone app shows vehicle information, including fuel level, range, and odometer value. A map showing the user's location as well as the vehicle's parked location is located at the bottom of the app's home screen.

For walking directions to the vehicle, touch the **Directions to vehicle** tab located underneath the map on the app's home screen. Vehicle alerts will be presented on the bottom of the screen.

Vehicle Status

The **Vehicle Status** screen displays the latest status of vehicle alerts such as a low windscreen washer fluid alert. Each status gives an indication of the health of each alert, as well as offering advice on how to resolve any alerts.

Beep & Flash

Beep & Flash locates the vehicle by flashing the vehicle's lights and sounding the horn.

Note: *The driver is responsible for complying with all regulations in force for that country, regarding the use of vehicle horns.*

Vehicle Security

The **Vehicle Security** screen displays the open and closed status of all the doors and windows, and the current alarm setting. The **Vehicle Security** screen also displays the locked and unlocked status of the vehicle.

Vehicle Security allows the user to lock and unlock the vehicle remotely. If either lock or unlock cannot be performed, the phone screen displays an error message. For added security, this function requires a PIN code to be entered.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

When the vehicle is locked remotely, it is secured to the maximum possible level allowed in the market in which the vehicle was intended for original sale.

Note: *When any window(s) is in an open position, the vehicle does not lock remotely. In some markets, remote closing of windows is not permitted.*

When the vehicle is unlocked remotely, it relocks after 45 seconds if no door or aperture is opened. When an alarm alert is received, the vehicle's alarm can be reset from the user's current position.

Note: *Regardless of which screen is currently displayed, if the vehicle's alarm is sounding, a pop-up screen is displayed with an option to reset the alarm. The alarm may also be reset via the* ***Vehicle Security*** *screen.*

Note: *The driver is responsible for knowing the location of the vehicle and for making sure that the vehicle is secured.*

Remote Climate

Remote Climate allows the engine of an automatic transmission vehicle to be started remotely, and to run for up to 30 minutes. The **Remote Climate** feature provides a comfortable temperature inside the cabin in advance of the driver entering the vehicle. Press the **Engine START** soft key on the **Remote Climate** page and enter a PIN. A target temperature can be set.

Remote Climate does not function if any of the following conditions exist:

- The vehicle's fuel level is low.
- The vehicle's battery charge level is low.
- The vehicle is not locked.
- A window, door, bonnet, or the tailgate is open.
- The engine has been manually started.
- A system error occurs with a required vehicle system.
- A theft has been reported to the stolen vehicle monitoring centre.
- The vehicle's alarm is sounding.
- A crash event has been detected.
- The hazard warning lights are switched on.
- The automatic transmission is not in Park (**P**).
- The brake pedal is pressed.

Note: *Some markets may prohibit the use of remote engine starting. The driver is responsible for knowing if this function can legally be used.*

Note: ***Remote Climate*** *is also available for vehicles fitted with a timed climate system. When the vehicle specification does not support remote engine starting, the timed climate system may be used to support cabin pre-conditioning. The condition also applies if the vehicle originated in a market with legal restrictions on remote engine starting.*

Journeys

The **Journeys** screen displays the most recently completed journeys.

Note: *The* ***Journeys*** *feature can be enabled or disabled via the* ***settings*** *screen within the* ***Land Rover InControl Remote*** *smartphone app.*

Note: *Stored journeys can be viewed, deleted, or downloaded as a .csv file to assist with business expenses.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Assistance

The **Assistance** screen displays the vehicle's VIN and registration number. Direct calls can be made to the optimised roadside assistance call centre for breakdown assistance. In the event of a vehicle theft, direct calls can be made to the stolen vehicle tracking call centre, if **Secure Tracker** is fitted.

Settings

The **Settings** screen allows the vehicle's security status and the journey recording to be switched on or off. **Settings** also allows access to the user's InControl account.

Wake Up Timer

The **Remote** features enter a low power mode 96 hours after the last engine stop. The low power mode action conserves vehicle battery life.

When the vehicle is parked for an extended period, e.g., when on vacation or on a business journey, the user can operate the **Wake Up Timer** feature. The feature wakes up the **Remote** features on a selected date.

Note: *Any date within a 30 day period can be chosen.*

Once **Wake Up Timer** is set, the **Remote** features enter the low power mode after 60 hours. Battery power is then reserved for the wake up.

Note: *The **Wake Up Timer** feature cannot be set once the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app has shut down.*

SOS Emergency Call

There are two states of SOS emergency call: Automatic and manual operation.

In a crash situation, where the airbags have deployed, an automatic emergency call is made to the emergency services. In a non-crash situation, when emergency assistance is required, the emergency call button can be used manually.

In both states, the button flashes yellow until the emergency services answer the call, at which point the flashing stops.

The vehicle's location, owner details, and problem is automatically taken. The appropriate emergency services are despatched to the vehicle's location. Contact with the emergency services agent can be made at any time, by pressing the SOS emergency call button.



The SOS emergency call button is located in the overhead console, on the right-side. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

Press and release the button's cover to reveal the button. The button is illuminated by a red LED. Press the button for 2 seconds to make a direct call to the emergency services.

After use, push the button's cover back into place.

Note: *When the vehicle is travelling in a different country, the SOS emergency call still connects. However, the vehicle's location and the vehicle's details may not be automatically sent to the local provider.*

There are two back-up batteries that maintain full system operation in the event that the vehicle's battery is disconnected or disabled. The batteries are guaranteed for 3 years. If the batteries require replacement, **SOS Limited** is displayed in the instrument panel. Consult a retailer/ authorised repairer for replacement batteries.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

If a fault is detected with the SOS emergency call system, **SOS Limited** is displayed in the instrument panel. If this occurs, the vehicle can still be driven, but consult a retailer/authorised repairer at the earliest opportunity.

Emergency Response in case of Accident (ERA GLONASS) test procedure

Note: *Only applicable to Russia, Belarus, and Kazakhstan.*



ERA GLONASS is an emergency response system that in the event of a traffic accident, the terminal will automatically collect data on its exact location, time, and severity. The terminal transmits the data with a high-priority alert to an ERA-GLONASS operator. Once verified, this information is passed on to the emergency response services. The vehicle's driver and passengers can also contact an ERA-GLONASS operator manually.

The test procedure determines if the system is working correctly.

Make sure that the following conditions are met before starting the procedure:

1. The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
2. The vehicle is stationary for a least 1 minute.
3. The ignition is switched on or the engine is running.
4. An emergency response call is not in progress.
5. Make sure that network reception is good.



Press the assistance call button for at least 3 seconds, but for less than 10 seconds.



After pressing the assistance call button for 3 seconds, also press the emergency call button for at least 3 seconds.

The call button's LEDs flash amber until the test procedure ends. A call is made automatically to determine the current system status. If the system is faulty, **SOS System Not Available** is displayed in the instrument panel.

If all of the preparation conditions are met, and **SOS System Not Available** is displayed, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.

Note: ***SOS System Not Available*** *message is also displayed if there is no network reception. Move the vehicle to an area of good reception and retest.*

The test procedure ends, after 5 minutes, if the ignition is switched off, or if the vehicle is driven more than 300 m.

Note: *When the test procedure is repeated, make sure there is a time delay of at least 5 minutes before retesting.*

Optimised Roadside Assistance



The optimised roadside assistance call button is located in the overhead console, on the left-side. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

In the event of a breakdown, press and release the button's cover to reveal the button. The button is illuminated by a white LED. Press the button for 2 seconds to make a direct call to the optimised roadside assistance call centre. The button flashes until the optimised roadside assistance call centre answers the call, at which point the LED changes to yellow. The vehicle's details and current location are automatically relayed on to the call centre.

The optimised roadside assistance call sends roadside assistance to the vehicle's location. The agent calls back to confirm the ETA. When the light flashes, push the button to answer the call.

After use, push the button's cover back into place.

PRO SERVICES

In the interests of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.

Pro Services requires a suitable, data-enabled micro SIM to be fitted to the vehicle. See **298, TOUCH PRO DUO SETUP**.

A selection of **Pro Services** features are available for use with the navigation system. To access certain features, a **Touch Pro Duo** navigation profile and account is required. See **298, TOUCH PRO DUO SETUP**.

Connected Navigation

Available features:

- **My Commute**: **My Commute** is a feature designed for journeys with a common start point, a common end point, and at a regular time of day. When **My Commute** is enabled, the navigation system is designed to recognise a commute.
- **Real Time Traffic Flow**: Uses live traffic data feeds, allowing for better traffic information, planning, and rerouting for the user to complete the journey more efficiently.
- **Door To Door Routing** via the **Land Rover InControl Route Planner** smartphone app. The **Land Rover InControl Route Planner** smartphone app allows the user to navigate from door to door. Set the required destination using the **Land Rover InControl Route Planner** smartphone app and the user will be directed to the car. the **Touch Pro Duo** navigation profile will take over navigation from the **Land Rover InControl Route Planner** smartphone app. Once parked, navigation is then handed back to the **Land Rover InControl Route Planner** smartphone app, which provides any final public transport and pedestrian directions to the final destination.
- **Cloud Sync**: All routes are automatically synchronised with the vehicle's navigation system, **Land Rover InControl Route Planner** smartphone app and the Route Planner website. See **282, THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.

  Note: *A* ***Touch Pro Duo*** *navigation profile is required to use the* ***Door to Door Routing*** *and* ***Cloud Sync*** *features.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

- **Online Search**: Allows the user to search for places of interest and navigates directly to the destination. Also delivers information, images, and reviews of searched Points Of Interests (POI).
- **Satellite View**: Provides an overhead view of the vehicle surroundings.

  Note: *The availability of the* ***Satellite View*** *feature, depends on the market in which the vehicle is being used.*

  Note: *If the* ***Satellite View*** *feature is used continuously, it may consume large amounts of mobile data. Check the data allowance is appropriately configured for providing high data services.*
- **Street Level Imagery**: Provides a 360° panoramic street view on selected locations only.
- **Online Routing**: Monitors live traffic conditions and traffic patterns for time of day.

  Note: ***Online Routing*** *can be used in conjunction with* ***My Commute****.*
- **Sharing**: Shares the user's movements and Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA) with friends and family. If the user is running later than expected **Touch Pro Duo** navigation profile can automatically keep friends and family informed by sending updates on the user's behalf via SMS or email.

  Note: *Contacts to be set-up within the* ***Touch Pro Duo*** *navigation profile.*
- **Parking Service**: As the user approaches a destination, **Connect Pro** can show the user where parking is available. Simply tap on the preferred car park and the navigation system updates to direct the user to it.

  Note: *The availability of the* ***Parking Service****, depends on the market in which the vehicle is being used.*
- **Fuel Price Service**: Locates fuel filling stations and compares fuel prices.

  Note: *The availability of the* ***Fuel Price Service****, depends on the market in which the vehicle is being used.*
- **Arrival Mode**: When the vehicle arrives at a selected waypoint or destination, information that may be of use to the driver is displayed. A photographic view of the street is shown, if the vehicle is connected to the internet.

  Note: *The availability of the* ***Arrival Mode****, depends on the market in which the vehicle is being used.*
- **Safety Cameras**: The **Safety Cameras** feature provides the location of potential accident black spots, or areas that have been identified as a potential danger by the presence of safety cameras.

Land Rover InControl Route Planner smartphone app

The **Land Rover InControl Route Planner** smartphone app maximises the potential of the user's vehicle navigation system.

Note: *The* ***Land Rover InControl Route Planner*** *smartphone app is only available in selected markets.*

Downloading and installing:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

1. Search for the **Land Rover InControl Route Planner** smartphone app from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.
2. From the list of results, select **Land Rover InControl Route Planner** smartphone app and install it.
3. When the installation is complete, open the launcher and select the **Land Rover InControl Route Planner** smartphone app icon.
4. Follow the app's Quick Start Guide (QSG) instructions to complete the set-up.

Note: *To sign in to the* ***Land Rover InControl Route Planner*** *smartphone app, use the same email address and password used to set up the* ***Touch Pro Duo*** *navigation account.*

Note: *Apple and iPhone™ are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.*

Note: *Google Play Store is a registered trademark of Google Inc.*

Live Apps

Live Apps enables applications to inform the user of real time updates and can be installed directly to the **Touch Pro Duo** system.

Live Apps includes features such as, weather, flight tracker, and news feeds.

For example, the flight tracker will trigger a pop-up notification to alert the user that a flight has been delayed, allowing the user to simply re-plan the journey.

Note: *The availability of* ***Live Apps*** *services and features may vary by market.*

To access the Live Apps:

Select **Live Apps** from the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen to access the apps of the user's choice.

Select **Update**, if updates and new apps are available.

Note: *When a green down-arrow appears on the* ***Update*** *tile, this means updates are available.*

Note: ***Live Apps*** *features require an active InControl account to login and manage preferences. To register, connect, and activate an InControl account if not already been activated, please refer to the My Land Rover InControl website at:* ***https://incontrol.landrover.com****. Please follow the on-screen instructions.*

Note: *To be able to quickly log in and out of the feature and store personal information, enter a nickname and set up a PIN.*

WI-FI HOTSPOT

The Wi-Fi hotspot provides in-car access to 4G internet, enabling up to eight wireless devices to be used simultaneously in the car.

Before enabling Wi-Fi hotspot, please ensure that a data-enabled micro SIM card has been fitted. See **311, FITTING A SIM CARD**.

To enable Wi-Fi hotspot, select the **settings** icon to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **All Settings**, followed by **Features**. Select **Connectivity**.

The **CONNECTIVITY** pop-up menu displays **Hotspot**, **Wi-Fi**, and **Mobile Data**.

Select **Hotspot ON** to create a vehicle Wi-Fi hotspot.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Select **Hotspot** settings to display the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot name and password. The Wi-Fi hotspot name is determined by the vehicle.

Note: *To change the password, touch the* ***refresh*** *icon. A new password is generated.*

To connect a device to the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot, switch the device's Wi-Fi to **ON**. Select the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot name on the user's device and insert the password.

INCONTROL APPS

⚠ **In the interests of safety, operate, adjust, or view the system only when it is safe to do so.**

⚠ **Do not adjust the touch screen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.**

Note: *Not all smartphones are compatible. The* ***Land Rover InControl Apps*** *is compatible with iPhone 5 running iOS 7 and above, and Android phones running v4.0 and above.*

The **Land Rover InControl Apps** allows operation of a number of smartphone apps via the vehicle's touch screen.

Before using **Land Rover InControl Apps**, the app must be downloaded from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.

Note: ***Land Rover InControl Apps*** *data usage is charged from the user's smartphone.*

Downloading and installing the app:

1. Search for the **Land Rover InControl Apps** from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.
2. From the list of results, select **Land Rover InControl Apps** and install it.
3. When the installation is complete, open the launcher and select the **Land Rover InControl Apps** icon.
4. Follow the app's Quick Start Guide (QSG) instructions to complete the set-up.

Note: *The availability and functionality of* ***Land Rover InControl Apps*** *depends on the specification of the vehicle and the market in which the vehicle is used.*

Note: *Apps that are not suitable for use while driving, e.g., gaming apps, are not available on* ***Land Rover InControl Apps****.*

Note: *Apple and iPhone™ are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.*

Note: *Google Play Store is a registered trademark of Google Inc.*

When subsequently selecting **Land Rover InControl Apps**, the **Apps** view shows two lists of compatible apps: **Not Installed Apps** and **Installed Apps**. Apps in the **Not Installed Apps** list can be added at any time. Scroll to the right to see the full list. Tap the required app and install. The new app appears in the **Installed Apps** list.

The **Vehicle layout** view shows how the installed apps can display on the vehicle's touch screen. The order of the apps can be adjusted within the touch screen by touching an icon and drag to the required position.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

The **Options** menu gives access to a QSG and allows the **Keyboard** to be changed to suit the preferred language. The **Options** menu allows access to the **Navigation** feature, and includes a list of **FAQs**.

To view an app on the vehicle's touch screen, connect the phone via the USB cable, supplied with the phone, to the vehicle's USB socket. The socket is located in the centre console cubby box. The touch screen **HOME** menu must be selected.

If **InControl Apps** is not set to launch automatically, it can be selected by going to the **EXTRA FEATURES** menu on the touch screen. Select the **InControl Apps** option, which will open the launcher. Alternatively, **InControl Apps** can be set to launch automatically by changing the settings in the **SETTINGS** pop up menu. Select the **settings** icon, then select **All Settings**. From the list select **Features**. Search **InControl Apps** and select to change the launch preferences.

Some **InControl Apps** require a **Bluetooth®** connection. Make sure that the phone is paired via the **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device connection. See **276, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE**.

SECURE TRACKER

Secure Tracker provides a stolen vehicle tracking service. In the event that the vehicle has been tampered with, or moved without the owner's consent, the account owner is contacted by the stolen vehicle tracking call centre. Alternatively, use the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app, or the phone number on the InControl website, to contact the stolen vehicle tracking call centre.

Service Mode and **Transport Mode** can be enabled and disabled by using the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app, or via the InControl website. Enabling and/or activating service or transport mode prevent stolen vehicle tracking alerts being raised while the vehicle is being transported or serviced.

If the vehicle is being serviced or repaired, **Service Mode** must be enabled.

If the vehicle is being transported, **Transport Mode** must be enabled.

Note: *The owner is responsible for re-enabling or disabling* ***Service Mode*** *and* ***Transport Mode****.*

Note: *For further information on InControl, please refer to the Land Rover website at:* ***www.landrover.com****.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

WEB BROWSER HOMEPAGE



In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust, or view the system when it is safe to do so.

Internet pages only display when the vehicle is stationary.

1. **Return** icon: Touch to return to the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen or if viewing favourites, touch to return to the web browser screen.
2. Screen display: Touch and hold the screen to scroll web pages that are larger than the viewable area. Double tap the screen to reset the page to its original size.
3. **Full screen** icon: Select to maximise the viewable area by hiding the header, footer, and search bar. When in full screen view, selecting the **show all** icon will show the header, footer, and search bar.

   When in full screen view, touch the **+** and **-** icons on the zoom in and out widget to enlarge or reduce the web page content.

   Note: *Touch and hold the zoom in and out widget to move it to a new location on the screen.*
4. **Homepage** icon: Touch to display the homepage.
   When the web browser is used for the first time, the default Land Rover homepage is displayed. This is displayed until a new homepage is set. To set the homepage, select the favourites list by touching the **favourites** icon (**8**). Touch the **home** icon next to a favourite to make it the homepage. Touch the **return** icon to apply the change.
5. **Refresh** icon: Touch to refresh the displayed web page.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

6. **Backward** icon: Touch to show the previous web page.
7. **Forward** icon: Touch to show the next web page.
8. **Favourites** icon: Touch to add the displayed website to the favourites list. The web page name can be amended before adding to the list by touching the text. Select the favourites icon next to the website name and address to add it to the favourites list. This icon is highlighted when the displayed web page already exists as a favourite.
   Viewing a favourite: Select a favourite from the favourites list to display in the web browser.
   Deleting a favourite: Touch the **favourites** icon in the favourites list to deselect it, followed by the **return** icon to apply the changes and delete it from the list.
9. Search bar: Touch to display the keyboard. Enter a keyword or website address. Select **OK** from the keyboard, once a keyword or website address is entered, to perform a search. To delete the text, touch and hold the **delete** icon on the keyboard screen.
10. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **Web Browser Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. See **310, WEB BROWSER SETTINGS**.

WEB BROWSER SETTINGS

To access the **Web Browser Settings**, select the **settings** icon on the **WEB BROWSER** screen. The **SETTINGS** pop-up menu displays. Touch **Web Browser Settings**. The settings options are:

- **Delete Favourites**: Select to delete all favourite websites.
- **Delete Browsing Data**: Select to delete all browsing data (all cookies and cached data is removed).
- **Always Delete Browsing Data on Vehicle Shutdown**: If switched **ON**, cookies and cached files are deleted when the vehicle's engine and ignition is switched off.

Note: *It is recommended to delete all browsing data on change of vehicle ownership.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

FITTING A SIM CARD

Make sure the micro SIM card is located correctly into the card holder. Failure to do so may damage the micro SIM card or SIM card reader.

Note: *Some network operators may lock SIM cards to operate in specific devices only. Contact the network operator if the SIM card requires unlocking.*

A micro SIM card must be inserted into the SIM card holder. The SIM card reader utilises a SIM interface. When the current micro SIM card is a different size, e.g., a nano SIM, an adaptor or replacement SIM card is required.

The SIM card reader slot is located in the centre console's cubby box.



E171585

To fit a micro SIM card, insert the card with the contacts facing up and the shortest end facing out. The card should not be protruding once correctly inserted.

When the micro SIM is installed, enable Mobile data connectivity. See **311, MOBILE DATA CONNECTIVITY**.

To remove a SIM card, gently push in and release.

MOBILE DATA CONNECTIVITY

Mobile data requires the installation of a data-enabled micro SIM card. See **311, FITTING A SIM CARD**.

1. Select **ON** to enable mobile data.
2. Select **Agree** to agree to the terms and conditions.

   Note: *Mobile data connectivity is indicated by an icon at the top of the screen. See **312, CONNECTIVITY STATUS ICONS**.*
3. Select **Mobile Settings** to access the following options:

Network provider: The network provider of the inserted SIM is displayed. To change the APN settings, select the network provider's name to open the **NETWORK PROVIDER** screen. Set **Auto Select** to **OFF**. Add the **Network**, **Username**, and **Password**. Select **Connect**.

Roaming: Data roaming is set to **OFF** as default. Select **ON** to enable roaming.

Usage Limit: The usage limit is set to **OFF** as default. Select **ON** to enable usage limit.

Usage: The usage counter displays the total data usage for the month. The usage counter resets on the 1st day of the month, as default. When the usage limit is set to **ON**, the usage limit also displays.

Select **Usage** to change the usage limit and the monthly reset date. Use the reset counter to reset the current usage to zero.

SIM PIN: A PIN can be set or changed for the inserted SIM card.

Remember SIM PIN:

1. Select **ON** to remember.
2. Select **OFF** to forget the PIN.

About:

From the **CONNECTIVITY** menu screen, select **About** to display the vehicle's MAC address and IMEI number.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

To reset all connectivity settings to default, select **Reset** and then select **Yes**.

WI-FI CONNECTIVITY

In the interests of safety, only operate, adjust, or view the system when it is safe to do so.

Wi-Fi allows the vehicle to connect to the internet using an external Wi-Fi network.

To enable Wi-Fi, select the **Settings** icon to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **All settings**, followed by **Features**. Select **Connectivity**.

The **CONNECTIVITY** pop-up menu displays **Hotspot**, **Wi-Fi**, and **Mobile data**.

Select **Wi-Fi ON** to enable Wi-Fi.

Select **Add** to view any Wi-Fi networks in range.

To connect to an unknown network, select the network name. When the Wi-Fi network is password protected, a keyboard displays to allow entry of the password.

To connect to a known network, select the network and touch **Connect**, or to forget this network, touch **Forget**.

To connect to a hidden network, select **Add Network** from the network list. Enter the **Network Name**, **Security Type**, and **Password**, and press **Connect**.

CONNECTIVITY STATUS ICONS

The icons at the top of the screen display the type of cellular or Wi-Fi connection, as follows:


Connecting.



E (edge) mobile network connectivity.



2G mobile network connectivity.



3G mobile network connectivity.



4G mobile network connectivity.


No mobile network connection.


When the vehicle is connected to an external hotspot, a **Wi-Fi** icon is displayed instead of a **cellular** icon.

Note: *Depending on the network connectivity, some features and services, including Wi-Fi, may not operate as expected, or at all. A strong 3G or 4G connection is required.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

Do not smoke, use an exposed flame, or cause sparks while refuelling. The resulting fire and/or explosion may cause serious injury or death.

Avoid exposing the fuel gases to any potential sources of ignition. The resulting fire and/or explosion may cause serious injury or death.

Switch off the engine when refuelling, as it is both a source of extreme temperatures and electrical sparks. Failure to do so may cause a fire or explosion, potentially causing serious injury or death.

When refuelling, switch off any personal electronic devices such as mobile phones or music players. Failure to do so may cause a fire or explosion, potentially causing serious injury or death.

Do not overfill the fuel tank, as this may cause spillage when the vehicle is driven. Spillage may also occur if the fuel expands in high ambient temperatures.

Only use containers specifically designed for carrying fuel, and always remove them from the vehicle to fill them. Failure to do so may result in spillage and increase the risk of a fire.

Use extreme care and take appropriate safety precautions when refuelling the vehicle. Make sure to read and observe all the relevant warnings listed.

PETROL ENGINED VEHICLES

Use high quality fuel that meets the specification defined by EN228, or the national equivalent.

Do not use leaded fuels, fuel additives, or fuels with lead substitutes, e.g., manganese-based. Doing so may adversely affect the vehicle's exhaust emission control systems and the warranty coverage.

OCTANE RATING

Vehicles with a petrol engine require the use of premium unleaded fuel, with a minimum octane rating of 95 RON. Using the correct fuel specification helps to maintain the vehicle's performance, fuel economy, and driveability.

If premium unleaded fuel is not available, use unleaded fuel with a lower octane rating, down to a minimum of 91 RON. Using lower octane rated fuel may reduce the engine's performance, increase fuel consumption, or cause an audible engine knock and other driveability problems.

Do not use fuels with an octane rating lower than 91 RON, as severe engine damage may occur.

Note: *An occasional, light engine knock, experienced while accelerating or climbing hills, is acceptable.*

Consult a retailer/authorised repairer if a heavy persistent engine knock is detected, even if using fuel to the recommended octane rating. Particularly if an engine knock is detected, while holding a steady speed on level roads. Failure to do so is misuse of the vehicle, which is not covered by the vehicle's warranty.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

If in doubt, seek advice from a retailer/ authorised repairer in the territory concerned.

Super Green Plus 98 RON unleaded fuel, where available, may be used as an alternative to the standard 95 RON unleaded fuel.

ETHANOL

Do not use E85 fuels with 85% ethanol content, as serious engine and fuel system damage will occur.

Do not use fuels containing more than 10% ethanol.

Fuels containing up to 10% ethanol may be used, e.g., E5 and E10.

Make sure that the fuel has octane ratings no lower than those recommended for unleaded fuel. Correct engine operation should not be affected with fuel containing the permissible amount of ethanol. If a difference is detected, the use of conventional unleaded fuel should be resumed.

METHANOL

Wherever possible, avoid using fuel containing methanol.

Using fuel containing methanol may cause serious engine and fuel system damage, which may not be covered by the vehicle's warranty.

METHYL TERTIARY BUTYL ETHER (MTBE)

Unleaded fuel containing an oxygenate known as Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether (MTBE) can be used. The ratio of MTBE to conventional fuel must not exceed 15%. MTBE is an ether-based compound derived from petroleum. MTBE has been specified by several refiners as the substance to enhance the octane rating of fuel.

DIESEL ENGINED VEHICLES

If the fuel tank is inadvertently filled with petrol instead of diesel, do not attempt to start the engine. In this event, contact a retailer/authorised repairer immediately.

Any damage caused by running the vehicle with fuel other than that stipulated is not covered under warranty.

Note: *If a diesel engine is difficult to start in extreme cold temperatures of -15°C or less, consult a retailer/authorised repairer for assistance.*

Use only high quality diesel fuel, according to the European standard EN590 or equivalent.

Fuels containing a blend of up to 7% bio-diesel may be used, in accordance with the European standard EN590. Using a higher blend of bio-diesel is not recommended.

The quality and specification of diesel fuel varies significantly, depending on geographical location. Using a premium fuel is recommended, or the highest quality of fuel available.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

High quality fuel promotes a longer life for the engine's components. Lower grade fuel contains higher levels of sulphur, which is detrimental to the engine's components. If low quality fuel is used, light coloured smoke may be evident at the exhaust.

Prolonged use of additives is not recommended. Do not add paraffin or petrol to diesel fuels.

SULPHUR CONTENT

- Using an incorrect specification of fuel causes serious damage to the engine and the exhaust after-treatment system. The vehicle's warranty does not cover this. If in doubt, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer for advice.
- Some vehicles have a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) exhaust after-treatment system. The maximum sulphur content of the diesel fuel must not exceed 0.005% (50 parts per million), in compliance with the EN590-EU4 and the World Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC) standards.
- The sulphur content of diesel fuel used in vehicles without a DPF should not exceed 0.3% (3 000 parts per million).

In some countries, diesel fuel may contain higher levels of sulphur. If used, more frequent vehicle servicing is required, to help reduce the effects on the engine and the exhaust after-treatment components. If in doubt, contact a retailer/authorised repairer for advice.

DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF)

- **DEF must be kept out of children's reach, to avoid serious injury or death.**
- **Read the label for safety precautions when using DEF, to avoid injury.**
- DEF must be stored in the original container, in a cool, dry, and well-ventilated area. Observe the manufacturer's storage and handling recommendations.
- DEF has a strong odour and can stain clothing or upholstery. Take care not to spill the fluid when performing a top-up procedure. In the event of spillage, rinse immediately with clean water.
- When refilling, make sure that the correct specification of DEF is used. Use of the incorrect fluid can result in serious damage to the vehicle. In this situation, do not start the engine, contact a retailer/authorised repairer immediately.
- Do not overfill the DEF tank, as damage to DEF system may occur.
- Do not use commercial vehicle DEF dispensing nozzles. The vehicle's DEF system is not designed to be refilled under these higher pressures. The flow-rate of these pumps can result in serious damage to the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Fuel and refuelling

Vehicles with a diesel engine may have a tank containing Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF). DEF is used to make sure that correct exhaust emissions are achieved. DEF is also known as AdBlue™, AUS 32, and ARLA 32. AdBlue™ is a trademark of the Verband der Automobilindustrie e.V. (VDA).

Dependent on the current geographical location, correct use of the DEF system may be a legal requirement. Running the vehicle without the correct specification of DEF may be a criminal offence. Always use the correct DEF specification, and the correct quantity of DEF. See **389, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**, and also see **390, CAPACITIES**.

The consumption of DEF can vary greatly. An average consumption rate can be 800 km (500 miles) / 1 Litre, but this consumption rate can be more than doubled, depending on the driving style, road and weather conditions.

The distance until the DEF tank is empty and the volume of DEF required for refill can be viewed in the vehicle's instrument panel:

1. Switch on the ignition. See **131, SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION**.
2. Press the **OK** button repeatedly on the steering wheel control until **Driver Assistance** is displayed.
3. Using the down arrow button on the steering wheel control, scroll down to highlight **Vehicle Info**.
4. Press the **OK** button to confirm selection.
5. Scroll down to highlight **Next Service**.
6. Press the **OK** button to confirm selection. The Diesel Exhaust Fluid range and refill volume is displayed.

The instrument panel displays a series of messages when the DEF level becomes low, the volume of DEF required for refill also accompanies each message:

- The first message states that the DEF level is at a level where a top up is advised.
- The second message is accompanied by an AMBER warning icon and states to refill the DEF tank.
- The third message starts a countdown of the distance remaining until the DEF tank is empty, after which the vehicle will fail to start.
- The final message is accompanied by a RED warning icon and is displayed when the distance remaining is zero and states that no further restarts are possible until DEF is added to the tank.

Note: *When the DEF level becomes low, a notification displays in the instrument panel. Refill the DEF tank at the earliest opportunity. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer to arrange a full DEF refill.*

To perform a full DEF system refill, it is recommended to contact a retailer/ authorised repairer. If required, DEF can be added to the tank by following the top-up procedure.

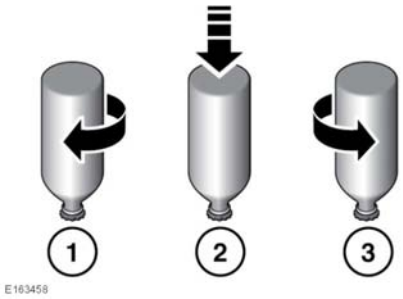
The volume of DEF required to restart the engine is shown in the message centre. Use the appropriate number of refill bottles to top-up the vehicle. A standard-sized non-drip refill bottle contains 1.9 L of DEF. Refill bottles are available from a retailer/authorised repairer.

To perform a DEF top-up procedure:

Locate the DEF tank. See **336, FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Turn the tank filler cap counter-clockwise to remove.



1. Place the refill bottle over the tank filler cap aperture and turn clockwise, until locked into position.
2. Press the base of the refill bottle, until all of the fluid has completely drained into the tank.
3. Turn the refill bottle counter-clockwise and remove.
4. Repeat the procedure with subsequent refill bottles.
5. Replace the tank filler cap and continually turn clockwise until hand tight.

If a DEF warning lamp, or message illuminates with a red warning icon, seek qualified assistance at the earliest opportunity. The possible events for this include DEF system malfunctions, incorrect fluid, and fluid quality. See **75, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (RED)**, and also see **77, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (AMBER)**.

Note: *In extremely low temperatures below -10°C, DEF may freeze in the tank, making refilling difficult. Move the vehicle into a warmer environment, e.g., a garage. Raise the ambient temperature, in order to thaw the DEF, before attempting to top-up. In these conditions, it may take up to 1 hour of driving before the low DEF message extinguishes.*

Note: *When starting and stopping the engine, operation of the DEF pumps may be heard, but this is no cause for concern.*

Note: *The check engine (amber) warning lamp may illuminate after a refill. In this event, start the engine, run for approximately 30 seconds, and then switch off the engine. Do this three times in succession.*

INSTRUCTIONAL VIDEO



https://goo.gl/JkjAg2

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Avoid running out of fuel. Doing so can cause damage to the vehicle's engine, fuel, and emission control systems.

Note: *If the vehicle does run out of fuel, seeking qualified assistance is advisable.*

If the vehicle does run out of fuel, a minimum of 4 L is required to restart the engine. See **319, FUEL FILLER FLAP**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Fuel and refuelling

The vehicle should be left with the ignition switched on for 5 minutes after refuelling, before attempting to restart the engine. The vehicle needs to be driven for a distance of 1.5 to 5 km in order to reset the engine management and monitoring systems.



Vehicles with a diesel engine may be supplied with an active misfuelling device. A metal flap is visible in the filler neck when the fuel filler cap is removed. Use the emergency funnel supplied with the vehicle to refill the fuel tank with a fuel can. Insert the funnel into the filler neck, fully and squarely, to open the active misfuelling device. See **320, ACTIVE DIESEL MISFUELLING PROTECTION DEVICE**.

WATER IN FUEL

If a **WATER IN FUEL** warning message is displayed in the instrument panel, an excessive amount of water has collected in the fuel system. In this event, consult a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.

DIESEL ENGINES

Running out of fuel draws air into the fuel system and may cause serious damage to the fuel injection system. In this event, seek qualified assistance immediately.

Vehicles with a diesel engine have a system that prevents the fuel tank from emptying completely. When the fuel reaches a minimum level, the system activates a reduced power mode, i.e., the engine does not run properly. The engine is also switched off after travelling a further distance of approximately 1.6 km.

If the fuel gauge indicates a low fuel level, or the low fuel warning lamp illuminates, refuel the vehicle as soon as possible. See **78, LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)**.

If the system protection function activates, the vehicle must be refuelled immediately. In this event, the vehicle should be carefully driven to the nearest place of safety, as soon as safety permits.

A minimum of 4 L of fuel is required to restart the engine. After refuelling, use the following procedure:

1. Press and hold the brake pedal (automatic transmission), or the clutch pedal (manual transmission).
2. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button and crank the engine for 5 seconds.
3. Release the **START/STOP** button.
4. With the brake or clutch pedal still pressed, press and release the **START/STOP** button to crank the engine. The engine should start within approximately 5 seconds.

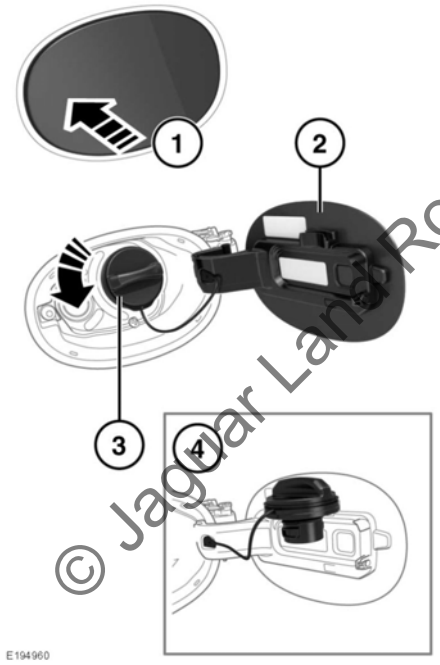
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Note: *If the engine does not start, pause for 10 seconds with the ignition switched on, then repeat the procedure from the beginning.*

Do not crank the engine for longer than 30 seconds continuously.

FUEL FILLER FLAP

Take note of all the warnings and instructions given on the label affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap.



The fuel filler flap is located on the right side of the vehicle, at the rear. To operate, proceed as follows:

1. Press and release the rear of the flap to unlatch.
2. Pull the flap open. The label on the inside of the flap indicates the correct fuel for the vehicle.
3. Turn the filler cap counter-clockwise to undo.
4. Use the securing clip to keep the filler cap out of the way while fuelling.

When replacing the cap, turn it clockwise until the ratchet clicks.

To close the filler flap, push the flap until it is securely latched.

FUEL FILLER

When refuelling, make sure that all of the windows, doors, and the sunroof are fully closed. Use extreme care and caution if young children or animals are in the vehicle.

Do not attempt to fill the fuel tank past its maximum capacity. If the vehicle is to be parked on a slope, in direct sunlight or high ambient temperatures, expansion of the fuel could cause spillage.

Check the fuel pump information carefully to make sure that the correct fuel is used to refuel the vehicle.

Make sure that the fuel filler nozzle is fully inserted into the filler neck.

If the vehicle is filled with the incorrect fuel, it is essential to seek qualified assistance before starting the engine.

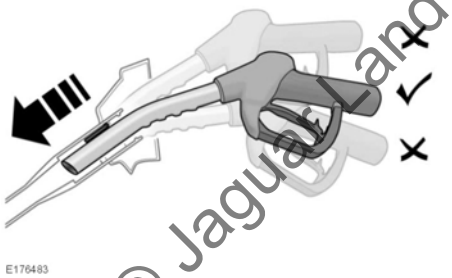
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Filling station pumps are equipped with automatic cut-off sensing, to avoid fuel spillage. Fill the tank slowly, until the filler nozzle automatically cuts off the supply. Do not attempt to fill the tank beyond this point.

Note: *Filling station pumps used for commercial vehicles deliver fuel at a higher rate than normal. The higher fill rate can cause premature cut-off and may cause fuel spillage. Only the use of standard light vehicle fuel pumps is recommended.*

ACTIVE DIESEL MISFUELLING PROTECTION DEVICE

Do not force an incorrectly sized fuel pump nozzle into the filler neck. Forcing an incorrectly sized fuel pump nozzle into the filler neck may result in damage to the vehicle.



Vehicles with a diesel engine may have an active misfuelling protection device. A metal flap is visible in the filler neck when the fuel filler cap is removed. The active misfuelling protection device helps to prevent the fuel tank from being filled with the incorrect fuel, e.g., petrol. Automatic release occurs if a correctly sized, diesel fuel pump filler nozzle is inserted, fully and squarely, into the vehicle's fuel filler neck, as illustrated.

Note: *To refuel with a fuel can, use the emergency funnel supplied with the vehicle. See* ***317, RUNNING OUT OF FUEL****.*

PASSIVE DIESEL MISFUELLING PROTECTION DEVICE

When the passive misfuelling protection device is activated, it may cause fuel to be discharged from the filler neck.

Note: *The passive misfuelling protection device may not activate if an incorrect, petrol fuel pump nozzle is only partially inserted.*

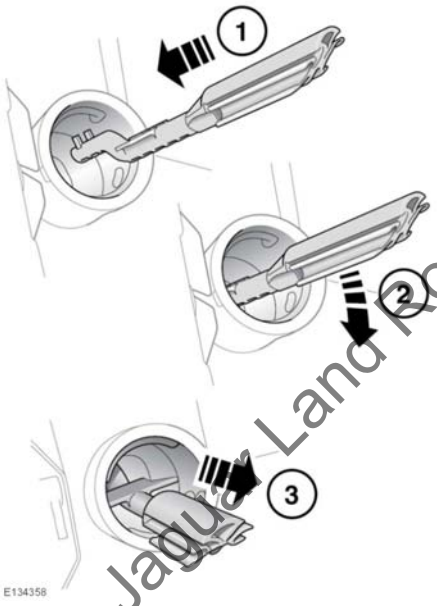
Note: *The driver is responsible for filling the vehicle with the correct fuel. The passive misfuelling protection device only reduces the risk of filling the vehicle with an incorrect fuel.*

Note: *The passive misfuelling protection device may be activated by some fuel can filler spouts and older fuel pumps.*

Vehicles with a diesel engine may have a passive misfuelling protection device incorporated into the fuel filler neck.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Using a smaller diameter, petrol fuel pump nozzle activates the passive misfuelling protection device. The vehicle's fuel filler neck is then closed to prevent the wrong fuel from being added to the fuel tank. The yellow passive misfuelling protection device is visible in the fuel filler neck when activated. In this event, use the reset tool to deactivate the misfuelling protection device. The reset tool is stored in the vehicle's tool kit.



Use the following reset tool instructions:

1. Insert the reset tool, with the teeth uppermost, as far as it would go into the fuel filler neck.
2. Push down on the top of the reset tool to engage the teeth.

Do not twist the device once the teeth have engaged.

3. Slowly pull the tool out of the fuel filler neck to reset the passive misfuelling protection device.

Note: *When reset, the yellow passive misfuelling protection device is no longer visible in the vehicle's fuel filler neck.*

Replace the reset tool in the vehicle's tool kit.

FUEL TANK CAPACITY

Avoid the risk of running out of fuel. Never intentionally drive the vehicle when the fuel gauge indicates that the fuel tank is empty. When refuelling the vehicle after the indicated range reads zero, it may not be possible to add the maximum fuel quantity. The fuel tank retains a small reserve of fuel. See **390, CAPACITIES**.

FUEL CONSUMPTION

The fuel consumption figures have been calculated using test procedures UN ECE R101 (ROW) and EC 715/2007, as amended by 2015/45 (Europe).

Under normal use, a vehicle's actual fuel consumption figures may differ from those achieved through the test procedure. For example, the figures are dependent on driving technique, road and traffic conditions, environmental factors, the vehicle's condition and the vehicle load.

Correct use, regular maintenance, and driving technique, such as travelling at lower speeds and avoiding aggressive driving, may improve fuel consumption and reduce CO_2 emissions.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Fuel and refuelling

Variant	Urban L/100 km	Extra-urban L/100 km	Combined L/100 km	CO_2 emissions g/km
3.0L petrol	12.7	7.5	9.4	214
3.0L diesel	7.4	5.8	6.4	167
2.0L diesel (180 PS)	6.2	4.9	5.4	142
2.0L diesel (240 PS)	7.2	5.1	5.8	154
2.0L petrol	9.1	6.7	7.6	173

URBAN CYCLE

The urban test cycle is carried out from a cold start situation. The test consists of a series of accelerations, decelerations, and periods of steady speed driving and engine idling. The maximum speed attained during the test is 50 km/h (30 mph), with an average speed of 19 km/h (12 mph).

EXTRA-URBAN CYCLE

The extra-urban test cycle is carried out immediately after the urban test. Approximately half of the test comprises of steady speed driving, while the remainder consists of a series of accelerations, decelerations, and engine idling. The maximum test speed is 120 km/h (75 mph) and the average speed is 63 km/h (39 mph). The test is carried out over a distance of 7 km.

COMBINED

The combined figure is an average of the urban and extra-urban test cycle results. The combined figures are weighted to take into account the different distances covered during the two tests.

For extra information on fuel consumption figures and exhaust emissions, visit the Vehicle Certification Agency (VCA) website: **http://www.vcacarfueldata.org.uk/**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

RUNNING-IN

The vehicle is built using high-precision manufacturing methods, but the moving parts of the engine must still bed-in, relative to each other. The process occurs mainly in the first 3 000 km of operation.

During this running-in period of 3 000 km, observe and follow the instructions below:

- Do not fully press the accelerator pedal during starts and normal driving.
- Avoid high engine speeds (rpm) until the engine has reached its full operating temperature.
- Avoid labouring the engine by operating the engine in too high a gear at low speeds.
- Gradually increase engine and road speeds.
- Avoid continuous operation at high engine speed and abrupt stops.
- Avoid frequent cold starts followed by short-distance driving.
- Preferably take longer journeys.
- Do not participate in track days, sports driving schools, or any similar events.

AIR CONDITIONING (A/C)

Under no circumstances should any part of the Air Conditioning (A/C) system be serviced, dismantled, or replaced by anyone other than suitably qualified and certified personnel. Make sure that the refrigerant is correctly contained at all times.

All replacement parts for the A/C system must be new and equivalent to the manufacturer's original equipment. All replacement parts must comply with the relevant SAE standard. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer for advice.

The A/C system contains HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf), which is a low Global Warming Potential (GWP) Tetrafluoropropene refrigerant. The A/C system is sealed and has a leakage rate of less than 3% per year.

The following symbols may be used on an under-bonnet label. The symbols are relevant to the refrigerant fluid:



A/C symbol.



Lubricant symbol.



Caution.



Flammable refrigerant.



Required registered technician to service the A/C system.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

OWNER MAINTENANCE

Any significant or sudden drop in fluid levels, or uneven tyre wear, should be reported to a qualified technician without delay.

In addition to the routine maintenance, a number of simple checks must be carried out more frequently.

DAILY CHECKS

- Operation of the lights, horn, direction indicators, wipers, washers, and warning lamps.
- Operation of the seat belts and brakes.
- Look for fluid deposits underneath the vehicle that might indicate a leak. Condensation drips from the Air Conditioning (A/C) system are normal.

WEEKLY CHECKS

- Engine oil level.
- Engine coolant level.
- Brake fluid level.
- Power steering fluid level.
- Screen washer fluid level.
- Tyre pressures and condition.
- Operate the Air Conditioning (A/C).

Note: *The engine oil level should be checked more frequently if the vehicle is driven for prolonged periods at high speeds.*

EXHAUST FILTER

Diesel vehicles equipped with a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) have more efficient emissions control. The particles in the exhaust gases are collected in the exhaust filter during normal driving.

Cleaning of the exhaust filter is also known as regeneration. The cleaning occurs automatically, approximately every 300 to 900 km depending on driving conditions, and requires the engine to reach its normal operating temperature.

Self-cleaning takes place when the vehicle is driven steadily at speeds between 60 km/h and 112 km/h (37 mph and 70 mph). The process normally takes 10 to 20 minutes. Self-cleaning can occur at lower vehicle speeds, but the process may take a little longer at a 50 km/h (30 mph) average speed.

Exhaust filter self-cleaning

Some driving conditions, e.g., frequently driving short distances in slow-moving traffic or in cold weather, may not provide sufficient opportunity to begin the exhaust filter self-cleaning automatically. When this occurs, a warning icon is displayed in the instrument panel, depending on status, as follows:



- Amber: Exhaust filter self-cleaning is required. Driving above 60 km/h (37 mph) for 20 minutes should clean the filter.

  Note: *Failure to follow the above driving approach, to enable filter self-cleaning, may result in reduced vehicle performance. The amber exhaust filter icon is eventually replaced by a red exhaust filter icon. The filter may need to be replaced.*
- Green: Exhaust filter self-cleaning is complete.
- Red: The exhaust filter is full. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Note: *A small increase in fuel consumption may be noticed temporarily during exhaust filter self-cleaning.*

Note: *If diesel fuel with high sulphur content is used regularly, the exhaust may emit a cloud of smoke at the start of the self-cleaning process. The smoke is a result of the sulphur deposit being burnt off and is no cause for concern. If possible, only use low sulphur diesel fuel.*

ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

No modifications or additions should be made to the anti-theft system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction.

AIRBAG SYSTEM

The components that make up the airbag system are sensitive to electrical or physical interference, either of which could easily damage the system and cause inadvertent operation or a malfunction of the airbag module.

To prevent malfunction of the airbag system, always consult a retailer/ authorised repairer before fitting any of the following:

- Electronic equipment such as a mobile phone, two-way radio, or in-vehicle entertainment system.
- Accessories attached to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification involving the removal or repair of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any of the airbag system components. The components include the steering wheel, steering column, and instrument and fascia panels.
- Any modification to the fascia panels or steering wheel.

PARTS AND ACCESSORIES

The fitting of non-approved parts and accessories, or the carrying out of non-approved alterations or conversions, may be dangerous and could affect the safety of the vehicle and occupants, and also invalidate the terms and conditions of the vehicle's warranty.

Jaguar Land Rover Limited will not accept any liability for death, personal injury, or damage to property, which may occur as a direct result of fitment of non-approved accessories or the carrying out of non-approved conversions to the vehicle.

All replacement parts for the Air Conditioning (A/C) system should be new and equivalent to the manufacturer's original equipment, while complying with the SAE Standards. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer for advice.

The following symbol may be used on an under-bonnet label and is relevant to the A/C refrigerant fluid:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017



The symbol identifies extremely flammable chemicals that have an extremely low flash point and boiling point, and gases that catch fire when in contact with air.

ROAD TESTING DYNAMOMETERS (ROLLING ROADS)

Any dynamometer testing should only be carried out by a qualified person, familiar with the dynamometer testing and safety procedures practised by retailers/ authorised repairers.

SAFETY IN THE GARAGE

If the vehicle has been driven recently, do not touch the engine, exhaust, or cooling system components until the engine has cooled.

Never leave the engine running in an unventilated area. Exhaust gases are poisonous and extremely dangerous.

Do not work beneath the vehicle with the wheel changing jack as the only means of support.

The jack is designed for wheel changing only. Never work beneath the vehicle with the jack as the only means of support. Always use correctly rated vehicle support stands, before putting any part of the body beneath the vehicle.

Keep hands and clothing away from drive belts, pulleys, and fans. Some fans may continue to operate, or start operating, after the engine has stopped.

Remove metal wristbands and jewellery before working in the engine compartment.

Do not touch electrical leads or components while the engine is running or the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

Do not allow tools or metal parts of the vehicle to make contact with the battery leads or terminals.

USED ENGINE OIL

Prolonged contact with engine oil may cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer of the skin. Always wash thoroughly after contact.



Pollution of drains, watercourses, or soil is illegal. Use authorised waste disposal sites to dispose of used oil and toxic chemicals.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

OPENING THE BONNET



To open the bonnet:

1. Pull the handle, located in the left-side front footwell, to release the bonnet securing latch.
2. Push the safety catch lever, located below the centre point of the bonnet. Raise the bonnet.

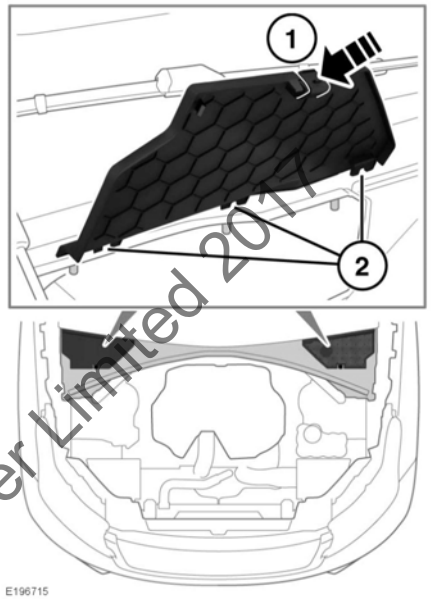
CLOSING THE BONNET

Do not drive with the bonnet secured by the safety catch alone.

To close the bonnet:

1. Lower the bonnet until the safety catch engages.
2. Using both hands, press the bonnet down until the catches click.
3. Try to lift the front edge of the bonnet to check that both catches are engaged.

UNDER-BONNET COVERS REMOVAL



Open the bonnet and follow the procedure:

1. Lightly push back and hold the cover's front securing clip.
2. Lift up the cover and slide forward to release the rear locating clips.

UNDER-BONNET COVERS REFITTING

To refit the under-bonnet covers:

1. Locate the cover's rear locating lugs into the vehicle's panel.
2. Lightly press down the cover to engage the front securing lug into the vehicle's panel.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2011

Note: *The cover should be a flush fit and aligned to the vehicle's panel.*

FUEL SYSTEM

Under no circumstances should any part of the fuel system be dismantled or replaced by anyone other than a suitably qualified vehicle technician.

Make sure sparks and open flames are kept away from the engine compartment.

Wear protective clothing, including, where possible, gloves made from an impervious material.

CHANGING A BULB

All lights are LED units and must only be replaced by a retailer/ authorised repairer.

WIPERS SERVICE POSITION

To avoid damage to the bonnet, do not lift the wiper blades when they are in the normal parked position.

Note: *The smart key must remain in the vehicle while the wiper blades are being replaced.*

Note: *Fit only replacement wiper blades that are identical to the original specification.*

Note: *Replace the wiper blades in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.*

Before changing a wiper blade, the wiper arms must be set in the service position as follows:

1. Make sure the ignition is switched off.
2. Switch the ignition on and then off again.
3. Immediately press the wash/wipe control to its lowest position, as if to command a single wipe. Hold this position while switching on the ignition again. The wipers move to the service position. See **91, WIPER OPERATION**.
4. When the new parts have been fitted, switch the ignition off. The wipers return to the park position.

SUNROOF RESET

Make sure that the conditions listed below are met before carrying out the sunroof and/or roof blind reset procedure:

- The ambient air temperature is between 5°C to 65°C.
- The vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle's battery is sufficiently charged and the electrical connections are good.

The sunroof and/or roof blind need to be reset if the battery is disconnected, becomes discharged, or the power supply is interrupted.

Once the power supply is restored, reset the sunroof and/or roof blind as follows:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Manually close the sunroof and/or roof blind. Release the switches. See **100, ELECTRIC WINDOWS**.

Before closing the sunroof, make sure that no occupants have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Even with an anti-trap system, death or serious injury could occur. See 102, SUNROOF ANTI-TRAP MECHANISM.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

3. Fully press and hold the front of the sunroof switch for 10 seconds to start the reset cycle. Continue to hold the front of the sunroof switch.

   Note: *For vehicles with a fixed sunroof, press and hold the front of the roof blind switch.*

   Note: *If the switch is released, then the whole procedure has to be repeated.*

4. The reset cycle:
   - Fully opens the roof blind.
   - Fully opens and then fully closes the sunroof.

     Note: *Not applicable for vehicles with a fixed sunroof.*
   - Fully closes the roof blind.

The anti-trap system is disabled during the reset cycle. Make sure that no occupants have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped.

5. Once the reset cycle has completed and the roof blind has stopped moving, release the switch.

The sunroof and/or the roof blind can now be operated as normal.

WINDOW RESET

The windows need to be reset if the battery is disconnected, becomes discharged, or the power supply is interrupted.

Once the power supply is restored, reset the windows as follows:

1. Close the window fully.
2. Release the switch, then lift it to the close position. Hold for 2 seconds.
3. Release the switch.
4. Repeat the lift and release procedure twice more.
5. Test the window for correct manual and automatic switch operation. See **100, ELECTRIC WINDOWS**.
6. Repeat the procedure on each window.

Note: *Make sure that a minimum of 12 volts is available at all times, it is advisable to have the engine running while resetting the windows.*

FIRE EXTINGUISHER

For certain markets, fire extinguishers are fitted to comply with local legislation. Please note that it is the owner's responsibility to make sure the fire extinguisher is maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

The owner is also responsible for making sure that the pressure is at a suitable operating pressure, as indicated on the pressure gauge. Only use fire extinguishers approved by the vehicle manufacturer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Vehicle cleaning

THE EXTERIOR

- To prevent damage to the vehicle when using a valeting service, make sure to advise them of the cleaning instructions contained within the Owner's Handbook.
- Following cleaning of the vehicle's exterior, it is recommended that the vehicle is taken for a short drive, in order to dry out the brakes. A short drive, in order to dry out the brakes, is especially recommended if a pressure washer is used.
- Remove any heavy deposits of mud and dirt with a hose, before washing the vehicle.
- Some high pressure cleaning systems are sufficiently powerful to penetrate door and window seals, and damage trim and door locks. Never aim the water jet directly at the engine air intake, heater air intakes, radiator cooling fins, body seals, cameras, or at any components which may be damaged.
- Do not use a power wash system in the engine bay area.
- Substances which are corrosive, such as bird droppings, can damage the vehicle's paintwork and should be removed as soon as possible.
- Make sure to read and comply with all warnings and product instructions supplied with any cleaning products.
- Never use cleaning products which are not approved for use on vehicles.
- Do not apply polish to any unpainted areas of bumper mouldings. It will become ingrained in the textured finish.
- To avoid damage to the bonnet, do not lift the wipers when they are in the normal parked position. See **328, WIPERS SERVICE POSITION**.

Do not aim the water jet directly at any rubber gaiters or seals on suspension joints.

Make sure that the water jet nozzle is more than 300 mm away from vehicle components.

Satin matte paint

- The vehicle manufacturer recommends the use of specialised satin paint products when cleaning the vehicle's exterior. Any other cleaning or paint protection product may have an adverse effect on the paint finish.
- Never polish vehicles that have a satin matte paint finish. Polishing causes the finish to shine and may reduce the matte effect.
- Do not use an automated car wash.
- Stickers, films, magnetic plates, or similar should not be affixed to the vehicle's exterior.

Additional care is required when cleaning the exterior of vehicles with a satin matte paint finish. It is recommended to wash the vehicle by hand, using a soft sponge, making sure not to apply high pressure to the paint surface. Avoid washing the vehicle in direct sunlight.

Remove any of the following substances immediately, where possible:

- Insect remains.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

- Bird droppings.
- Fingerprints.
- Tree resin.
- Oils, grease, and fuels.
- Wax.
- Tar spots.

SENSORS AND CAMERAS

When washing the vehicle, do not aim high pressure water jets directly at any of the sensors and cameras. Do not use abrasive materials, or hard or sharp objects, to clean the sensors and cameras. Only use approved vehicle shampoo.

Park assist and parking aid sensors should be kept clean to maintain accuracy and performance.

If required, the cameras should be cleaned using a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass-cleaning product.

USING AN AUTOMATIC WASH

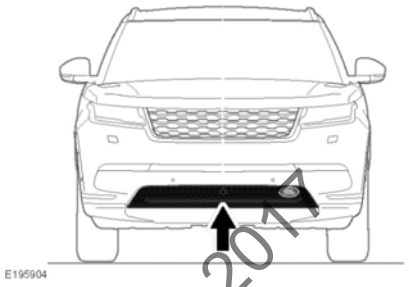
Commercially operated automatic car washes, jet washes, and power-operated mops are not recommended.

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

Do not use a high pressure washer or steam cleaner in the engine compartment.

Make sure that the brake fluid reservoir is kept dry at all times. Only use a clean, dry cloth to clean the brake fluid cap and reservoir.

AFTER OFF-ROAD DRIVING



Make sure the vehicle's underside is cleaned as soon as possible after driving off-road.

Make sure the areas around air intakes and the front grille are clean and clear of debris. Pay particular attention to the lower grille and radiator. Failure to do so may cause the engine to overheat, leading to severe engine damage.

ALLOY WHEELS

Only use approved wheel cleaning products.

GLASS SURFACES

Mirror glass is particularly susceptible to damage. Wash with soapy water. Do not use abrasive cleaning compounds or metal scrapers to remove ice.

To avoid damaging the protective coating, only clean the interior side of the sunroof glass with a soft cloth. Do not scrape the glass or use abrasive cleaning fluids.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Vehicle cleaning

REAR SCREEN

To avoid damaging the heating elements when cleaning the inside of the rear screen, use only a soft, damp cloth or chamois leather. Do not use solvents or sharp objects to clean the glass.

SUNROOF WIND DEFLECTOR

A mild solution of soap and water, or car shampoo, should be used to clean the wind deflector net periodically. Support the underside of the net with a soft cloth, and gently scrub the net using a soft bristled brush.

REMOVING GREASE AND TAR

Remove grease or tar with vehicle manufacturer approved tar remover or methylated spirit (alcohol). White spirit is also effective, but must not be applied to rubber, particularly the windscreen wiper blades.

Make sure that after using methylated or white spirit, the area is washed immediately with soapy water, to remove all traces of spirit.

POLISHING

Chrome polish, or other abrasive cleaners, must not be used on the vehicle's brightwork.

It is recommended that the vehicle is polished regularly using vehicle manufacturer approved polish and a polishing cloth.

THE INTERIOR

Some cleaning products contain substances that are harmful and can cause health problems if used incorrectly, and may cause damage to the vehicle's interior. Make sure to read the manufacturer's instructions carefully.

To prevent damage to the vehicle when using a valeting service, make sure to advise them of the cleaning instructions contained within the Owner's Handbook.

CLEANING SWITCHES AND CONTROLS

Use a soft, dry, lint-free cloth when cleaning switches or controls. Do not apply excessive pressure when doing so.

Do not spray liquids directly onto the surface of switches and controls.

Do not use chemical agents, solvents, or domestic cleaning products.

When cleaning, do not allow sharp or abrasive objects to make contact with the components.

FABRIC UPHOLSTERY

Never use soap, ammonia, bleach, or other cleaners intended for use on hard surfaces.

Do not use upholstery cleaner on electrical equipment such as fascia switches.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

When cleaning around electrical equipment such as switches, make sure that fluids do not leak into any gaps around the components or between panels or trim.

Use vehicle manufacturer approved cleaner, following the instructions. Avoid over-wetting.

LEATHER UPHOLSTERY

To prevent ingrained dirt and staining, inspect the seat upholstery regularly. Clean every one to two months, as follows:

- Wipe off fine dust from the seat surfaces using a clean, damp, non-coloured cloth. Change frequently to a clean area of cloth to avoid abrasive action on the leather surface. Avoid over-wetting.
- If this is not sufficient, use a cloth which has been dampened with warm, soapy water and then wrung out. Use only mild non-caustic soap.
- Use vehicle manufacturer approved leather cleaner for heavily soiled areas. Dry off and rub with a clean, soft cloth, changing surfaces regularly.
- Use vehicle manufacturer approved leather cleaner several times a year to maintain its appearance and suppleness. The cleaner nourishes and moisturises, and helps to improve the surface's protective film against dust and substances.
- Do not use solvents. Do not use detergents, furniture polish, or household cleaners. While these products may initially give impressive results, usage leads to rapid deterioration of the leather and invalidates the warranty. The vehicle manufacturer recommends a basic set of products that have been specially selected for the type of leather in the vehicle.
- Dark clothing may stain leather seats, just like other upholstery products.
- Sharp objects, such as belts, zip fasteners, rivets, etc., can leave permanent scratches and scratch marks on the leather surface.
- Unless spillages, such as tea, coffee, or ink, are washed away immediately, permanent staining may have to be accepted.

If a valet service is used, make sure that the specialist concerned is aware of, and follows, the above instructions precisely.

REMOVING STAINS

Most stains on woollen fabric can be removed if treatment is carried out immediately, before the stain has a chance to dry in.

Most stains can be treated with one of three cleaning fluids: vehicle manufacturer approved cleaner, dry cleaning fluid, or clean water. Follow the instructions on the package.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Vehicle cleaning

SEAT BELTS

Do not allow any water, cleaning products, or fabric from cloths to enter the seat belt mechanism. Any substance which enters the mechanism may affect the performance of the seat belt in an impact.

Extend the seat belts fully. Use warm water and a non-detergent soap to clean. Allow the seat belts to dry naturally while fully extended. Do not allow the belts to retract until fully dry.

Note: *While cleaning the seat belt, take the opportunity to examine the webbing for damage and wear. Any wear or damage should be reported to, and be rectified by, a retailer/authorised repairer.*

AIRBAG MODULE COVERS

Airbag covers should only be cleaned using a slightly dampened cloth and a small amount of upholstery cleaner.

Any substance which enters the mechanism can prevent correct deployment of an airbag during an impact.

CARPET AND MATS

Correctly secure the floor mats before driving. Never place mats on top of each other. Unsecured or incorrectly positioned mats can obstruct the brake and/or accelerator pedal.

Marks or stains can be removed by gentle scrubbing with a weak solution of soap and warm water.

For more stubborn stains, a commercially available carpet cleaner should be used.

CLEANING SCREENS AND DISPLAYS

Do not use upholstery cleaner on electrical equipment such as fascia switches.

When cleaning around electrical equipment, such as switches, make sure fluids do not leak into any gaps around the components, or between panels or trim.

Observe the following points when cleaning screens and displays:

- To avoid unwanted activation, clean the display while it is switched off.
- Clean with a soft, dry cloth.
- Do not use chemical agents or domestic cleaners.
- Do not allow sharp, hard, or abrasive objects to make contact with screens.
- Avoid exposing screens to direct sunlight for long periods.
- To prevent errors occurring, make sure only one finger at a time is in contact with the touch screen.
- Do not use excessive pressure.

WIPER BLADES

To avoid damage to the wiper blade, do not lift the wiper by the wiper blade. Always lift the wiper by the wiper arm.

Do not use excessive pressure.

Heavy contamination on the wiper blades should be removed, using a soft, damp sponge or cloth.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

BLOCKED WASHER JETS

Do not operate the washer jets during unblocking or adjustment. Windscreen washer fluid may cause irritation to the eyes and skin. Always read and observe the washer fluid manufacturer's instructions.

If a washer jet becomes blocked, insert a thin strand of wire into the washer jet to unblock it. Make sure the wire is completely removed after unblocking.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Note: *Any repairs should be carried out by suitably qualified personnel.*

Regularly inspect the paintwork for damage. Any stone chips, fractures, or deep scratches in the paint or bodywork should be repaired promptly. Bare metal corrodes quickly and, if left untreated, can result in expensive repairs.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Fluid level checks

FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS

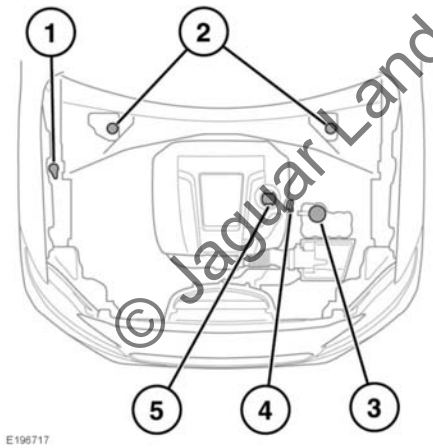
While working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety precautions. See 326, SAFETY IN THE GARAGE.

Do not start the engine, or drive the vehicle, if leaked fluid could possibly make contact with a hot surface. Any leaked fluid coming into contact with a hot surface, such as the exhaust, could result in combustion. Seek qualified assistance immediately.

Note: *The brake fluid reservoir is always located on the driver's side.*

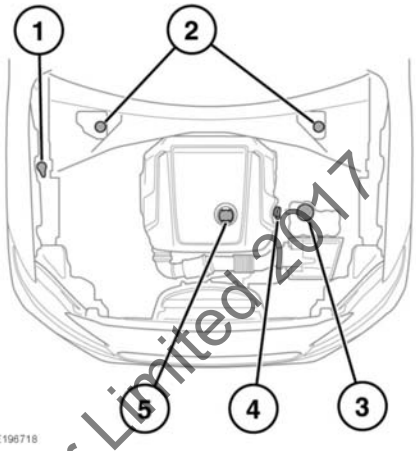
A number of simple checks and routine maintenance must be carried out at regular intervals. See **324, WEEKLY CHECKS**.

2.0L petrol engine



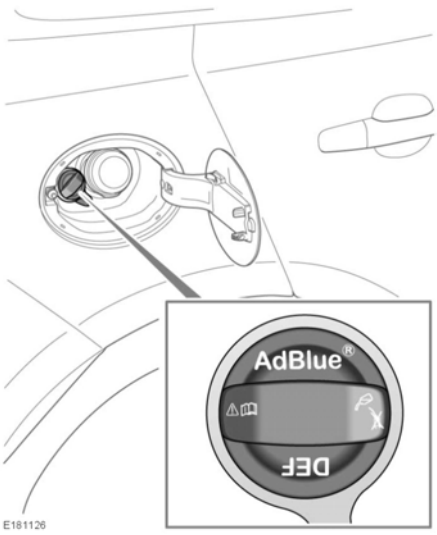
1. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap.
2. Brake fluid reservoir cap.
3. Engine coolant reservoir filler cap.
4. Engine oil level dipstick.
5. Engine oil filler cap.

2.0L diesel engine



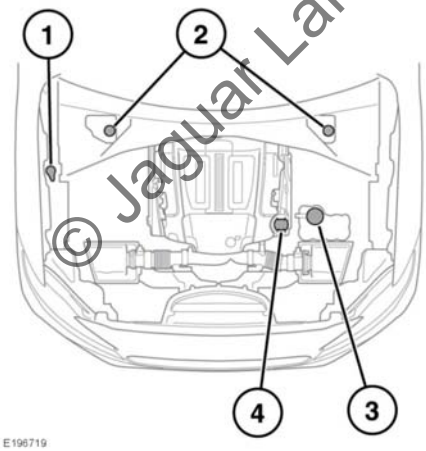
1. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap.
2. Brake fluid reservoir cap.
3. Engine coolant reservoir filler cap.
4. Engine oil level dipstick.
5. Engine oil filler cap.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017



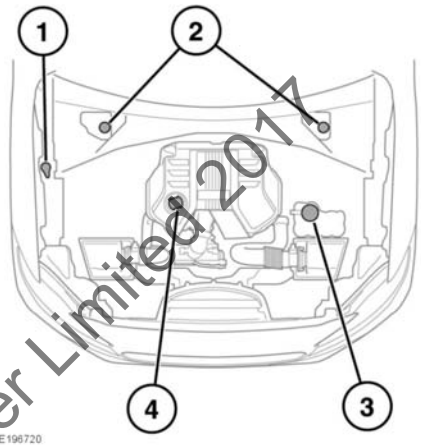
The Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) reservoir filler cap is located to the inside of the fuel filler flap. See **315, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF)**.

3.0L petrol engine



1. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap.
2. Brake fluid reservoir cap.
3. Engine coolant reservoir filler cap.
4. Engine oil filler cap.

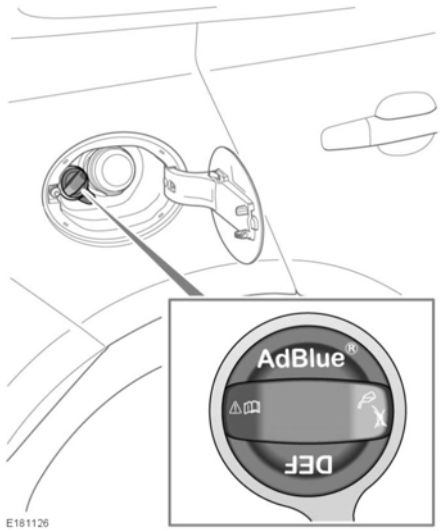
3.0L diesel engine



1. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap.
2. Brake fluid reservoir cap.
3. Engine coolant reservoir filler cap.
4. Engine oil filler cap.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Fluid level checks



The Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) reservoir filler cap is located to the inside of the fuel filler flap. See **315, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF)**.

CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

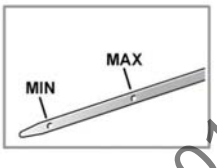
Check the engine oil weekly. If any significant or sudden drop in oil level is noted, seek qualified assistance.

Never allow the engine oil level to fall below the lower mark on the dipstick or the oil level indicator.

If the instrument panel displays the message **ENGINE OIL PRESSURE LOW**, stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Allowing the engine to continue running with low oil pressure may cause the engine to seize. Seek qualified assistance immediately. Do not start the engine until the cause has been rectified.

Check the engine oil level frequently. Top up, as required, using the correct grade for the engine.

Engines with a dipstick



The dipstick on 2.0L petrol and diesel engines features a lug to aid correct fitment. Make sure the lug is correctly aligned with the groove in the dipstick tube. Failure to do this could result in the dipstick not fitting correctly and oil escaping from the engine.

Before checking the engine oil level, make sure that:

- The vehicle is stationary and the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The vehicle is on level ground.
- The engine oil is cold.

Note: *If it is necessary to check the oil level when the engine is hot, switch off the engine. Let the vehicle stand for 5 minutes to allow the oil to drain back into the sump. Do not start the engine.*

The oil level can then be checked as follows:

1. Withdraw the dipstick and wipe the blade clean with a lint-free cloth.
2. Fully reinsert the dipstick and withdraw again to check the oil level.

If the oil level is nearer to the upper mark on the dipstick, do not add any oil.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

If the oil level is below half-way, add 0.5 L of oil. Recheck the level and add more oil, if necessary.

If the oil level is below the lower mark, add 1.8 L of oil.

Once the oil has reached the correct level on the dipstick, wait 5 minutes and recheck.

Engines without a dipstick

Engines without a dipstick feature an electronic monitoring system. The engine oil level is not monitored when the engine is running, or when the vehicle is in motion.

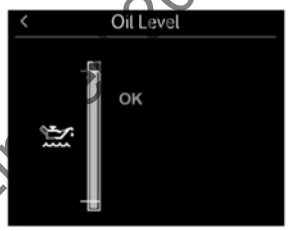
Before checking the engine oil level, make sure that:

- The vehicle is stationary and the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The vehicle is on level ground.
- The engine oil has reached its normal working temperature (oil is hot).
- The engine has been switched off for 10 minutes. The system does not give an accurate reading until the oil level has stabilised.

The oil level can then be checked as follows:

1. Switch on the vehicle's ignition. Do not start the engine. See **131, SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION**
2. Select **Oil Level** from the **Vehicle Info** instrument panel menu. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The instrument panel displays the engine oil level indicator.



An indication of the oil level is displayed in the indicator. Messages to the right of the indicator advise of any action to be taken.

Message	Action
OK	No action required.
Overfilled	Seek qualified assistance immediately. Do not drive the vehicle as this will cause serious damage to the engine.
Low	Add 1.5 L of oil, then recheck the level.
Critically Low	Seek qualified assistance immediately.
Add XX Litres	Add the advised quantity of oil to the engine, then recheck the level.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Fluid level checks

Message	Action
Not Available	The oil level is stabilising. Switch off the ignition, wait 10 minutes, then recheck the oil level display.
ENGINE OIL LEVEL MONITOR SYSTEM FAULT	Seek qualified assistance immediately.

TOPPING UP THE OIL

The vehicle's warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by using oil that does not meet the required specification. See **389, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

Failure to use an oil that meets the required specification could cause excessive engine wear, a build-up of sludge and deposits, and increase pollution. A resultant cause could be engine failure.

Overfilling with oil could result in severe engine damage. Oil should be added in small quantities and the level rechecked to make sure the engine is not overfilled.

Use of the correct oil specification is essential. Make sure the oil is suitable for the climatic conditions in which the vehicle is to be operated.

To top up the oil:

1. Turn the oil filler cap counter-clockwise to remove.
2. For engines with a dipstick:
   - Add oil to maintain the level between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the dipstick.

   Note: *The approximate quantity of oil required to raise the level from **MIN** to **MAX** on the dipstick is 1.8 L.*
3. For engines with an electronic monitoring system:
   - Add oil, as indicated by the engine oil level indicator messages in the instrument panel.
4. Clean up any oil spilled during topping up.
5. Check the oil level again after 5 minutes.
6. To refit the oil filler cap, turn the cap clockwise until an audible click is heard.

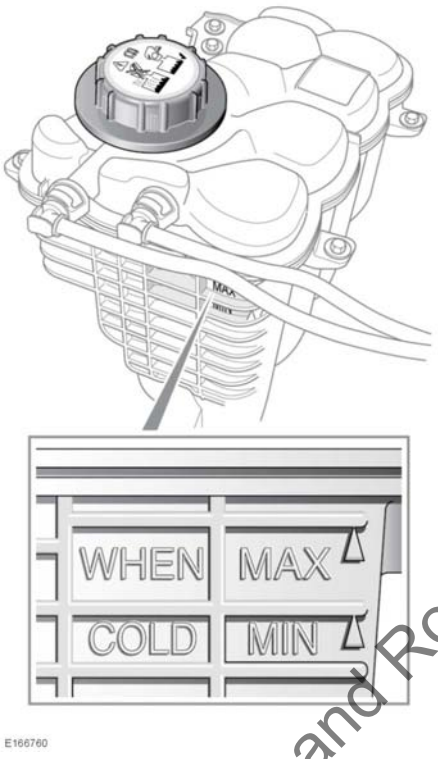
CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL

Running the engine without coolant causes serious engine damage.

If persistent coolant loss is noticed, seek qualified assistance immediately.

The coolant reservoir level should be checked at least weekly, more frequently in high mileage or arduous operating conditions. Always check the level when the system is cold.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017



E166760

Make sure the coolant level remains between the **MIN** and **MAX** indicator marks on the side of the expansion tank.

If the level has dropped suddenly, or by a large amount, arrange for the vehicle to be examined by a retailer/authorised repairer as soon as possible.

TOPPING UP THE COOLANT

⚠ **Never remove the coolant reservoir filler cap when the engine is hot. Escaping steam or scalding water could cause serious personal injury.**

⚠ **Unscrew the filler cap slowly, allowing the pressure to escape before removing completely.**

⚠ **Antifreeze is highly inflammable. Do not allow antifreeze to come into contact with open flames or other sources of ignition (e.g., a hot engine). A fire may result.**

⚠ **Antifreeze is poisonous and can be fatal if swallowed. Keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If consumption is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.**

⚠ **If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water.**

When travelling in places where the water supply contains salt, always make sure to carry a supply of fresh (rain or distilled) water. Topping up with salt water will cause serious engine damage.

The use of non-approved antifreeze will have an adverse effect on the engine's cooling system and, therefore, engine durability. See **389, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

Antifreeze will damage painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately, and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Fluid level checks

Antifreeze contains important corrosion inhibitors. The antifreeze content of the coolant must be maintained at 50% to 60% all year round, not just in cold conditions. To make sure the anti-corrosion properties of the coolant are maintained, the antifreeze content should be checked once a year. The antifreeze should be completely replaced every 10 years, regardless of the distance travelled. Failure to do so may cause corrosion of the radiator and engine components. The specific gravity of a 50% antifreeze solution at 20°C is 1.068 and protects against frost down to -40°C.

To top up the coolant:

1. Rotate the coolant reservoir filler cap counter-clockwise and remove.
2. Top up to the **MAX** indicator mark on the side of the coolant reservoir. Use a mixture of 50% water and 50% antifreeze. See **389, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

   Note: *In an emergency, and only if the approved antifreeze is unavailable, top up the cooling system with clean water. Be aware of the resultant reduction in frost protection. Do not top up or refill with conventional antifreeze formulations. If in doubt, consult a qualified technician.*
3. To refit the coolant reservoir filler cap, rotate the filler cap clockwise, until the cap's ratchet clicks at least three times.

CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID LEVEL

Seek qualified assistance immediately if brake pedal travel is unusually long, or if there is any significant loss of brake fluid. Driving under such conditions could result in extended stopping distances or complete brake failure.

Brake fluid is highly toxic. Keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental consumption of fluid is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.

If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of clean water.

Brake fluid is highly flammable. Do not allow brake fluid to come into contact with open flames, a hot engine, or other sources of ignition.

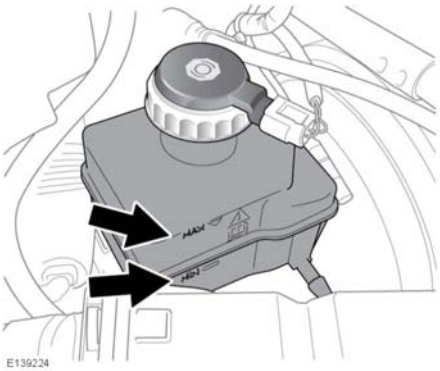
Do not drive the vehicle with the fluid level below the MIN mark.

If the quantity of fluid in the brake reservoir drops below the recommended level, a red warning lamp in the instrument panel illuminates. See **75, BRAKE (RED)**.

Note: *If the warning lamp illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, gently apply the brakes to stop the vehicle, as soon as safety permits. Check and top up the fluid level, if necessary.*

With the vehicle on level ground, check the fluid level at least every week. Check more frequently in high mileage or arduous operating conditions.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017



To check the brake fluid level, remove the relevant under-bonnet cover. See **336, FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS** and **327, UNDER-BONNET COVERS REMOVAL**. Check the brake fluid reservoir level. The level should be between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.

Note: *The fluid level may drop slightly during normal use, as a result of brake pad wear. The fluid level should not be allowed to drop below the* ***MIN*** *mark.*

TOPPING UP THE BRAKE FLUID

Brake fluid will damage painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately, and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

Only use new fluid from an airtight container. Fluid from open containers, or fluid previously bled from the system, will have absorbed moisture. Contaminated fluid will adversely affect performance, and must not be used.

1. Clean the filler cap before removing, to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
2. Remove the filler cap.
3. Top up the reservoir to the **MAX** mark using the approved brake fluid. See **389, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.
4. Replace the cap and reservoir cover.

CHECKING THE WASHER FLUID LEVEL

Some windscreen washer products are flammable, particularly if high or undiluted concentrations are exposed to sparking. Do not allow windscreen washer fluid to come into contact with exposed flames or sources of ignition, as this can cause a fire or explosion.

If the vehicle is operated in temperatures below 4°C, use a windscreen washer fluid with frost protection. In cold weather, failure to use a windscreen washer fluid with frost protection could result in impaired vision and increase the risk of a vehicle crash.

Do not use an antifreeze or a vinegar and water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze damages painted surfaces, while vinegar can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Body panels may suffer discolouration as a result of windscreen washer fluid spillage. Take care to avoid spillage, particularly if an undiluted or high concentration is being used. If spillage occurs, wash the affected area immediately with water.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Fluid level checks

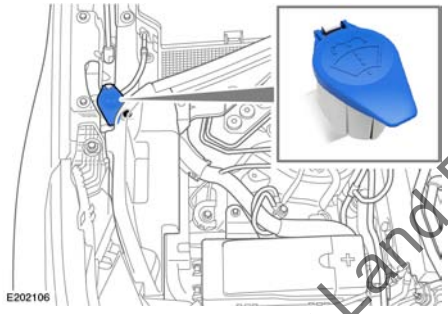
Only use approved windscreen washer fluid.

The washer fluid reservoir supplies the windscreen, rear screen and headlight washer jets.

Check and top up the reservoir level at least every week. Always top up with screen washer fluid to prevent freezing.

Operate the washer controls periodically to check that the nozzles are clear and properly directed.

TOPPING UP THE WASHER FLUID



To top up the washer fluid reservoir, remove the relevant filler cap. The washer fluid reservoir is located under-bonnet on the right side of the vehicle. See **336, FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS**

The washer fluid reservoir supplies the windscreen, rear screen and headlight washer jets.

Check and top up the reservoir level at least every week. Always top up with screen washer fluid to prevent freezing.

Operate the washer buttons periodically to check that the nozzles are clear and properly directed.

1. Clean the filler cap before removing, to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
2. Remove the filler cap.
3. Top up the reservoir until the fluid is visible in the filler neck.
4. Replace the filler cap.

Cold climate vehicles also feature a supplemental washer reservoir. The same care points, described above, should be applied to vehicles fitted with a supplemental washer reservoir.

Note: *On vehicles fitted with a supplemental washer reservoir, always check and top up the main reservoir first.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

BATTERY WARNING SYMBOLS



Do not allow open flames or other sources of ignition near the battery, as the battery may emit explosive gases.



Make sure, when working near or handling the battery, suitable eye protection is worn, to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



To prevent risk of injury, do not allow children near the battery.



Be aware that the battery may emit explosive gases.



The battery contains acid which is extremely corrosive and toxic.



Consult the Owner's Handbook for information before handling the battery.

BATTERY CARE

If battery electrolyte comes into contact with eyes, skin, or clothes, remove the affected clothing and flush the skin and eyes with of water. Seek medical assistance immediately.

If swallowed, battery electrolyte can be fatal. Seek medical assistance immediately.

The cell plugs and vent pipe must be in place at all times when the battery is connected to the vehicle. Make sure that the vent pipe is clear of obstructions and not kinked. Failure to do so may cause a pressure build-up in the battery, potentially resulting in an explosion. An explosion may cause serious injury or death.

Do not expose the battery to an open flame or spark as the battery produces explosive, flammable gas.

Never jump start, boost or charge, or try to start a vehicle with a frozen battery. Doing so may result an explosion.

Remove all metal jewellery before working on, or near, the battery. Never allow metal objects or vehicle components to come into contact with the battery terminals. Metal objects can cause sparks or short circuits, potentially resulting in an explosion.

Do not allow the battery posts or terminals to come into contact with skin. The posts and terminals contain lead and lead compounds, which are toxic. Always wash hands thoroughly after handling the battery.

An Absorbed Glass Matt (AGM) battery is fitted to the vehicle.

AGM batteries are sealed for life and require no maintenance. Do not attempt to open or remove the top from an AGM battery.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Vehicle battery

CONNECTING JUMP LEADS

Remove all metal jewellery before working on, or near, a battery or boost terminals. Never allow metal objects or vehicle components to come into contact with the battery or boost terminals. Metal objects can cause sparks or short circuits potentially resulting in an explosion.

Do not allow the battery posts or terminals to come into contact with skin. Battery posts and terminals contain lead and lead compounds, which are toxic. Always wash hands thoroughly after handling the battery.

Do not expose any battery to an open flame or spark, as the battery produces explosive, flammable gas.

Never jump start, charge, or try to start a vehicle with a frozen battery. Doing so may result in an explosion.

Rotating parts of the engine can cause serious injury. Take extreme care when working near rotating parts of the engine.

Before attempting to start the vehicle, make sure that the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied, or suitably chock the wheels. Make sure that Park (P) is selected.

Suitable eye protection must be worn when working in the area of a battery.

During normal use, batteries emit explosive gas sufficient to cause severe explosions and capable of causing serious injury. Keep sparks and open flames away from the battery.

Do not connect the jump leads to any battery terminal on the vehicle. Doing so may cause a spark, which may result in an explosion. The charging system may also be damaged.

Make sure there is no physical contact between the donor and disabled vehicles, other than the jump leads.

Make sure that any battery or starting aid is a 12-volt device.

Disconnect the jump leads before operating any electrical equipment.

Note: *Before connecting the jump leads to the disabled vehicle's boost point terminals, make sure the donor vehicle's boost point connections are correct. Also make sure that all electrical equipment has been switched off.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017



Open the bonnet and locate the engine compartment front fuse box. See **350, FUSE BOX LOCATIONS**.

1. Release the boost terminal lid, located on the end of the engine compartment fuse box.
2. Release the boost terminal cover, and set aside.

The following procedure should be used to connect and disconnect the jump leads:

1. Connect one end of the positive (red) jump lead to the positive boost terminal on the donor vehicle.

   Note: *Refer to the donor vehicle's Owner's Handbook for the recommended boost terminal location.*
2. Connect the other end of the positive (red) jump lead to the disabled vehicle's positive boost point terminal.
3. Connect one end of the negative (black) jump lead to the negative boost terminal on the donor vehicle.

   Note: *Refer to the donor vehicle's Owner's Handbook for the recommended boost terminal location.*
4. Connect the other end of the negative (black) jump lead to the disabled vehicle's negative boost point terminal.

   Note: *Check that all cables are clear of any moving components and that all four connections are secure.*
5. Start the donor vehicle's engine. Allow it to idle for a few minutes.
6. Start the disabled vehicle's engine.

   Note: *Do not switch on any electrical circuits on the previously disabled vehicle until after the jump leads have been removed.*
7. Allow both vehicles to idle for a few minutes.
8. Switch off the donor vehicle.
9. Disconnect the negative (black) jump lead from the disabled vehicle.
10. Disconnect the negative (black) jump lead from the donor vehicle.
11. Disconnect the positive (red) jump lead from the disabled vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Vehicle battery

12. Disconnect the positive (red) jump lead from the donor vehicle.

Refit the positive boost point terminal access covers and close the bonnet.

CONNECTING A STARTING AID

To start the vehicle using a starting aid or a slave battery, follow the instructions in the sequence given:

1. Connect the positive (red) jump lead on the starting aid to the positive (+) boost point terminal on the vehicle.
2. Connect the negative (black) jump lead to the vehicle's negative (-) boost point terminal.
3. Switch on the starting aid.
4. Start the engine. Allow the engine to idle.
5. Disconnect the negative (black) jump lead from the vehicle's negative (-) boost point terminal.
6. Switch off the starting aid.
7. Disconnect the positive (red) jump lead from the vehicle's positive (+) boost point terminal.

REMOVING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

Battery disconnection, removal, and replacement should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

Special tools are required to refit the battery after removal. Battery removal and refit should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

CHARGING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

Battery disconnection, removal, and replacement should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

If the vehicle's battery should require charging, the battery must be removed from the vehicle. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

Used batteries must be disposed of correctly as batteries contain a number of harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from a retailer/authorised repairer or the local authority.

REPLACING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

Battery disconnection, removal, and replacement should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

If the vehicle's battery should require replacing, the battery must be removed from the vehicle. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer.

Used batteries must be disposed of correctly as batteries contain a number of harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from a retailer/authorised repairer or the local authority.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

EFFECTS OF DISCONNECTING

Disconnecting the battery can affect a number of vehicle systems, especially if there is insufficient battery power before disconnection. For example, the alarm may trigger, depending on its state, when the battery is disconnected. If the alarm does sound, use the smart key to disarm the security system. The windows may need recalibrating to operate correctly.

Note: *After reconnecting the battery, a number of systems may need to be re-set.*

BATTERY MONITORING SYSTEM

The Intelligent Power System Management (IPSM) continuously monitors the condition of the main vehicle battery. If excessive battery discharge occurs, the system begins to shut down non-essential electrical systems in order to protect the battery.

If the IPSM calculates that the battery's condition is not within the set parameters, there are two levels of action which can be taken. Both levels have an accompanying message on the touch screen, and in the case of the low battery warning, in the instrument panel.

- **Energy Management**: Is displayed on the instrument panel if the engine is not running and system features are causing excessive battery discharge. After 3 minutes, the IPSM begins shutting down the vehicle's systems. Normal system operation resumes when the engine is started.
- **Low Battery - Please Start Engine**: Is displayed on the touch screen and in the instrument panel, if the engine is not running. After 3 minutes, the IPSM begins shutting down the vehicle's systems. Normal system operation resumes when the engine is started.

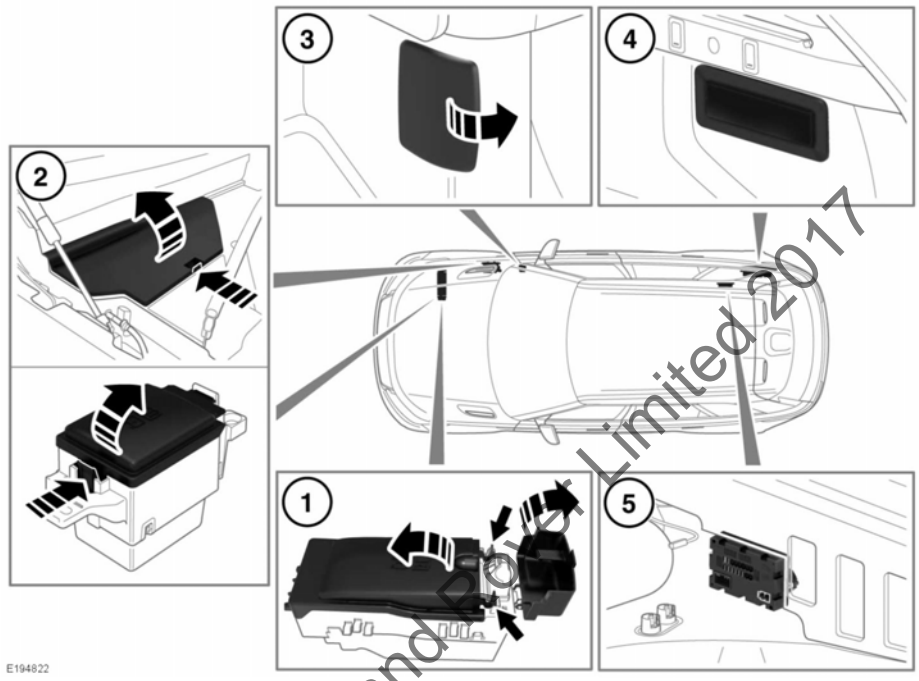
Only start the engine if it is safe to do so.

Note: *If the instrument panel displays* ***Low Battery - Please Start Engine****, drive the vehicle to allow the battery to recover to an acceptable level. Drive the vehicle for at least 30 minutes in temperatures above 0°C, or at least 60 minutes if the temperatures are below 0°C. If normal system operation is not resumed when the engine is switched back off, the battery may not have been sufficiently charged. If safe to do so, restart the engine. If problems still exist, contact a retailer/ authorised repairer.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Fuses

FUSE BOX LOCATIONS



When a fuse box lid is removed, take care to protect the box from moisture. Refit the lid at the earliest opportunity.

There are five fuse boxes fitted to the vehicle. Each fuse box contains fuses that protect different groups of circuits.

1. Engine compartment front fuse box.
2. Engine compartment rear fuse box.
3. Passenger compartment fuse box.
4. Loadspace upper fuse box.
5. Loadspace lower fuse box.

Engine compartment front fuse box

To access the fuses in the engine compartment front fuse box:

1. Move the positive boost terminal cover to one side.
2. Press and hold the fuse box cover securing clips, while lifting the lid.

Engine compartment rear fuse box

To access the fuses in the engine compartment rear fuse box:

1. Lightly push back and hold the rear securing clip.
2. While holding the clip, lift the lid to release it, then pull forward to remove. See **327, UNDER-BONNET COVERS REMOVAL**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Passenger compartment fuse box

The passenger compartment fuse box is located behind a trim panel at the base of the right-side A pillar. To access the fuses in the passenger compartment fuse box:

1. Unclip the rear edge of the trim panel using a suitable tool.
2. When released, pull the trim panel to remove.

   Note: *Before removing the trim panel, take note of its correct orientation to aid when refitting.*

Loadspace upper fuse box

The loadspace upper fuse box is located behind an access panel on the right-side of the loadspace. To access the fuses in the loadspace upper fuse box:

1. Pull on the rear edge of the access panel and remove.

   Note: *The loadspace upper fuse box also contains a number of spare fuses and a fuse removal tool. See* ***351, REPLACING A FUSE****.*

Loadspace lower fuse box

The loadspace lower fuse box is located beneath the loadspace floor. To access the fuses in the loadspace lower fuse box:

1. Remove the spare wheel and tool kit. See **378, WHEEL CHANGING**.

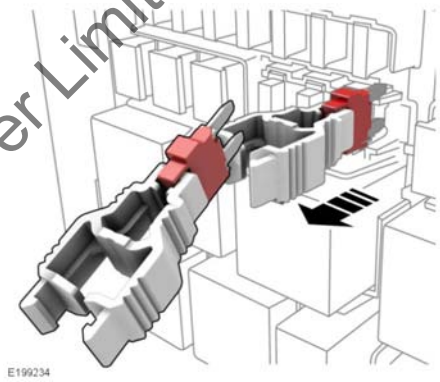
REPLACING A FUSE

Always switch off the ignition system and the affected electrical circuit before replacing a fuse. Failure to do so could cause damage to the vehicle.

Fit approved replacement fuses of the same rating and type, or fuses of a matching specification. Using an incorrect fuse may result in damage to the vehicle's electrical system and can result in a fire.

If the replacement fuse blows after fitment, the system should be checked by a retailer/authorised repairer. Further damage could be caused to the vehicle if ignored.

Note: *Relays and fuses not detailed in this Owner's Handbook should only be replaced by qualified persons.*



If an electrical system has stopped operating, the cause may be a blown fuse. The easiest way to check if a fuse has blown is to first remove it. To check for a blown fuse:

1. Identify the correct fuse by using the fuse box tables shown in this section of the Owner's Handbook.
2. Gain access to the appropriate fuse box. See **350, FUSE BOX LOCATIONS**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Fuses

3. Locate the correct fuse using the fuse box label. Depending on the fuse box, the label is located on the underside of the lid, or on the back of the trim panel.
4. Remove the fuse by pulling it straight out using the removal tool. See **350, FUSE BOX LOCATIONS**.
5. Check for a break in the wire within the fuse. If the wire within the fuse is broken, the fuse has blown and needs replacing. If the wire is still intact, consult a retailer/authorised repairer.
6. Refit or replace the fuse, as appropriate. Make sure the fuse is pushed fully into its correct position.

ENGINE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Front fuse box

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
1	5	Tan.	Left-side headlight motor.
2	5	Tan.	Headlights.
3	5	Tan.	Right-side headlight motor.
4	-	-	-
5	-	-	-
6	30	Green.	Headlight power wash.
7	25	Clear.	Left-side headlight.
8	25	Clear.	Right-side headlight.
9	10	Red.	Front fog lights.
10	15	Blue.	Intercooler water pump.

Rear fuse box

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
11	15	Blue.	Engine management system.
12	15	Blue.	Engine management system.
13	10	Red.	Gear selector. Fuel system. Engine management system (2.0L diesel, 2.0L petrol, 3.0L petrol).
	15	Blue.	Gear selector. Fuel system. Engine management system (3.0L diesel).

©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
14	10	Red.	Engine management system (2.0L petrol).
	15	Blue.	Engine management system (2.0L diesel, 3.0L diesel).
15	10	Red.	Engine cooling. Engine mounts. Engine management system (2.0L diesel, 2.0L petrol, 3.0L petrol).
	15	Blue.	Engine cooling. Engine mounts. Engine management system (3.0L diesel).
16	25	Clear.	Engine management system.
17	10	Red.	Exhaust sensors (2.0L petrol).
	20	Yellow.	Exhaust sensors (2.0L diesel).
18	20	Yellow.	Exhaust sensors (2.0L diesel, 3.0L petrol).
19	20	Yellow.	Exhaust sensors (3.0L petrol).
20	15	Blue.	Engine management system.
21	-	-	-
22	5	Tan.	Intercooler water pump.
23	5	Tan.	Engine management system. Starter motor. Electrical power management.
24	15	Blue.	Transmission control module.
25	30	Green.	Starter motor.
26	-	-	-
27	25	Clear.	Transfer box.
28	30	Green.	Fuel pump.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

PASSENGER COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
1	20	Yellow.	Sunroof.
2	5	Tan.	Brake pedal switch.
3	5	Tan.	Vehicle immobiliser.

Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
4	5	Tan.	Diagnostic socket.
5	5	Tan.	Battery back-up sounder.
6	20	Yellow.	Second row auxiliary power socket.
7	20	Yellow.	Cubby box auxiliary power socket.
8	20	Yellow.	Left-side front seat.
9	20	Yellow.	Right-side front seat.
10	30	Green.	Left-side front seat.
11	30	Green.	Right-side front seat.
12	30	Green.	Side steps.
13	20	Yellow.	Front auxiliary power socket.
14	20	Yellow.	Rear seat recline.
15	-	-	-
16	5	Tan.	Electrical supply.
17	5	Tan.	Door handle antennas.
18	15	Blue.	Horns.
19	-	-	-
20	20	Yellow.	Driver's heated seat. Driver's climate seat.
21	20	Yellow.	Front passenger's heated seat. Front passenger's climate seat.
22	25	Clear.	Right-side front door module.
23	25	Clear.	Left-side rear door module.
24	25	Clear.	Right-side rear door module.
25	25	Clear.	Left-side front door module.
26	-	-	-
27	5	Tan.	Climate system ioniser.
28	10	Red.	Steering angle sensor.
29	5	Tan.	Keyless entry.
30	20	Yellow.	Keyless entry.
31	-	-	-

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
32	5	Tan.	Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).
33	15	Blue.	Air Conditioning (A/C).
34	10	Red.	USB socket.
35	-	-	-

LOADSPACE FUSE BOX

Upper fuse box

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
1	20	Yellow.	Loadspace auxiliary power socket.
2	5	Tan.	Heated rear seats.
3	20	Yellow.	Left-side heated rear seat.
4	20	Yellow.	Right-side heated rear seat.
5	10	Red.	Dynamic Stability Control (DSC). Electronic differential.
6	10	Red.	Instrument panel.
7	5	Tan.	Electrical power management.
8	25	Clear.	Trailer socket.
9	10	Red.	Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF).
10	25	Clear.	DEF.
11	10	Red.	Rear-view mirror. Camera.
12	10	Red.	Entertainment system.
13	10	Red.	Heated steering wheel.
14	-	-	-
15	5	Tan.	Camera.
16	5	Tan.	Adaptive Surface Response (AdSR).
17	5	Tan.	Adaptive cruise control.
18	20	Yellow.	Trailer socket.
19	15	Blue.	AdSR.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
20	10	Red.	Telematics.
21	-	-	-
22	15	Blue.	Driver's door switches. Driver's seat. Driver's seat switches. Front passenger's seat.
23	10	Red.	Rear sun blind.
24	20	Yellow.	Rear auxiliary power socket.
25	-	-	-
26	15	Blue.	Rear wiper.
27	30	Green.	Electrically deployable tow bar. Trailer.
28	30	Green.	Fuel system.
29	30	Green.	Powered tailgate.
30	5	Tan.	Fuel pump (2.0L diesel, 3.0L diesel).

Lower fuse box

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
1	15	Blue.	Touch screen. Climate control panel.
2	10	Red.	Audio amplifier.
3	10	Red.	Gesture tailgate.
4	10	Red.	Navigation. Television tuner.
5	15	Blue.	Audio head unit.
6	15	Blue.	Portable media connector panel.
7	-	-	-
8	-	-	-
9	-	-	-
10	-	-	-
11	-	-	-
12	-	-	-
13	-	-	-

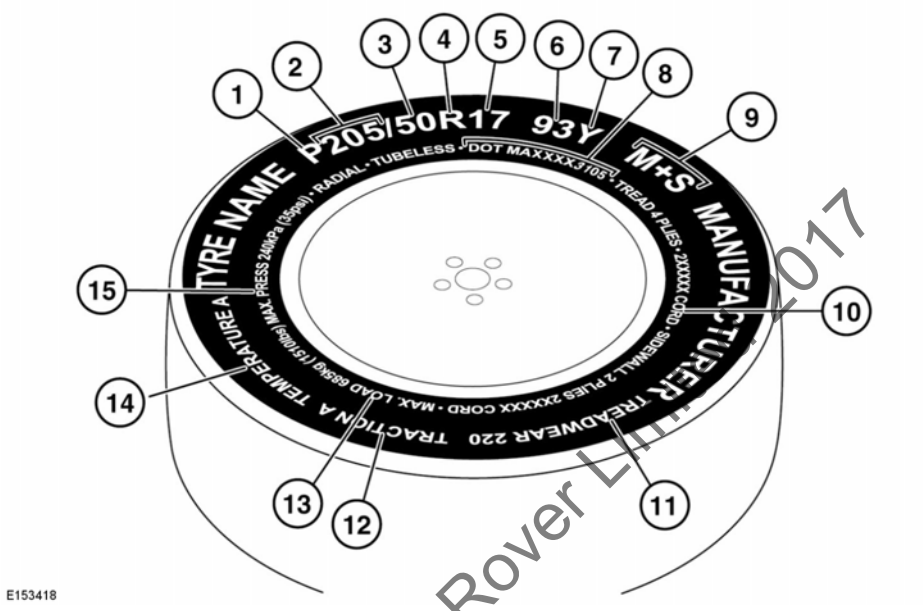
©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
14	-	-	-
15	15	Blue.	Heating and ventilation.
16	20	Yellow.	Auxiliary heater.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

TYRE MARKINGS



1. **P** indicates that the tyre is for passenger vehicle use. The index is not always shown.
2. The width of the tyre from sidewall edge to sidewall edge, in mm.
3. The aspect ratio, also known as the profile, gives the sidewall height as a percentage of the tread width. For example, if the tread width is 205 mm and the aspect ratio is 50, the sidewall height is 102 mm.
4. **R** indicates that the tyre is of radial ply construction.
5. The diameter of the wheel rim, given in inches.
6. The load index for the tyre. The index is not always shown. See **363, USING WINTER TYRES**.

⚠ **The load index and speed rating on all replacement tyres must be, at least, the same specification as the manufacturer's original equipment supplied with the vehicle, except for approved winter tyres, off-road tyres, and professional off-road tyres. If in doubt, consult a retailer/ authorised repairer.**

7. The speed rating denotes the maximum speed at which the tyre may be used for extended periods. See **359, SPEED RATING**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

8. Tyre manufacturing standard information, which can be used for tyre recalls and other checking processes. Most of this information relates to the manufacturer, place of manufacture, etc. The last four numbers are the date of manufacture. For example, if the number is 3106, the tyre was made in the 31st week of 2006.
9. **M+S** or **M/S** indicates that the tyre has been designed with some capability for mud and snow.
10. The number of plies in both the tread area and the sidewall area: Indicates how many layers of rubber-coated material make up the structure of the tyre. Information is also provided on the type of materials used.
11. Wear rate indicator: A tyre rated at 400, e.g., lasts longer than a tyre rated at 200.
12. The traction rating grades a tyre's performance when stopping on a wet road surface. The higher the grade, the better the braking performance. The grades, from highest to lowest are: **AA**, **A**, **B**, and **C**.

The traction grade assigned to the tyre is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

13. The maximum load which can be carried by the tyre.
14. Heat resistance grading: The tyre's resistance to heat is grade **A**, **B**, or **C**, with **A** indicating the greatest resistance to heat. The grading is provided for a correctly inflated tyre which is being used within its speed and loading limits.
15. The maximum inflation pressure for the tyre. The maximum inflation pressure should not be used for normal driving. See **362, AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS**.

Note: *Approved tyres are generally identified by a brand mark J, LR or J LR. Brand marking are specifically excluded for winter and POR tyres.*

SPEED RATING

Rating	Speed km/h (mph)
Q	160 (99)
R	170 (106)
S	180 (112)
T	190 (118)
U	200 (124)
H	210 (130)
V	240 (149)
W	270 (168)
Y	300 (186)

TYRE CARE

Do not drive the vehicle if a tyre is damaged, excessively worn, or incorrectly inflated.

Avoid contaminating the tyres with vehicle fluids, as they may cause damage to the tyre.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Tyres

Avoid spinning the wheels. The forces released can damage the structure of the tyre and cause it to fail.

If wheel spin is unavoidable due to a loss of traction, e.g., in deep snow, do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph).

Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the sidewall of the tyre.

Note: *Tyre condition should be checked after the vehicle has been used off-road. As soon as the vehicle returns to a normal, hard, road surface, stop and check for damage to the tyres.*

All of the vehicle's tyres, including the spare, should be checked regularly for damage, wear, and distortion. If in any doubt about the condition of a tyre, have it checked immediately by a tyre repair centre or a retailer/authorised repairer.

TYRE PRESSURES

All tyre pressures, including the spare, should be checked regularly using an accurate pressure gauge, when the tyres are cold.

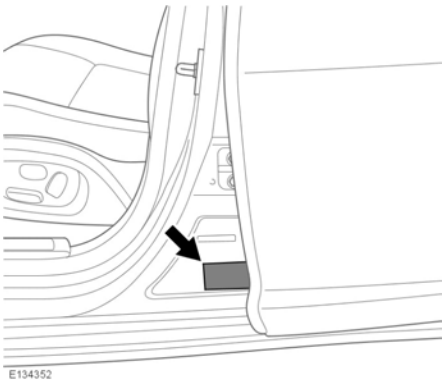
Pressure checks should be carried out only when the tyres are cold and the vehicle has been stationary for more than 3 hours. A hot tyre at, or below, the recommended cold inflation pressure is dangerously under-inflated.

Never drive the vehicle if the tyre pressures are incorrect. Under-inflation causes excessive flexing and uneven tyre wear. Over-inflation causes harsh ride, uneven tyre wear, and poor handling.

Do not drive the vehicle with a leaking tyre. Even if the tyre appears to be inflated, it could be dangerously under-inflated and will continue to deflate. Replace the tyre or contact an approved repairer.

Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Try to drive at reduced speed.

If the vehicle has been parked in strong sunlight, or used in high ambient temperatures, do not reduce the tyre pressures. Move the vehicle into the shade and allow the tyres to cool before rechecking the pressures.



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

The recommended tyre pressures are listed on a label, located on the driver's side B-pillar. Open the driver's door to access the tyre pressure label.

The loading of the vehicle should always be considered when checking and adjusting the tyre pressures.

Check the tyres, including the spare, for condition and pressure on a weekly basis and before long journeys.

If the tyre pressures are checked while the vehicle is inside a protected covered area, e.g., a garage, and subsequently driven in lower outdoor temperatures, tyre under-inflation could occur.

A slight pressure loss occurs naturally with time. If this exceeds 0.14 bar (2 psi, 14 kPa) per week, have the cause investigated and rectified by qualified personnel.

If it is necessary to check the tyre pressures when the tyres are warm, expect the pressures to have increased by up to 0.3 - 0.4 bar (4 - 6 psi, 30 - 40 kPa). Do not reduce the tyre pressures to the cold inflation pressure under these circumstances. Allow the tyres to cool fully before adjusting the pressures.

The following procedure should be used to check and adjust the tyre pressures:

Note: *Make sure that the tyre pressures are set for the correct vehicle load.*

To avoid damaging the valves, do not apply excessive force or sideways pressure on the gauge and/or inflator.

To avoid damage to the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) valves, it is recommended not to use rigid tyre inflation wands. This is to avoid the risk of excess leverage and sideways pressure on the valve.

1. Remove the valve cap.
2. Firmly attach a tyre pressure gauge and/or inflator to the valve.
3. Read the tyre pressure from the gauge and add air, if required.
4. If air is added to the tyre, remove the gauge and re-attach it before reading the pressure. Failure to do so may result in an inaccurate reading.
5. If the tyre pressure is too high, remove the gauge and press the centre of the valve to allow air out of the tyre. Refit the gauge to the valve and check the pressure.
6. Repeat the process, adding or removing air as required, until the correct tyre pressure is reached.
7. Refit the valve cap.

TYRE VALVES

Keep the tyre valve caps screwed down firmly to prevent water or dirt from entering the valve. Check the valves for leaks when checking the tyre pressures.

For TPMS tyre valves. See **366, TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)**.

Do not twist or bend the tyre valves when attaching a pressure hose or gauge, as damage may result.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Tyres

REPLACEMENT TYRES

Always fit replacement tyres of the same type, and wherever possible, of the same make and tread pattern.

The load and speed index ratings on all replacement tyres must be, at least, the same specification as the original equipment supplied by the vehicle manufacturer. If in doubt, consult a retailer/ authorised repairer.

Do not rotate the tyres around the vehicle.

If the use of tyres not recommended by the vehicle manufacturer is unavoidable, make sure to read and fully comply with the tyre manufacturer's instructions.

If lower speed-rated specialist tyres are fitted, e.g., winter tyres or off-road tyres, the vehicle must be driven within the speed limitations of the tyres. Consult a retailer/authorised repairer for further information. In markets that require a tyre's maximum speed label to be fitted, the tyre's maximum speed label should be placed within the driver's field of vision. Maximum speed labels can be obtained from the tyre retailer.

Tyre removal and fitting should be carried out by a retailer/authorised repairer.

Make sure that the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor is not damaged during a tyre change.

When the tread has worn down to approximately 2 mm, wear indicators start to appear at the surface of the tread pattern. This produces a continuous band of rubber across the tread, as a visual reminder.

Tyres should be replaced in sets of four. If this is not possible, replace the tyres in pairs, both front or both rear. When the tyres are replaced, the wheels should always be re-balanced and the alignment checked.

For the correct tyre specification and pressures. See **360, TYRE PRESSURES**. Alternatively, contact a retailer/authorised repairer for advice.

PRESSURE COMPENSATION FOR TEMPERATURE CHANGES

Daily ambient temperature variations may lead to intermittent tyre pressures warnings. This is normal and should not be considered as a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) system fault.

To mitigate this condition check and adjust the tyre pressure prior to vehicle use at the cold tyre condition.

Note: *Make sure that the correct tyre pressures are maintained when moving to areas of differing ambient temperature.*

AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS

In areas of extended high ambient temperature, vehicle tyres can be affected by a softening of the tyre's sidewall. If the vehicle is stationary for long periods, the effect is to slightly deform the tyre at the point where the tyre meets the standing surface. The tyre deformation described is known as a flat spot.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

A flat spot is normal tyre behaviour. However, when the vehicle is subsequently driven, vibration may be experienced from the flat spot. The condition steadily improves with extra mileage.

In order to minimise flat spotting when the vehicle is stationary for long periods, increase the tyre pressures to the maximum, as stated on the tyre's sidewall. The tyres must be returned to the specified running pressures before driving. See **360, TYRE PRESSURES**.

TYRE DEGRADATION

Tyres degrade over time, due to the effects of ultraviolet light, extreme temperatures, high loads, and environmental conditions. It is recommended that tyres are replaced at least every 6 years from the date of manufacture. However the tyres may require replacement more frequently.

USING WINTER TYRES

Note: ***M+S*** *(mud and snow) tyres have a level of winter performance.*
The ***M+S*** *marking on the tyre's sidewall indicates an all-season tyre designed for use all year round, including in cold temperatures, snow, and ice.*

In many countries, legislation exists that requires the use of winter tyres during specified periods of the year.

Note: *A dedicated winter tyre often has a lower speed rating than the original equipment tyre. The vehicle must, therefore, be driven within the speed limitation of the tyre. Consult a retailer/ authorised repairer for further information. In markets that require a tyre's maximum speed label to be fitted, the tyre's maximum speed label should be placed within the driver's field of vision. Maximum speed labels can be obtained from the tyre retailer.*



The symbol identifies dedicated winter tyres, which can be fitted if optimum winter traction is required, or the vehicle is to be used in more extreme winter conditions.

The tyre pressures indicated on the tyre information label are for use in all conditions on the original equipment tyres. If a reduced speed-rating tyre is fitted, the recommended pressures are only suitable up to the maximum speed indicated by the tyre speed rating and associated warning sticker with normal loading. Vehicle speed should be restricted to below 160 km/h (100 mph) when heavily loaded.

Winter tyres must be fitted to all four wheels.

For optimum traction, the tyres should be run-in for at least 160 km on dry roads, before driving on snow or ice.

Use of dedicated winter tyres may require a change of wheel size, depending on the original choice of wheel. All four wheels must be changed.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

If fitted with standard rubber valves, the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) warning lamp flashes for 75 seconds and then remains illuminated. The instrument panel also displays **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM FAULT**.

When the original wheels and tyres are refitted, the vehicle needs to travel a short distance to reset the TPMS and extinguish the warning lamp.

Approved winter tyres			
Wheel size	**Tyre size**	**Brand**	**Pattern**
18 in wheels	235/65 R18 110H	Continental.	Cross Contact Winter.
	235/65 R18 110H	Pirelli.	Scorpion Winter.
	255/60 R18 112H	Continental.	Winter Contact TS 850 P SUV.
	255/60 R18 112H	Pirelli.	Scorpion Winter.
	255/60 R18 112V	Michelin.	Latitude Alpin 2.
	255/60 R18 112T	Nokian.	Hakkapeliitta 8 SUV.
19 in wheels	255/55 R19 111V	Continental.	Winter Contact TS 850 P SUV.
	255/55 R19 111V	Pirelli.	Scorpion Winter.
	255/55 R19 111V	Michelin.	Latitude Alpin 2.
	255/55 R19 111T	Continental.	Conti Viking Contact 6
	255/55 R19 111T	Nokian.	Hakkapeliitta 8 SUV.
20 in wheels	255/50 R20 109V	Continental.	Winter Contact TS 850 P SUV.
	255/50 R20 109V	Pirelli.	Scorpion Winter.

Note: *Studded tyres are market dependent. If in doubt, or for further information, contact a retailer/authorised repairer. Alternatively, visit: www.ownerinfo.landrover.com.*

USING SNOW CHAINS

⚠ **Only use traction devices in heavy snow conditions, on compacted snow.**

⚠ **Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) must be switched off when using traction devices.**

⚠ **Never exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) when traction devices are fitted.**

⚠ **Never fit traction devices to a temporary-use spare wheel.**

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Traction devices approved by the vehicle manufacturer may be used to improve traction in heavy snow conditions, on compacted snow.

Traction devices should not be used in off-road conditions where there is no compacted snow.

If it becomes necessary to fit traction devices, the following points must be observed:

- Only vehicle manufacturer approved traction devices should be used on the vehicle. Only vehicle manufacturer approved traction devices have been tested to make sure that the devices do not cause damage to the vehicle. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer for information.
- The wheels and tyres fitted to the vehicle must conform to the specifications of the vehicle manufacturer's original equipment. This helps to enhance the performance of the traction devices. See **358, TYRE MARKINGS**.
- Full chain traction devices can be fitted to the rear wheels of vehicles fitted with 18, 19 and 20 in diameter wheels.
- Do not fit a traction device to a temporary-use spare wheel.
- Always read, understand, and follow the traction device manufacturer's instructions. Pay particular attention to the maximum speed and fitting instructions.
- Fit traction devices in pairs on the same axle.
- Remove the traction devices as soon as the conditions allow to avoid tyre and/or vehicle damage.

Contact a retailer/authorised repairer for details and availability of approved snow chains.

Note: *When using snow chains, select rain/ice/snow driving mode and switch DSC off. See* ***181, GRASS/GRAVEL/SNOW*** *and* ***155, SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL OFF****.*

TYRE DECLARATION (India only)

All imported tyres meet the requirements of Bureau of India Standards (BIS) and comply with the requirements under Central Motor Vehicle Rules (CMVR) 1989. The tyres are the same as those tyres supplied as original equipment for Land Rover models which are fully Type Approved for the Indian market.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) provides a low pressure warning and does not re-inflate the tyres. Tyre pressures should be checked regularly, using an accurate pressure gauge when the tyres are cold.

The TPMS cannot register damage to a tyre. Regularly check the condition of the tyres, especially if the vehicle is driven off-road.

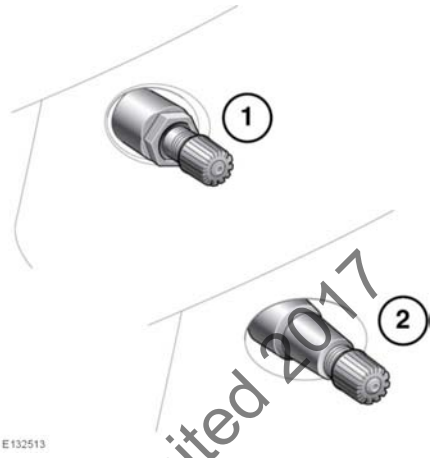
When inflating tyres, care should be taken to avoid bending or damaging the TPMS valves. Always make sure that the inflation head is correctly aligned to the valve stem.

To avoid damage to the TPMS valves, it is recommended not to use rigid tyre inflation wands. This is to avoid the risk of excess leverage and sideways pressure on the valve.

Note: *Non-approved accessories may interfere with the system. If this occurs,* ***TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING FAULT*** *is displayed in the instrument panel.*

Note: *Different types of tyres may affect the performance of the TPMS. Always replace the tyres in accordance with recommendations.*

The TPMS constantly monitors the tyre pressure in each wheel. Temporary-use spare wheels are not monitored.



Wheels fitted with a TPMS can be visually identified by the external metal lock nut and valve (**1**). All Jaguar Land Rover non-TPMS wheels have a rubber valve fitted (**2**).

Note: *At each tyre change, a special service kit is required for each TPMS valve.*

The tyre pressures should be checked regularly when the tyres are cold, and adjusted as necessary. The presence of a TPMS does not remove the need to check the tyre pressures as part of a vehicle safety check.

The tyre pressure warning lamp illuminates when one or more of the tyres are significantly under-inflated. Stop and check the tyres as soon as possible. Inflate the tyres to the recommended pressure for the vehicle's loading condition. See **78, TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (YELLOW)** and **360, TYRE PRESSURES**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

The TPMS also monitors the full size spare tyre pressure. If the pressure for the spare tyre is incorrect, the instrument panel displays a message **CHECK SPARE TYRE PRESSURE**. The TPMS warning lamp illuminates.

TYRE PRESSURE CHECK

The instrument panel can be used to display the vehicle's tyre pressures. The tyre pressure figures can be accessed via the **Vehicle Info** menu. For more information. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: *The tyre pressure units can be configured to display as either bar, psi, or kPa via the* ***Vehicle Info*** *and the* ***Tyre Information*** *menus.*

When selected, the last known tyre pressures are displayed, alongside the recommended cold tyre pressures in brackets.

Note: *If any of the wheels or tyres have been removed, the displayed tyre pressures may not be valid. Drive the vehicle for at least 15 minutes in order to re-calibrate the system.*

RECOMMENDED TYRE PRESSURE LOOK-UP

The instrument panel can be used to display the recommended cold tyre pressures for the vehicle. The tyre pressure look-up table can be accessed via the **Vehicle Info** and the **Tyre Information** menus. For more information. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Depending on the specification of the vehicle, a number of different values may be displayed to reflect different driving conditions, e.g., high speed driving or for a heavily laden vehicle.

VEHICLE LOADING

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) can be adjusted between **Normal** (light) load or **Heavy** load, via the instrument panel menus: **Vehicle Info**, **Tyre Information**, and **TPM Load Setting**. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: *The ignition must be switched on, without the engine running.*

If the tyre pressures are adjusted to the **Normal** (light) load setting, the TPMS should be adjusted to suit the vehicle's load and associated recommended tyre pressures.

Every time the ignition is switched on, a TPMS message is displayed in the instrument panel, indicating which load setting is being monitored.

Note: *The TPMS setting must correspond with the vehicle's current load.*

The **Normal** (light) load setting should be used during normal use of the vehicle, e.g., up to three occupants.

The **Heavy** load setting should be used when the vehicle's load exceeds normal use, and up to the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), e.g., more than three occupants.

Note: *Make sure that the tyre pressures are correct for the vehicle's current load. See* ***360, TYRE PRESSURES****.*

The instrument panel menus, **Vehicle Info** and **Tyre Pressures**, can be used to check the vehicle's current tyre pressures.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)

FULL SIZE SPARE WHEEL AND TYRE CHANGE

The system automatically recognises any changes in wheel positions. The vehicle must be stationary for 15 minutes during the wheel and tyre change, to make sure that the system can detect the change. After driving above 25 km/h (16 mph), any deflation warning should clear within approximately 5 minutes.

Note: *Re-inflate the tyre, within close proximity of the vehicle, following repairs to a full size spare wheel fitted with tyre pressure monitoring. The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) warning lamp may illuminate if tyre inflation is not carried out within close proximity of the vehicle. Should this occur, re-inflate the tyre within 5 m of the vehicle.*

TEMPORARY-USE SPARE WHEEL AND TYRE CHANGE

If the temporary-use spare wheel is fitted, the system automatically recognises the change in wheel positions. After driving for approximately 10 minutes above 25 km/h (16 mph), the message **FRONT[REAR] RIGHT[LEFT] TYRE PRESSURE NOT MONITORED** is displayed. The message is accompanied by illumination of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) warning lamp.

The warning lamp first flashes and then illuminates continuously. Extended use of the temporary-use spare wheel triggers the message **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM FAULT**.

The TPMS display sequence activates at every ignition cycle, until the temporary spare wheel is replaced by a full-size road wheel with a TPMS sensor fitted.

Note: *If in use, always replace the temporary spare wheel before having a TPMS fault investigated.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

TYRE REPAIR SYSTEM

If in any doubt regarding the ability to carry out the instructions, or If you cannot comply with the warnings seek assistance. See 412, ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE.

Note: *Vehicles supplied with a tyre repair system may not have a jack and wrench tool fitted as standard equipment.*



1. Compressor.
2. Sealant bottle.
3. Locking wheel nut adaptor.

A tyre repair system is supplied for vehicles without a spare wheel and stored under the loadspace floor panel. See **378, WHEEL CHANGING**.

The tyre repair system can be used to repair one punctured tyre. Make sure to read the complete tyre repair system section of this handbook before attempting to repair a tyre.

The tyre repair system seals most punctures with a maximum diameter of 6 mm, if the puncture is within the tread area (**A**). See **369, TYRE REPAIR SYSTEM SAFETY INFORMATION**.

Note: *The sealant used in the tyre repair system has a shelf life. The expiry date is shown on the tyre sealant bottle. Make sure that the container is replaced before the expiry date. Also make sure that the sealant is replaced after each use.*

TYRE REPAIR SYSTEM SAFETY INFORMATION

Some tyre damage may only be partially sealed, or may not seal at all, depending on the amount and type of damage. Any loss of tyre pressure can seriously affect vehicle safety.

Do not use the tyre repair system if the tyre has been damaged by driving while under-inflated.

Only use the tyre repair system to seal damage located within the tyre tread area (A).

Do not use the tyre repair system to seal damage to the tyre's sidewall.

Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) when a repaired tyre is fitted to the vehicle.

The maximum distance that should be driven when a repaired tyre is fitted is 200 km.

When a repaired tyre is fitted, drive with caution and avoid sudden braking or steering manoeuvres.

Only use the tyre repair system for the vehicle with which it was supplied.

Do not use the tyre repair system for any other purpose than tyre repair.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Tyre repair system

Never leave the tyre repair system unattended when in use.

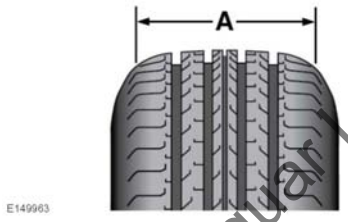
Only use the tyre repair system within the -30°C to +70°C temperature range.

Always keep children and animals at a safe distance from the tyre repair system when in use.

Do not stand directly beside the compressor when it is operating.

Check the tyre's sidewall before inflating the tyre. If any cracks, damage, or deformities are apparent, do not inflate the tyre.

Watch the tyre's sidewall during inflation. If any cracks, bumps, or similar damage or deformities appear, switch off the compressor and deflate the tyre. Do not continue to use the tyre.



A: Tyre tread area.

USING THE TYRE REPAIR SYSTEM

Avoid skin contact with the sealant as it contains natural rubber latex.

Before attempting a tyre repair, make sure that the vehicle is parked safely, as far away from passing traffic as possible.

Make sure that the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied and Park (**P**) is engaged.

Do not attempt to remove foreign objects, such as nails, screws, etc., from the tyre.

Always run the engine when using the compressor, unless the vehicle is in an enclosed or poorly ventilated space, which may cause asphyxiation.

To prevent overheating, do not operate the compressor continuously for longer than 10 minutes.

Note: *All vehicle drivers and occupants should be made aware that a temporary repair has been made to a tyre fitted to the vehicle. All vehicle drivers and occupants should also be made aware of the special driving conditions imposed when using a repaired tyre.*

REPAIR PROCEDURE

Before attempting to repair a tyre, make sure that the gear selector is in the park (P) position and the engine is switched off. Make sure that the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied. Switch on the hazard warning lights and remove the smart key from the vehicle.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

⚠ **Check the tyre's sidewall before inflating the tyre. If there are any cracks, bumps, or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tyre. Do not stand directly beside the tyre while the compressor is pumping. Watch the tyre's sidewall. If any cracks, bumps, or similar damage appear, switch off the compressor. Let the air out of the tyre via the pressure relief valve. Do not continue to use the tyre.**

⚠ **If the tyre's inflation pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi, 180 kPa) within 7 minutes, the tyre may have suffered excessive damage. A temporary repair is not possible. The vehicle should not be driven until the tyre has been replaced.**

Note: *Make sure the vehicle is not in an enclosed area.*

1. Read the instructions carefully. If in doubt regarding the ability to carry out the instructions, or if you cannot comply with the warnings, seek assistance. See **412, ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE**.
2. Open the tyre repair system and peel off the warning label. Attach the label to the windscreen in a visible location, but not obstructing the driver's field of vision.

   Note: *It is mandatory to respect the speed and mileage recommendations, as stated on the warning label, for a repaired tyre.*
3. Uncoil the inflation hose and the compressor's power cable. Unscrew the orange cap from the sealant bottle receiver and the sealant bottle cap. Screw the sealant bottle into the receiver clockwise until it is completely tight. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tyre and the protective cap from the inflation hose. Make sure that the valve cap is stored in a known location for future use. Connect the inflation hose to the tyre valve. Make sure that the hose is screwed fully on to the tyre valve.

   Note: *Do not pierce the bottle before fitting to the receiver. Screwing the bottle onto the receiver pierces the bottle's seal. Once the sealant bottle has been fitted onto the receiver, a ratchet prevents it from being removed.*
4. Make sure that the compressor switch is in the off (**0**) position. Insert the power cable connector into a power socket marked 12V. Start the engine. See **7, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

   Note: *The cigar lighter socket should not be used for this purpose.*
5. Switch the compressor switch to the (**I**) position. Run the compressor for no longer than 10 minutes.

   Note: *During tyre inflation, sealant might leak from the damaged tyre, which is normal. The leaking might happen when damage portion is at a lower position. Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the sidewall of the tyre.*
6. Switch off the compressor. Check the inflation pressure on the gauge provided in the compressor.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Tyre repair system

Check the pressure. If it is less than 1.8 bar (27 psi, 180 kPa), do not attempt to drive. Seek assistance. If pressure is greater than 1.8 bar (27 psi, 180 kPa), prepare the vehicle for driving.

7. Unscrew the inflation hose. Replace the hose cap and securely store the tyre repair system in the boot for easy access during the next inflation check.

   Note: *The vehicle should be driven as soon as possible and within 1 minute of completing the tyre pressure check.*

8. Drive the vehicle 3 to 10 km (2 to 6 miles) or for 10 minutes. Do not exceed 80 kph (50 mph).

9. On completion of the drive, stop the vehicle. Connect the compressor's inflation hose to the tyre valve and check the tyre pressure. If the measured tyre pressure is less than 1.3 bar (19 psi, 130 kPa), do not attempt to drive the vehicle. Seek assistance.
   Or.
   If the measured tyre pressure is greater than 1.3 bar (19 psi, 130 kPa) and less than 2.2 bar (32 psi, 220 kPa), switch on the compressor. Inflate to a minimum of 2.2 bar and not exceeding the maximum pressure stated on the tyre sidewall for a maximum of 10 minutes. If a tyre pressure of 2.2 bar (32 psi, 220 kPa), is not achieved, seek assistance. If the pressure is greater than 2.2 bar (32 psi, 220 kPa), the vehicle may be driven 3 to 10 km (2 to 6 miles) or for 10 minutes without exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph). On completion of the drive, stop the vehicle. Connect the compressor's inflation hose to the tyre valve and check the tyre pressure.
   If the measured tyre pressure is less than 2.2 bar (32 psi, 220 kPa), do not attempt to drive. Seek assistance.
   If the measured tyre pressure is greater than 2.2 bar (32 psi, 220 kPa), the vehicle may be driven for up to 200 km (120 miles) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). It is recommended to drive to the nearest tyre repair centre or retailer/authorised repairer for a replacement tyre to be fitted. Be sure to make the repair centre aware that the tyre repair kit has been used, before the tyre is removed.

10. The tyre inflation hose, the receiver, and the sealant bottle must be replaced once a new tyre has been fitted, and stored securely in the vehicle.

    Note: *When pumping the sealant through the tyre valve, sealant may leak from the puncture location. The pressure may rise up to 6 bar (87 psi). The pressure drops again after approximately 30 seconds.*

    Remove any excess sealant immediately. Failure to do so may result in a surface residue that is difficult to remove.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

CHECKING THE TYRE PRESSURE AFTER A REPAIR

When driving the vehicle, if vibrations, abnormal steering, or noises are experienced, reduce speed immediately. Drive with extreme caution, at reduced speed, to the first safe place to stop the vehicle. Visually examine the tyre and check its pressure. If there are any signs of damage or deformity to the tyre, or the tyre pressure is below 1.3 bar (19 psi, 130 kPa), do not continue driving.

Consult a tyre repair centre or a retailer/authorised repairer for advice concerning the replacement of a tyre after using a tyre repair system.



Only sealant bottles which are completely empty should be disposed of with normal household waste. Sealant bottles and the tyre inflation hose which contain some sealant, should be disposed of by a tyre specialist or a retailer/ authorised repairer, in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Wheel changing

WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY

Before raising the vehicle, or changing a wheel, make sure to read and comply with the following warnings:

Note: *If in any doubt regarding the ability to carry out the instructions, or comply with warnings, seek assistance.*

Always find a safe place to stop, off the carriageway and away from traffic.
Switch on the hazard warning lights to alert all traffic of the obstruction.
Apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) and engage Park (P). Switch the engine off and remove the smart key from the vehicle. Failure to do so can result in unexpected movement of the vehicle, causing serious injury or death.

Make sure that all passengers, and animals are out of the vehicle and in a safe place away from the carriageway.

If available, place a warning triangle at a suitable distance behind the vehicle, facing toward oncoming traffic.

Disconnect any trailer or caravan from the vehicle.

Make sure that the vehicle and jack are both on firm, level ground. Do not jack the vehicle if it is over a metal grating or manhole cover.
Make sure that the front wheels are in the straight ahead position and engage the steering lock.

Always use the complete jacking lever assembly throughout the tyre changing process, to minimise any chance of accidental injury.
Position the jack from the side of the vehicle, in line with the appropriate jacking point.
Never place anything between the jack and the ground, or between the jack and the vehicle.
Do not attempt to raise the vehicle, unless the jack head is fully engaged in the jacking point.
Only jack the vehicle using the approved jacking points.

WARNING - THAT NO PERSON SHOULD PLACE ANY PORTION OF THEIR BODY UNDER A VEHICLE THAT IS SUPPORTED BY A JACK.

The jack is designed for wheel changing only.
Never work beneath the vehicle with the jack as the only means of support. Always use correctly rated vehicle support stands before putting any part of the body beneath the vehicle.

When jacking the vehicle, make sure that all precautions are taken to prevent vehicle movement. As an additional precaution, it is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked.

Always chock the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed, using the wheel chock supplied in the tool kit.
Chock the front of a front wheel, or the rear of a rear wheel.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

If jacking the vehicle on a slight slope is unavoidable, place the chocks on the downhill side of the two opposite wheels. An additional chock is needed.

Take care when loosening the wheel nuts. The wheel brace may slip off if not properly attached, and the wheel nuts may give way suddenly. Either unexpected movement may cause an injury.

Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported only by a jack.

Remove the spare wheel before jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilising the vehicle when raised.
Take care when lifting the spare wheel and removing the punctured wheel. The wheels are heavy and can cause injuries if not handled correctly.
After wheel changing, always secure the tools, jack, and the replaced wheel in the correct storage positions. Such objects, if not properly stored, can become propelled objects in a crash or rollover, potentially causing injury or death.

For vehicles fitted with air suspension and side steps, select off-road height before jacking the vehicle. See 142, OFF-ROAD HEIGHT.

REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL

Remove the spare wheel before jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilising the vehicle when raised.

Wheels are heavy and, if handled incorrectly, may cause injury. Use extreme caution when lifting, lowering, and manoeuvring the wheels.

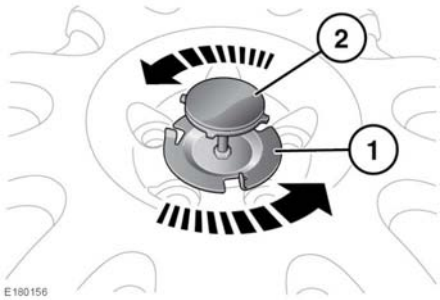
Do not store the wheel while the vehicle is raised on the jack.

Always secure the spare wheel, or the removed wheel, in the correct position, using the securing bolt.

After wheel changing, always secure the tools, jack, and the replaced wheel in the correct storage positions. Such objects, if not properly stored, can become propelled objects in a crash or rollover, potentially causing injury or death.

The spare wheel is located under the loadspace floor panel.

Lift the loadspace floor panel. Secure the loadspace panel in the upright position using the strap.



Note: *Before removing the spare wheel, take note of its storage position. The wheel to be changed must be correctly stored and secured in its place.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Wheel changing

Always remove the spare wheel before jacking the vehicle. Raise and secure the loadspace floor panel:

1. Continually rotate the centre clamp plate on the spare wheel counter-clockwise to release.
2. Continually rotate the top plate of the centre bolt counter-clockwise to completely remove.

Reverse the whole procedure to refit.

IMPORTANT – USE OF SPARE TYRE

Adhere to the instructions on the temporary-use spare wheel warning label, affixed to the wheel. Failure to do so may cause vehicle instability and/or tyre failure.

Where fitted, the temporary-use spare wheel is for temporary use only.

Drive with caution while the temporary-use spare wheel is fitted.

Make sure that an original size wheel and tyre are fitted as soon as possible.

Do not fit more than one temporary-use spare wheel at any one time.

Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) while the temporary-use spare wheel is fitted.

The temporary-use spare wheel must be inflated to 4.2 bar (60psi, 420 kPa) and cannot be repaired.

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) must be switched on while the temporary-use spare wheel is in use.

TracDSC must be switched off while the temporary-use spare wheel is in use.

Traction devices, such as snow chains, cannot be used with a temporary-use spare wheel.

Note: *Before removing the spare wheel, take note of its storage position. The wheel to be changed must be correctly stored and secured in its place.*

USING WHEEL CHOCKS

Note: *Not all vehicles have wheel chocks supplied as part of the tool kit. Wheel chocks are a useful addition to a vehicle's tool kit.*
Note the advice above when using wheel chocks.

Always chock the wheels using suitable wheel chocks. Chock the front of a front wheel or the rear of a rear wheel. Make sure that the wheel chock is fully engaged with the tyre and the road surface.

Before raising the vehicle, the wheel diagonally opposite the one to be removed must be chocked.

If jacking the vehicle on a slight slope is unavoidable, place the chocks on the downhill side of the two opposite wheels. An extra chock is needed.

A wheel chock is stored in the vehicle's spare wheel tool kit.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2011

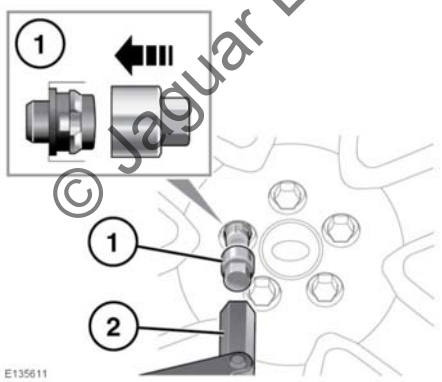
LOCKING WHEEL NUTS

Note: *Not all vehicles have locking wheel nuts as standard parts.*

The locking wheel nut adaptor must be correctly aligned and fully fitted to the locking wheel nut before usage. Incorrect fitment can result in permanent damage to the locking wheel nut adaptor. Incorrect fitment can cause the locking wheel nut's anti-tamper device to rotate, preventing removal of the locking wheel nut. If in doubt, contact a retailer/authorised repairer.

Do not use air tools or power tools to remove or to refit the locking wheel nut. Doing so may damage the locking wheel nut or the locking wheel nut adaptor.

Note: *A code number is stamped onto the underside of the locking wheel nut adaptor. The number should be recorded and kept in a safe place. If a replacement locking wheel nut adaptor is required, quote this code number.*



To release the locking wheel nut:

1. Fit the locking wheel nut adaptor onto the locking wheel nut. Make sure that the locking wheel nut adaptor fully engages.
2. Locate the wheel brace over the locking wheel nut adaptor. Unscrew the wheel nut half a turn counter-clockwise.
3. After raising the vehicle on the jack, remove the locking wheel nut.

Locking wheel nuts can be removed and fitted using only the special locking wheel nut adaptor provided. See **378, WHEEL CHANGING**.

Note: *When the vehicle is first supplied, the locking wheel nut adaptor may be stored in the glovebox. If this is the case, the locking wheel nut adaptor must be moved to its correct storage position in the loadspace, as soon as possible. See* ***378, WHEEL CHANGING***.

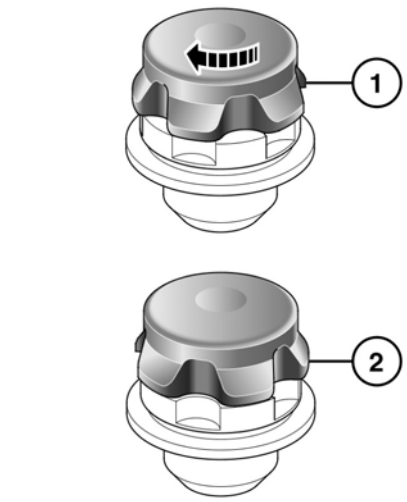
The locking wheel nut and locking wheel nut adaptor contain two anti-tamper features.

If the locking wheel nut adaptor is forced on to the locking wheel nut, the adaptor may be damaged beyond repair.

If the locking wheel nut adaptor is not fully engaged, the cap on the locking wheel nut rotates. To allow the locking wheel nut to be fully tightened or removed, the locking wheel nut cap must be reset.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Wheel changing



E189080

The locking wheel nut cap can be reset as follows:

1. Carefully fit the locking wheel nut adaptor on to the locking wheel nut cap and rotate the cap.
2. Rotate the locking wheel nut cap until all of the grooves on the cap align exactly with the locking wheel nut grooves.

WHEEL CHANGING

Before raising the vehicle, refer to all warnings at the beginning of the wheel changing section of the Owner's Handbook.

Before changing a wheel, read and observe the warnings. See 374, WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY.

Remove the spare wheel before jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilising the vehicle when raised.

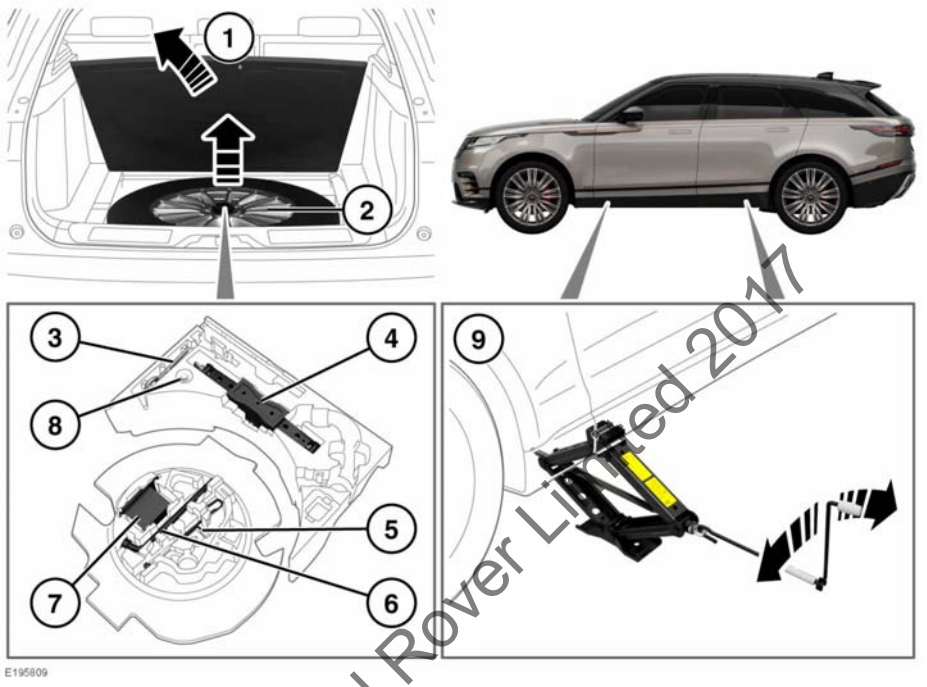
Only jack the vehicle using the jacking points described, or damage to the vehicle could occur.

Note: *The vehicle may be fitted with a tilt sensor, which activates the alarm if the vehicle is tilted in any direction after it has been locked. To lock the doors while changing the wheel, and avoid the alarm activating, the tilt sensor can be temporarily disabled. See* ***68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU****.*

Note: *Before raising the vehicle, correctly position the wheel chocks. See* ***376, USING WHEEL CHOCKS****.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Wheel changing



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

For vehicles that are not supplied with a spare wheel, refer to the tyre repair system section. See **369, TYRE REPAIR SYSTEM**.

Note: *Tool types and positions may vary from the illustration.*

The location of the tools and jacking points are as follows:

1. Loadspace floor panel: Lift the rear edge and pull to remove.
2. Temporary-use spare wheel securing bolt and clamp.
3. Towing eye.
4. Jack assembly: Observe the instructions printed on the jack.
5. Jack handle.
6. Wheel brace.
7. Wheel chock.
8. Locking wheel nut adaptor.
9. There are four jacking points on the underside of the vehicle. Two indented, triangular indicators are provided on each sill cover to indicate the location for the jack.

⚠ **Do not jack the vehicle under the side steps or side tubes.**

Note: *If the vehicle is fitted with deployable side steps, the side steps must be in the deployed position to allow access to the jacking points.*
To deploy the side steps, select ***Roof Access*** *from the* ***DEPLOYABLE SIDE STEPS*** *menu. See* ***209, EXTRA FEATURES***.

Wheel changing

See **376, IMPORTANT – USE OF SPARE TYRE** and **375, REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL**.

Before raising the vehicle, use the wheel nut brace to loosen the wheel nuts of the wheel to be replaced, by rotating half a turn counter-clockwise. Use the wheel chock. See **376, USING WHEEL CHOCKS**.

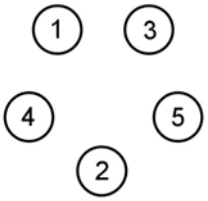
1. Open the tailgate. See **15, OPENING AND CLOSING THE TAILGATE**.
2. Lift the rear edge and pull to remove the loadspace floor panel.
3. Continually rotate the spare wheel's securing centre clamp plate counter-clockwise to release. Continually rotate the top plate of the centre bolt counter-clockwise to completely remove the securing bolt assembly. See **375, REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL**.
4. Remove the spare wheel and the vehicle's tool kit.
5. Fit the wheel chocks to the relevant wheel. See **376, USING WHEEL CHOCKS**.

   Make sure that the wheel chock is fully engaged with the tyre and the road surface.
6. Use the wheel brace to loosen the wheel nuts, by turning half a turn counter-clockwise.

   Do not remove the wheel nuts until the vehicle has been safely and securely raised with the jack.
7. Position the jack under the relevant jacking point.

   Note: *Do not allow the jack to contact the sill at any other point, as damage may result.*
8. Turn the jack lever clockwise to raise, until the jack head locates into the jacking point. Make sure that the base of the jack is in full contact with the road surface.
9. Raise the vehicle using the jack, with a slow steady operation. Avoid rapid, jerky actions as they may cause the vehicle and jack to become unstable.
10. Stop when the tyre is just clear of the ground.
11. Remove the loosened wheel nuts and place them together where they cannot roll away.
12. Remove the wheel and place to one side. Do not lay the wheel on its face, as this may damage the finish.
13. Fit the spare wheel to the vehicle by aligning the spare wheel with the vehicle's wheel studs and slide onto the hub.
14. Refit the wheel nuts. Lightly tighten them in the sequence shown in the illustration. Make sure that the wheel is correctly and evenly fitted to the hub. Check that each wheel nut is in a similar position.
15. Make sure that the area under the vehicle is clear of obstructions. Lower the vehicle slowly and smoothly.
16. With all of the wheels on the ground, and the jack removed, fully tighten the wheel nuts. Tighten the wheel nuts, in the sequence shown in the illustration, to the correct torque of 140 Nm.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017



E132675

Note: *If it is not possible to torque the wheel nuts when a wheel is replaced, they should be set to the correct torque as soon as possible.*

If an alloy spare wheel is to be fitted, use a suitable blunt tool to knock the centre cap out of the removed wheel. Use hand pressure only to press the centre cap into the newly fitted spare.

Check and adjust the tyre pressure as soon as possible. See **360, TYRE PRESSURES**.

Note: *Examine the jack occasionally. Clean and grease the moving parts, particularly the screw thread, to prevent corrosion.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Vehicle recovery

RECOVERY METHOD

Make sure that vehicle recovery or transportation is carried out by suitably qualified personnel and that the vehicle is secured correctly.

The recovery agent must activate the transmission park release before recovery starts. The procedure is covered in a separate publication for service personnel. Failure to activate the transmission park release can result in serious transmission damage.

Make sure that the steering column is unlocked during vehicle recovery. The smart key must remain inside the vehicle and the ignition must be switched on.

The vehicle should not be towed on all four wheels and should not be recovered with the front or rear wheels suspended. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

Note: *If the vehicle's battery is to be disconnected, the steering column must be unlocked first. The steering column cannot be unlocked with the battery disconnected.*

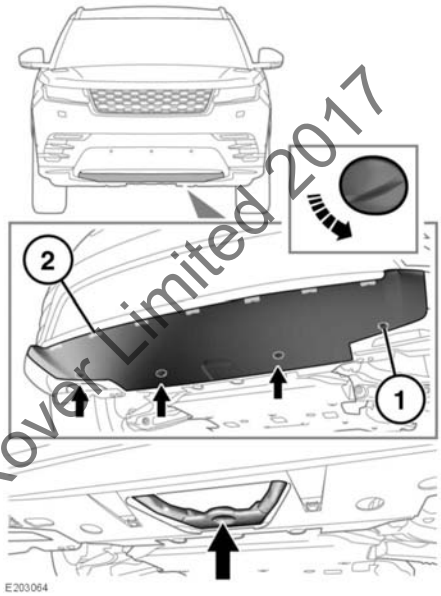
The recommended method for recovery or transportation of the vehicle is on a transporter or trailer designed for that purpose.

FRONT TOWING EYE

Use extreme caution when moving or towing the vehicle. Death or serious injury may occur.

Use extreme caution when detaching towing equipment. Vehicle movement is possible which can result in serious injury.

Remove the front towing eye cover before driving off-road, to prevent damage or loss. The covers must be replaced before driving on the road.



The front towing point is located behind a removable cover in the lower front bumper.

To remove the cover:

- Rotate each of the fasteners 90 degrees counter-clockwise with a coin, or a similar object, to release the lower edge of the cover.
- Pull the cover forward from the rear lower edge to release the lugs on the top edge of the cover.

To refit the cover:

- Offer up the cover and make sure the lugs at the top edge engage with the holes in the body panel.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

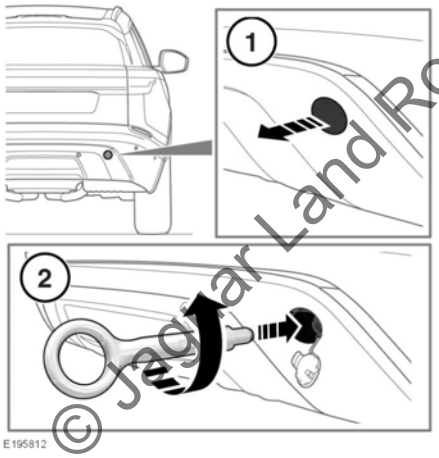
- Rotate each of the fasteners 90 degrees clockwise to secure the cover in position.

REAR TOWING EYE

The towing eye at the rear of the vehicle is designed for on-road recovery only. If it is used for any other purpose, it may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.

Use extreme caution when moving or towing the vehicle. Death or serious injury may occur.

Use extreme caution when detaching towing equipment. Vehicle movement is possible, which can result in serious injury.



The rear towing eye is located under the loadspace floor panel.

The rear towing point is located behind a small access panel in the rear bumper.

To fit the towing eye:

1. Press the lower edge of the rear bumper's access panel to release the securing clip. Remove the cover.

   Note: *Note the orientation of the access cover to aid refitting.*

2. Locate the towing point through the rear bumper. Fully screw the towing eye counter-clockwise into the towing point, until secure.

   Note: *Pass the vehicle's wheel brace through the towing eye, to act as a lever to help rotate the towing eye until it is completely tight.*

To refit the access panel, align the lug into the recess in the bumper. Lightly press the opposite edge to engage the securing clip.

OFF-ROAD RECOVERY

If the towing eyes are to be used for off-road recovery, it is essential that off-road driver training, covering recovery techniques, is undertaken.

Further information on off-road driving can be found at: **www.landrover.com**.

TRANSMISSION PARK RELEASE

Make sure that the vehicle is secured with wheel chocks. Apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) or firmly press the brake pedal. Two people are required for this procedure. Failure to do so can result in unexpected movement of the vehicle, potentially causing serious injury or death.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Vehicle recovery

When recovering the vehicle, it is essential that the transmission park release mechanism is activated. Activating the transmission park release mechanism locks the transmission in Neutral (**N**) and prevents the transmission from automatically selecting Park (**P**).

The recovery agent must activate the transmission park release before recovery commences. The procedure for activating the transmission park release is covered in a separate publication for service personnel. Failure to activate the transmission park release can result in serious transmission damage.

When vehicle transportation is complete, the transmission park release mechanism needs to be deactivated.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

BEFORE STARTING OR DRIVING

If the vehicle is involved in a collision, it should be checked by a retailer/authorised repairer or suitably qualified personnel, before starting or driving.

Note: *Some vehicles have an SOS emergency call button and an optimised assistance call button. See* ***299, REMOTE****.*

EVENT DATA RECORDING

The vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in the vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seat belts were buckled or fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was travelling.

The data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *EDR data are recorded by the vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs. No data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions. No personal data, e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

South Korea only

Please be advised that this vehicle incorporates an Event Data Recorder (EDR).

An EDR stores driving information at the moment of accident (driving speed, application of brake pedal and accelerator control etc.), and enables to confirm the information stored.

EDR information helps understanding the circumstances of accident more clearly.

SERVICE DATA RECORDING

Service data recorders in the vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about the vehicle. Potentially, this includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as the engine, accelerator pedal, steering, or brakes.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

After a collision

In order to properly diagnose and service the vehicle, a retailer/authorised repairer may access the vehicle's diagnostic information through a direct connection to the vehicle.

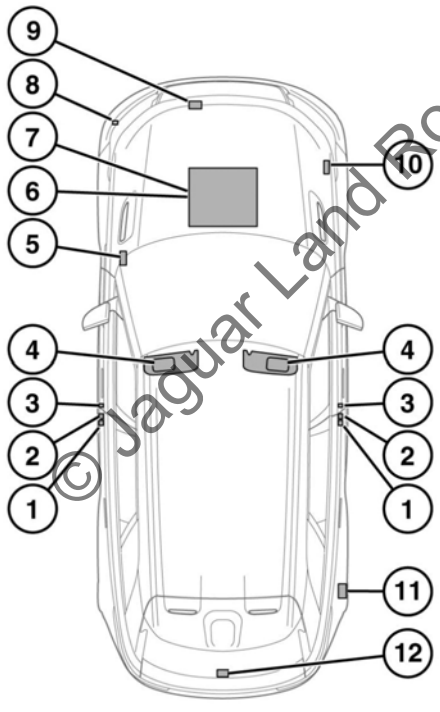
© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

LABEL LOCATIONS

Warning labels attached to the vehicle bearing this symbol mean: Read the relevant instructions before touching or adjusting components.

Labels showing this symbol indicate that the ignition system utilises very high voltages. Do not touch any ignition components while the ignition is switched on.

Extra information labels may also be found at these locations:



E196608

1. The vehicle weights and the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) label: Located at the base of the driver's side B pillar. The vehicle build-date plate (Australian vehicles only) is also located here. The VIN can also be shown in the instrument panel via the **Vehicle Information** and **Vehicle VIN** menus. See **68, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

   Note: *If you need to communicate with a retailer/authorised repairer, you may be asked to quote the VIN number.*
2. Tyre pressure label: Located at the base of the driver's side B pillar.
3. Airbag warning label: Located midway up the B pillar.
4. Airbag label: Located on the sun visors.
5. VIN: Stamped on a plate, which is visible through the bottom left side of the windscreen.
6. Engine serial number: Stamped into the left side, rear of the engine casing.
7. Engine serial number label: Located at the top left of the A-bank cam cover of the engine. Remove the engine cover for access.
8. Air Conditioning (A/C) label: Located on the left-side bonnet locking platform.
9. Exhaust emissions label: Located on the underside of the bonnet.
10. VIN number: Marked on a panel located alongside the suspension turret.
11. Fuel specification label: Located on the inside face of the fuel filler flap.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Vehicle labels

12. Battery warning symbols label: Located on the top face of the vehicle's main battery, underneath the loadspace floor panel.

To make sure that the vehicle and its features are used safely, it is important to be familiar with these subjects. Using the index at the back of the handbook, refer to the relevant topic for more information.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS

Variant	Capacity (cc).	Number of cylinders.
2.0L Diesel	1 999	4
3.0L Diesel	2 993	6
2.0L Petrol	1 997	4
3.0L Petrol	2 995	6

Note: *For further information, contact a retailer/authorised repairer and quote the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). See* ***387, LABEL LOCATIONS****.*

PERFORMANCE DATA

Variant	Maximum Power	Maximum Torque	Maximum Vehicle Speed km/h (mph)
2.0L Petrol (250 PS)	250 PS at 5 500 rpm	365 Nm at 1 200 to 4 500 rpm	217 (135)
3.0L Petrol	380 PS at 6 500 rpm	450 Nm at 3 500 to 5 000 rpm	250 (155)
3.0L Diesel	300 PS at 4 000 rpm	516 Nm at 1 500 to 1 750 rpm	241 (150)
2.0L Diesel (180 PS)	180 PS at 4 000 rpm	430 Nm at 1 500 rpm	193 (120)
2.0L Diesel (240 PS)	240 PS at 4 000 rpm	500 Nm at 1 500 rpm	217 (135)

LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS

Part	Variant	Specification
Engine oil.	2.0L diesel.	SAE 0W-30 meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.03.5007.
	3.0L diesel.	SAE 5W-30 meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.03.5005.
	Petrol.	SAE 0W-20 meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.51.5122.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Technical specifications

Part	Variant	Specification
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF).	Diesel.	AdBlue™ meeting ISO 22241 and ISO 22241-1. Diesel Exhaust Fluid is also known as DEF, AdBlue, AUS 32 and ARLA 32.
Brake fluid.	All vehicles.	It is recommended to use Land Rover brake fluid. If unavailable, non-petroleum based brake fluid meeting specification DOT4 ISO 4925 Class 6 may be used.
Washer fluid.	All vehicles.	Screen wash with frost protection, diluted with clean water, as specified on the bottle.
Engine coolant fluid.	All vehicles.	Mixture of 50% water and 50% antifreeze meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.651.5003.

If in doubt about the required specification of a lubricant or fluid, seek advice from a retailer/authorised repairer.



E176576

Castrol EDGE Professional exclusively recommended by Land Rover.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

CAPACITIES

Item	Variant	Capacity (litres)
Fuel tank (usable)	2.0L diesel.	60
	3.0L diesel.	66
	Petrol.	63

Item	Variant	Capacity (litres)
Engine oil refill and filter change.	2.0L diesel.	6.5
	3.0L diesel.	7.0
	2.0L petrol.	7.0
	3.0L petrol.	6.5
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF).	Diesel vehicles with DEF.	17
Washer fluid reservoir.	2.0L diesel (180 PS).	3.9
	All vehicles except 2.0L diesel (180 PS).	4.6

The quoted capacities are approximate and provided as a guide only. All oil levels must be checked using the dipstick, level plugs, message centre information or drain and refill, as applicable.

Do not overfill the DEF reservoir, or damage to the vehicle may occur.

WEIGHTS

Variant	Vehicle weight from (kg)	Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)[1] (kg)	Gross Train Weight (GTW)[2] (kg)
2.0L petrol (250 PS).	1 874	2 470	4 870
3.0L petrol.	1 954	2 540	5 040
3.0L diesel.	2 029	2 610	5 110
2.0L diesel (180 PS).	1 899	2 490	4 890
2.0L diesel (240 PS)	1 911	2 510	5 010

[1] The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle, including passengers and load.

[2] The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle and braked trailer, including their respective loads.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Technical specifications

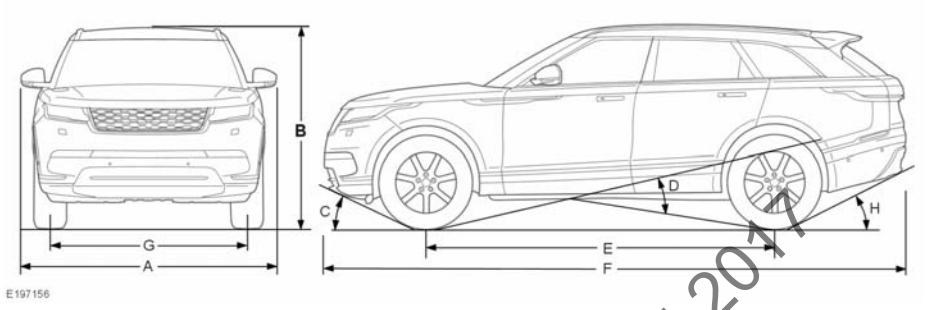
Variant	Maximum front axle load[1] (kg)	Maximum rear axle load[1] (kg)	Maximum roof crossbar load[2] (kg)
2.0L petrol (250 PS).	1 190	1 420	79
3.0L petrol.	1 240	1 440	
3.0L diesel.	1 270	1 470	
2.0L diesel (180 PS)	1 190	1 420	
2.0L diesel (240 PS)	1 210	1 430	

[1] The front and rear axle maximum loads cannot be reached simultaneously, as this will exceed the GVW limit.

[2] This is the permitted roof load, including the weight of the roof bars.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

DIMENSIONS



Item	Description	Variant	mm	Degrees
A	Width (including mirrors).	All vehicles.	2 145	-
	Body width.	All vehicles.	1 930	-
B	Height.	All vehicles.	1 665	-
	Height (with roof antenna module).	All vehicles.	1 685	-
C	Approach angle.	Air suspension.	-	23.3
	Approach angle.	Coil suspension.	-	24.5
D	Ramp breakover angle.	Air suspension.	-	20.1
		Coil suspension.	-	20.3
E	Wheelbase.	All vehicles.	2 874	-
F	Overall length.	All vehicles.	4 803	-
G	Track - front.	Air suspension.	1 640	-
		Coil suspension.	1 642	-
	Track - rear.	Air suspension.	1 663	-
		Coil suspension.	1 657	-
H	Departure angle.	Air suspension.	-	26.3
		Coil suspension.	-	26.5
-	Wading depth (off road height).*	Air suspension.	650	-
		Coil suspension.	600	-

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

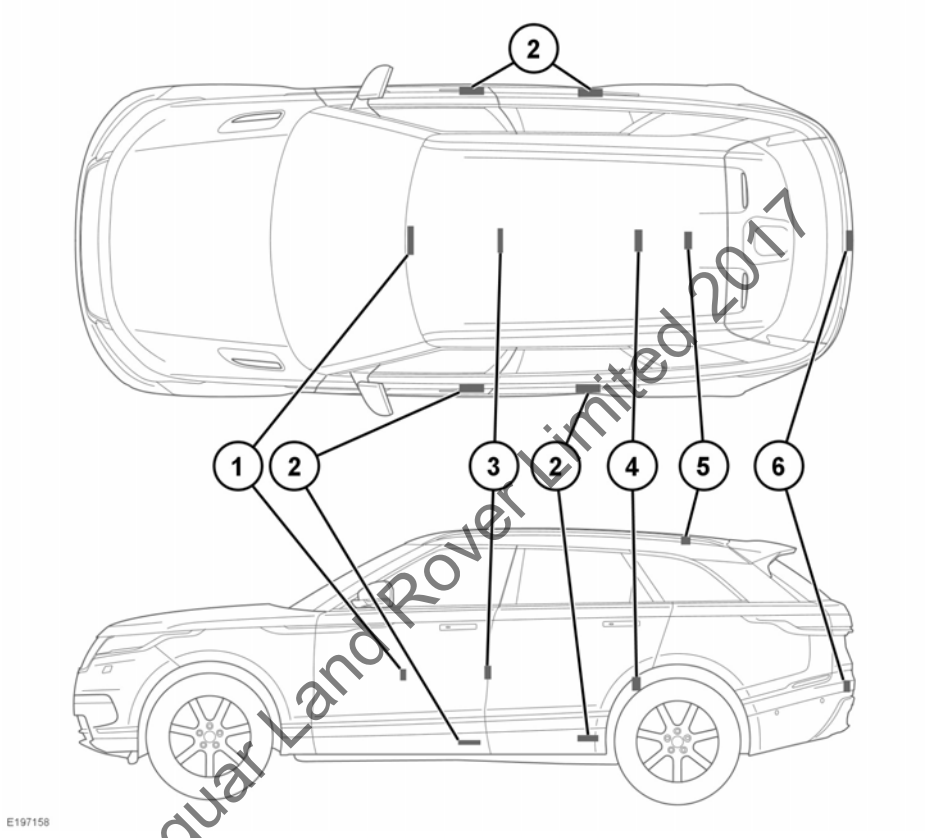
Technical specifications

Item	Description	Variant	mm	Degrees
-	Minimum ground clearance - standard height.	Air suspension.	205	-
		Coil suspension.	205	-
	Minimum ground clearance - off road height.	Air suspension.	251	-
-	Turning circle (wall to wall).	All vehicles.	12 m	-

*Maximum wading speed is 7 km/h (4 mph).

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS



© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Any person fitted with an implanted medical device should make sure the device is kept at a distance of at least 22 cm away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device.

1. Cabin front transmitters.
2. Door transmitters.
3. Cabin middle transmitter.
4. Loadspace interior transmitter.
5. Radio Frequency (RF) transmitter.
6. Loadspace exterior transmitter.

Note: *A security transmitter is located in the upper steering column.*

RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM REGULATION STATEMENTS

Service	Frequency band (MHz)	Max. Output (Watts)	Antenna position	Specific conditions
Short Wave	1.8-30	100 (RMS)	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
8 m	30-50	120 (RMS)	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
6 m	50-54	120 (RMS)	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
4 m	68-87.5	120 (RMS)	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
2 m	142-176	120 (RMS)	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
70 cm	410-470	120 (RMS)	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
TETRA TETRAPOL	380-390 410-420 450-460 806-825 870-876	20 (Peak)	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
4G	703-748	20 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Service	Frequency band (MHz)	Max. Output (Watts)	Antenna position	Specific conditions
4G	832-862	20 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
GSM 850	824-849	20 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
GSM 900	876-915	20 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
23 cm	1200-1300	25 (RMS)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
GSM 1800	1710-1785	2 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
GSM 1900	1850-1910	2 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
IMT-2000 (3G)	1885-2025	1 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
WiFi/ Bluetooth	2400-2500	1 (Peak)	Anywhere on the vehicle.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Service	Frequency band (MHz)	Max. Output (Watts)	Antenna position	Specific conditions
4G	2496-2690	1 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.
WiFi	4195-5825	1 (Peak)	Mobile phone or tablet, using device antenna inside vehicle.	CE / FCC or equivalent marked device.

South Korea only

Omnidirectional transmission or point-to-multipoint transmission is prohibited according to the law.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

ARRANGING A SERVICE

To make sure that the vehicle remains in first class order, visits to a retailer/ authorised repairer are required for routine servicing.

To help smooth this process:

- Arrange an appointment, unless it is an emergency. Give details of the vehicle and the nature of the work required. Where available, the retailer reviews the Online Service History (OSH) to determine the service required.

After arriving at the servicing premises:

- Give your name and address, and a phone number where you can be contacted during the day. Contact details are important if queries arise or additional work is found to be necessary.
- Explain, as fully as possible, the details of the service or repair required.

For information, it is also important to:

- Enquire whether the service or repair is chargeable and, if so, ask for details of any costs and confirm the preferred method of payment.
- Establish when the vehicle will be ready for collection. Alternatively, arrange a time and place for it to be delivered.

Note: *Make sure that the retailer provides a copy of the latest OSH printout when the vehicle is returned. For markets where an OSH is unavailable, make sure the appropriate pages of the Service Record are correctly completed.*

SAFETY-RELATED DEFECTS (AUSTRALIA ONLY)

Motor manufacturers and distributors are bound by the uniform code of practice for the recall of motor vehicles and/or parts. They will check and repair, free of charge, any vehicles which are found to have a possible safety-related defect.

Jaguar Land Rover takes scrupulous care in making its vehicles safe for our roads. The chances of the vehicle being subject to a safety defect recall during its life are small.

However, should such an event occur that affects the model purchased, it is best to adhere to the advice given in any letter received from us. The advice given may involve a retailer carrying out a check on the vehicle. Contact a retailer and arrange an appointment as speedily as possible.

The retailer records the reference details of any work carried out on a decal. The decal is then affixed to the right-side, front A pillar, which forms part of the surround for the right-side front door aperture. Once fixed, this label must not be removed.

ONLINE SERVICE HISTORY (OSH)

The Online Service History (OSH) system has been introduced to completely replace the stamping of 'Service Record' pages in owner literature. A vehicle's service history is now stored on a centralised system, which can be accessed and amended by a retailer/authorised repairer via the internet.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

The OSH records every scheduled service event, and includes all those items that need to be inspected, or replaced, over extended periods.

Keeping to the recommended service intervals is important to help protect the on-going validity of the manufacturer's warranty. An up-to-date OSH provides the necessary proof of service should any warranty work be required.

After each scheduled and extended service visit, the retailer/authorised repairer updates the OSH for the vehicle. A printed copy of the complete record is also provided as proof that the required service has been performed.

As the OSH is securely stored for the life of the vehicle, it can be viewed online, at anytime. The OSH helps to enhance the vehicle's resale value and each subsequent owner will be able to obtain a service history they can trust. Any retailer/ authorised repairer can produce an up-to-date OSH printout for the vehicle. The printout also contains details of how to register and view the vehicle's OSH.

For any questions regarding the OSH system, please contact a retailer/ authorised repairer or the Land Rover distributor for the market. The distributor may also be contacted through the Land Rover internet site.

Note: *OSH is not available in all markets. For these markets, a Service Record publication is provided. See* ***401, SERVICE RECORD****.*

SERVICE REQUIREMENTS

Routine services must be carried out throughout the life of the vehicle.

Some vehicles have a service interval indicator in the instrument panel. When a service is required, an appropriate message is displayed when the ignition is switched on. Depending on the type and style of driving that the vehicle is subjected to, the indicator may display a service message at a shorter distance than shown in the service interval plans.

Service intervals shown in the plans are only nominal. The vehicle's message centre displays actual distances to the next service. On completion of a service, the message centre countdown feature is reset.

Not all markets have the service interval indicator activated. In these markets, the relevant service interval plan should be used as the guide to regular servicing. Services must be carried out at the distance or time-based interval, whichever occurs first, shown in the relevant service interval plan. The servicing schedules for arduous operating conditions are not displayed in the message centre.

SERVICE CONTENT

The precise content of each service varies from model to model and also according to the age of the vehicle, the distance it has travelled, and whether an arduous service is applicable. The service operations applicable to the vehicle are listed on the maintenance check sheet used by the retailer/authorised repairer.

Note: *Some service providers may use their own check sheet with differing levels of service operations. Usually the highest level matches Jaguar Land Rover Limited requirements.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

FLUID REPLACEMENT

Brake fluid and engine coolant (antifreeze and water solution) must be completely replaced at specific intervals. The retailer/authorised repairer replaces the fluids at the appropriate scheduled service.

Note: *Replacement of fluids is subject to extra labour and material costs.*

Some braking system components may also need to be replaced. The intervals are significantly longer than those in the interval plan and are indicated on the maintenance check sheet.

ARDUOUS OPERATING CONDITIONS

When a vehicle is used in arduous conditions, more frequent attention must be paid to servicing requirements. Even daily attention may be necessary to make sure that continued safe and reliable operation of the vehicle is maintained.

Failure to adhere to the recommended service schedules may result in premature engine wear or damage, and may invalidate the warranty.

Some markets may have unique service requirements. Check with a retailer/authorised repairer or importer.

Arduous operating conditions include:

- Driving in dusty and/or sandy conditions.
- Driving on rough and/or muddy roads.
- Frequent wading.
- Frequent driving at high speeds in high ambient temperatures above 50°C.
- Frequent driving in severe cold weather below -40°C.
- Frequent driving in mountainous conditions.
- Frequent trailer towing.
- Driving in areas using road salt or other corrosive materials on the driving surface.

Contact a retailer/authorised repairer for advice.

SERVICE RECORD

For markets where an Online Service History (OSH) is unavailable, the Service Record publication provides a record of the routine services carried out on the vehicle.

The information is important and could affect warranty entitlement. Always make sure that the appropriate record slip is stamped and signed on completion of each service.

REPLACEMENT SERVICE RECORD

If the Service Record book is lost, and an Online Service History (OSH) is not available, a replacement publication can be ordered via the Internet at:

www.jaguarlandroverliterature.com or from a retailer/authorised repairer.

The replacement book is visibly different to the original version. The front cover and title page have the revised title. Page 2 explains why the replacement version is being used. Each internal page displays the caption **REPLACEMENT**. To counteract fraudulent attempts to recreate a vehicle's service history, original style books are not available for purchase. Remember to transfer the details recorded on the **Vehicle Details** page to the replacement book.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

SERVICE INTERVAL PLAN

References **A** and **B** in the interval plans, relate to the type of service required at that distance or time.

SERVICE INTERVAL PLAN 1 - 18 MODEL YEAR ONWARDS

Applies to the following countries: **Andorra, Australia, Austria, Belgium, Botswana, Brunei, Bulgaria, Canaries, Croatia, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Gibraltar, Greece, Greenland, Hong Kong, Hungary, Iceland, Indonesia[1], Ireland, Israel, Italy, Korea (South), Latvia, Liechtenstein, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Macau, Macedonia, Malta, Mexico, Moldova, Monaco, Namibia, Netherlands, Netherlands Antilles, New Caledonia, New Zealand, Norway, Philippines, Poland, Portugal, Romania, Serbia, Singapore, Slovakia, Slovenia, South Africa, Spain (mainland), Sweden, Switzerland, Tahiti, Taiwan, Thailand, Turkey, United Kingdom.** **[1] All diesel engines require servicing at 13 000 km or 12 month intervals.***	
All engines except 2.0L diesel	**2.0L diesel**
A Service 26 000 km or 12 months.*	**A Service** 34 000 km or 24 months.*
B Service 26 000 km or 12 months* after the previous **A Service**.	**B Service** 34 000 km or 24 months* after the previous **A Service**.
A Service 26 000 km or 12 months* after the previous **B Service**.	**A Service** 34 000 km or 24 months* after the previous **B Service**.
Repeat sequence from the first **B Service**. *whichever occurs first.	

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

SERVICE INTERVAL PLAN 2 - 18 MODEL YEAR ONWARDS

Applies to the following countries: **Afghanistan, Albania, Algeria, Angola, Anguilla, Antigua and Barbuda, Argentina, Armenia, Aruba, Azerbaijan, Bahamas, Bahrain, Bangladesh, Barbados, Belarus, Belize, Benin, Bermuda, Bhutan, Bolivia, Bosnia and Herzegovina, British Virgin Islands, Burkina Faso, Cambodia, Cameroon, Cape Verde, Cayman Islands, Central African Republic, Chad, Chile, Colombia, Costa Rica, Cote d'Ivoire, Cuba, Djibouti, Dominica, Dominican Republic, East Timor, Ecuador, Egypt[1], El Salvador, Equatorial Guinea, Eritrea, Ethiopia, Falkland Islands, Fiji, Gabon, Gambia, Georgia, Ghana, Grenada, Guadeloupe, Guatemala, Guinea-Bissau, Guinea-Conakry, Guyana, Haiti, Honduras, India, Iran[1], Iraq[1], Jamaica, Jordan, Kazakhstan, Kenya[1], Kosovo, Kuwait, Kyrgyzstan, Laos, Lebanon, Liberia, Libya, Madagascar, Malawi, Malaysia, Mali, Martinique, Mauritius, Mayotte, Mongolia, Montenegro, Montserrat, Morocco, Mozambique, Myanmar (Burma), Nepal, Nicaragua, Niger, Nigeria, Oman, Pakistan[1], Palau, Palestine, Panama, Papua New Guinea, Paraguay, Peru, Qatar, Reunion, Russia, Rwanda, Saint Barthelemy, Saint Helena, Saint Kitts and Nevis, Saint Lucia, Saint Pierre and Miquelon, Saint Vincent and the Grenadines, Saudi Arabia, Senegal, Seychelles, Sierra Leone, Somalia, Sri Lanka, Sudan, Suriname, Syria[1], Tanzania, Trinidad and Tobago, Tunisia, Turks and Caicos Islands, Tuvalu, Uganda, Ukraine, United Arab Emirates, Uruguay, Uzbekistan, Venezuela, Vietnam, Yemen, Zambia, Zimbabwe.** **[1] All diesel engines require servicing at 6 500 km or 6 months intervals.*** **All engines**
A Service 13 000 km or 12 months.*
B Service 13 000 km or 12 months* after the previous **A Service**.
A Service 13 000 km or 12 months* after the previous **B Service**.
Repeat sequence from the first **B Service**. *whichever occurs first.

Note: *More frequent oil change services are recommended for vehicles operated in arduous conditions.*

END OF LIFE VEHICLE (ELV)

Within certain markets, Jaguar Land Rover has established a comprehensive plan to meet vehicle recycling requirements and End of Life Vehicle (ELV) legislation.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Service

In accordance with applicable market directives and local legislation, Jaguar Land Rover takes back all on-sale vehicles and vehicle starter batteries, regardless of the date of a vehicle's first registration, at the end of their life. Items taken back are treated in an environmentally responsible manner.

To locate the nearest take back or recycling facility, and for information on terms and conditions, consult a retailer. Alternatively, visit: **www.landrover.com**.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

OWNER'S RESPONSIBILITIES

Proper maintenance and use guard against major repair expenses.

Make sure to present the vehicle to an authorised repairer for any warranty repair as soon as possible after a defect is detected. This minimises the effect a defect has on the vehicle and the nature of the repair needed.

Make sure all documentation for completed maintenance or service works are retained with the vehicle.

DATA PROTECTION STATEMENT

Jaguar Land Rover Limited respects the privacy of every individual. Information collected about you will be used to satisfy requests made by you, to fulfil contracts you have entered into, to inform you about new products and services, or to improve how we may serve you as a valued customer. The information will be treated in accordance with applicable data protection laws and the European Union EC Directive 95/46/EC. Information may be shared with Jaguar Land Rover and its affiliated or associated companies, its authorised retailers and repairers, agencies, and other companies providing services for your benefit.

We will not disclose your information to third parties, except as described above and as may be required by law. Should this happen, we will take steps to make sure that any third party companies who handle your information, comply with the relevant data protection laws. We may share generalised information about your behaviour patterns with partners or other parties on an anonymous basis and in such a way that neither you nor any individual customer can be identified.

Any personal information that you supply to Jaguar Land Rover Limited or its authorised retailers or repairers, will be held in encrypted electronic format on a secure computer server, to prevent unauthorised access by other people. We aim to make sure that the personal data stored will be up to date, relevant and not excessive, and that information is not retained longer than is necessary.

You have the right, at any time, to see what is held about you and to correct any inaccuracies or to withdraw from receiving any further communications from Jaguar Land Rover Limited and its affiliated or associated companies. Should you wish to do this, please contact a local retailer or (if different) the retailer from which the vehicle was purchased.

QUALITY CHECKS

The vehicle has been quality checked throughout every stage of the manufacturing process. The final check was made by dedicated inspectors to make sure that the vehicle was built to the level of excellence required by Jaguar Land Rover Limited.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Warranty

WARRANTY AND CONSUMER LAW

This warranty is a manufacturer's supplementary warranty. It does not affect your legal rights under the vehicle purchase agreement with your selling authorised retailer. Nor does it affect your legal rights under applicable national legislation governing the sale of consumer goods.

Obtaining Warranty Assistance

Should the vehicle ever require attention under the warranty arrangements, simply contact the nearest authorised repairer.

Transfer of Warranty

Warranty benefits continue to apply regardless of any change of ownership.

WARRANTY COVER WHEN TOURING

Jaguar Land Rover Limited has a comprehensive service network in most parts of the world. Any authorised repairer can carry out repairs under the Jaguar Land Rover warranty.

MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY

Should any part of the vehicle require repair or replacement as a result of a manufacturing defect, the part will be repaired or replaced completely free of charge by any Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer, regardless of any change of vehicle ownership during the period of cover.

MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY TERMS

Warranty Terms: 3 years or if sooner the applicable mileage limitations applying in certain markets. A retailer can advise.

In all cases of warranty repair carried out by a Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer, genuine Jaguar Land Rover parts will be used. Any displaced parts become the property of Jaguar Land Rover Limited.

Note: *Market legislation may overrule this.*

All parts fitted during warranty repairs are covered for the balance of the original warranty period.

Note: *Tyres are covered separately by the tyre manufacturer. A Jaguar Land Rover authorised retailer will, however, assist with any tyre issue.*

PAINT SURFACE WARRANTY

Should the paint surface of the vehicle body require attention due to a defect in material or applications, any necessary repairs will be performed completely free of charge by any Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer, regardless of any change in vehicle ownership during the period of cover.

Warranty Terms: as per the manufacturer's warranty but with no distance limitation.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

CORROSION PROTECTION WARRANTY

Should any part of the bodywork of the vehicle be perforated by rust corrosion, the panel(s) affected by the perforation will be repaired or replaced by any Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer, completely free of charge, regardless of any change in vehicle ownership.

Warranty Terms: 6 years, unlimited distance.

Note: *The term perforation means a hole that penetrates through the bodywork, caused by corrosion from the inside to the outside or from the underside to the upper side, as a result of faulty manufacture or materials. For the purpose of this warranty, the term bodywork, is defined as metal panels, including doors, bonnet, engine and boot compartments, wings, sills, scuttles, roof, floor panel, frames and chassis members, but excluding attachments such as bright trim, bumpers, mouldings, hinges, and road wheels.*

PARTS AND ACCESSORIES WARRANTY

There is a separate parts warranty for genuine Jaguar Land Rover parts and accessories purchased. Should any genuine part or accessory require repair or replacement as a result of a material or manufacturing defect, the part or accessory will be repaired or replaced completely free of charge by any authorised retailer/repairer.

Where the part or accessory is being repaired or replaced under the terms of this warranty by an authorised retailer/repairer, no labour charge will be made for such repair or replacement. However, where the work is carried out by anyone other than an authorised retailer/repairer, no contribution will be made to labour charges.

Note: *Genuine parts and accessories have been specifically designed to comply with Jaguar Land Rover safety and reliability standards. We, therefore, recommend that only genuine parts and accessories are used on the vehicle. Please be advised that non-genuine parts and accessories have neither been tested or approved by Jaguar Land Rover, and that, in spite of constant observation of the market, Jaguar Land Rover cannot evaluate their suitability and safety, neither isolated or when fitted to our vehicles.*

Duration of the Genuine Jaguar Land Rover Parts and Accessories Warranty

The warranty commences on the date of delivery of the part or vehicle accessory and is applicable for a period of 12 months or as per agreed local market legislation or the stated service life of the part or vehicle accessory, whichever occurs later. All parts or vehicle accessories fitted during warranty repairs are covered for the balance of the original warranty period.

Note: *Genuine Jaguar Land Rover batteries are covered by a 3 year, unlimited distance warranty.*

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

ACCESSORIES FITTED TO A NEW VEHICLE

Genuine Jaguar Land Rover Accessories, excluding gift items, fitted by an authorised retailer within 1 month or 1 600 km, whichever occurs first, of the vehicle entering service for the first time, will benefit from the same warranty terms and period of cover as the manufacturer's warranty.

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM WARRANTY

Jaguar Land Rover Limited warrants that its vehicles are designed, built, and equipped, so as to conform at the time of sale, with all emission standards applicable at the time of manufacture, and are free from defects in materials and workmanship that could cause them not to meet those standards.

During the emission control system warranty period, if the failure of any part covered by this emission control system warranty is not the result of a lack of maintenance or of misuse of the vehicle, it will be repaired, replaced, or adjusted without charge.

A retailer can advise warranty terms.

ACCIDENT DAMAGE REPAIR

In the event of the vehicle requiring body repairs due to accident damage, a Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer will make sure all repairs are carried out by a Jaguar Land Rover approved body repair centre. The body repair centre uses only Genuine Jaguar Land Rover approved parts, materials and repair techniques, making sure that warranty cover continues on the repaired body sections for the remaining period of the corrosion protection warranty.

ALUMINIUM BODY REPAIRS

Some models incorporate the latest technology in aluminium body structure.

Specialist vehicle body and paint centres are provided with full technical support from Jaguar Land Rover.

The body and paint centres operate to high standards and have all the necessary tools and equipment essential to repair Jaguar Land Rover vehicles.

WHAT IS NOT COVERED BY THE MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY TERMS?

Jaguar Land Rover Limited offers no warranty and is **not** responsible for any repair or replacement to the vehicle, part or accessory that is required as a direct result of:

- Any modification to the vehicle, components, parts, or accessories, including any engine performance enhancement modifications, in particular, chip tuning, which are not authorised by Jaguar Land Rover Limited.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

- Normal wear and tear. Includes brake pads, brake discs, and any other friction related components. The list is not exhaustive.
- Defects or damage caused as a result of the vehicle being used in motor sport events, or for any purpose other than normal, private, or commercial use.
- Damage resulting from neglect, accident, flooding, or improper use or fitting.
- Damage due to the failure of another part on the vehicle.
- Damage caused during maintenance.
- Failure to properly maintain the vehicle, part, or accessory, in accordance with Jaguar Land Rover maintenance schedules and service instructions.
- Failure to use Jaguar Land Rover specified parts, oils, lubricants, or fluids during a warranty repair or parts of equivalent quality during a authorised retailer repair.

  Note: *Failure to use oils, lubricants, or fluids of the correct specification may result in mechanical failure and refusal by Jaguar Land Rover to pay for any resultant claims.*
- The part or vehicle accessory covered by the parts warranty is damaged due to the failure of another part on the vehicle, except manufacturing defect.
- Failure of a non-approved part and/or the failure or misuse of a product or accessory not recommended by Jaguar Land Rover. Additionally, any consequential damage caused by the fitment or use of such parts, products, or accessories will not be covered by the Jaguar Land Rover vehicle or parts warranties.
- Any vehicle that has had its Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) altered or removed, or on which the odometer reading has been unlawfully changed.
- Refilling or topping up with the incorrect fuel, e.g., petrol used instead of diesel, or vice versa, or consequential damage from misfuelling.
- The vehicle, part, or accessory having been altered from Jaguar Land Rover specifications.
- Use of fuel specifications or alternative fuels which are not approved by Jaguar Land Rover for the vehicle.
- Use of supplemental additives and flushing agents for fuel or engine oil, unless specified as part of a Jaguar Land Rover service requirement.
- The vehicle, as manufactured, does not meet the operational specification of a market for which it was not specified, including any legal requirements or penalties imposed by Government or other authority.
- The effects of any vehicle modifications undertaken to comply with legal or local requirements of a market for which it was not specified, unless authorised by Jaguar Land Rover Limited.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Note: *Where applicable, a Jaguar Land Rover authorised repairer may, at the customer's expense, carry out authorised modifications to meet legal or operational requirements of a market.*

Activity key

Warranty Terms: as per the manufacturer's warranty.

Note: *Activity keys requested within one month of vehicle purchase or 1 600 km, benefit from the manufacturer's warranty terms. Accessories fitted after this time benefit from the terms of the parts and accessories warranty.*

Specific exclusions: In addition to the manufacturer's warranty terms, the activity key is subject to the following specific exclusions:

- General cosmetic abrasions and wear and tear, not affecting the activity key function.
- Misuse or abuse of the product.
- Loss or damage due to breakage under extreme loading.
- Damage by cutting and/or crushing.
- Exposure to corrosive substances or environments.
- Exposure to excessive heat nominally to function from -40ºC to +85ºC. Avoid 'greenhouse' storage exceeding 100ºC. Cold, low or high pressures in aircraft cargo holds are acceptable.

WHAT IS NOT COVERED BY THE PAINT SURFACE WARRANTY AND CORROSION PROTECTION WARRANTY?

Jaguar Land Rover Limited is **not** responsible for any repair or replacement that is required as a direct result of the following:

- Failure to properly maintain paint and bodywork by regular cleaning in accordance with Jaguar Land Rover Limited instructions.
- Failure to promptly rectify any paint or corrosion damage.
- Factors beyond Jaguar Land Rover's control, such as environmental hazards, including but not limited to industrial fall-out, storm damage, acid rain, bird droppings, rodent damage, and damage including but not limited to stone chips, scratches, and use of unsuitable cleaning agents.
- Accident repairs using materials or methods of repair that have not been approved by Jaguar Land Rover Limited.
- Alterations of the vehicle from Jaguar Land Rover original specification.

WHAT IS NOT COVERED BY SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS?

During a normal scheduled service or maintenance operation, consumable items which are subject to adjustment or replacement are **not** covered by the warranty, unless work is required as a direct result of a manufacturing defect.

Parts that fall into this category for all models are:

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

- Lubricants.
- Oil filter.
- Fuel filter.
- Air filter.
- Pollen filter (where applicable).
- Drive belts.
- Spark plugs (petrol engines only).
- Smart key batteries. Not all models. Please check with an authorised retailer/repairer.

Note: *The Jaguar Land Rover warranty applies up to the first scheduled service change point of the particular item. The period of cover for any item will not exceed the time and mileage limitation of the manufacturer's warranty.*

Repair, replacements, and adjustments up to the first scheduled service

Some parts that require repair, replacement, or adjustment, are recognised as having a limited service life. Such parts are warranted against manufacturing defects for a period of up to and including the first scheduled service or 12 months, whichever occurs first.

Parts and adjustments that fall into this category for all models are:

- Wiper blades.
- Smart key batteries. Check with an authorised retailer/repairer.
- All light bulbs, interior and exterior. Except for, xenon headlight bulbs and fascia and instrumentation illumination, which are covered for the full duration of the manufacturer's warranty.
- Adjustments, including but not limited to: headlight and hinged panel adjustments, suspension tightening, steering geometry adjustments, emission and fuel system checks, lubrication and Electric Parking Brake (EPB) cable adjustments, wheel alignment, and wheel balancing.

Note: *Brake pads, brake discs, and any other friction related components are covered against manufacturing defects for the duration of the manufacturer's warranty.*

OTHER EXCLUSIONS

Jaguar Land Rover warranties exclude liability for any lost time, inconvenience, loss of transportation, or any other incidental or consequential damage that you (or anyone else) may incur as a result of a defect covered by the warranties.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

The roadside assistance programme provides assistance in motoring emergencies, from immobilisation due to breakdown or accident, to minor emergencies such as punctures. The benefits of the roadside assistance programme are available throughout the Manufacturer's Warranty period.

Contact Numbers

To contact Land Rover Assistance, call the number corresponding to the country where the vehicle was first registered:

Country	Phone number
Australia.	1800 819 181.
Austria.	0800 500 806. If outside Austria +43 1 503 0 806.
Bahrain.	800 00212. If outside Bahrain +9714 331 1130.
Belarus.	882000 718081.
Belgium.	0800 92 291. If outside Belgium +32 3 253 6045.
Croatia.	0800 1002. If outside Croatia +385 1 4693 791.
Czech Republic.	+420 261 000 557.
Denmark.	+45 70 266 566.
Egypt.	0800 755 5555. If outside Egypt +9714 331 1130.
Estonia.	+372 69 79 163.
Finland.	+358 800 13 700.
France.	+33 1 70 94 11 11.

Country	Phone number
Germany.	00800 15263 76837. If outside Germany +49 89 7676 3498.
Gibraltar.	900 314 195. If outside Gibraltar +34 915 949 383.
Greece.	+30 210 60 68 838.
Hungary.	+36 1 345 1754.
India.	1800 103 8545.
Italy.	800 557 999. If outside Italy +39 02 58 286 768.
Jordan.	0777 777 313. If outside Jordan +9714 331 1130.
Kazakhstan.	8800 2008081.
Korea (South).	080 337 9696.
Kuwait.	222 462 17. If outside Kuwait +9714 331 1130.
Latvia.	+371 67 11 22 10.
Lebanon.	(01) 806 690. If outside Lebanon +9714 331 1130.
Lithuania.	+370 52 499 006.
Luxembourg.	+32 3 253 6045.
Morocco.	0801 003 738. If outside Morocco +9714 331 1130.
Netherlands.	0800 555 0777. If outside Netherlands +31 592 390 558.
Norway.	+47 22 65 12 00.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Country	Phone number
Oman.	800 73636. If outside Oman +9714 331 1130.
Poland.	0801 777 980. If outside Poland +48 61 83 19 980.
Portugal.	+351 219 429 116.
Qatar.	44 607 550. If outside Qatar +9714 331 1130.
Republic Of Ireland (R.O.I).	1 800 456 999. If outside R.O.I +353 1 617 9560.
Romania.	+40 21 322 7535.
Russia.	8800 2008081. If outside Russia +74957 778536.
Saudi Arabia.	800 897 1431. If outside Saudi Arabia +9714 331 1130.
Slovakia.	+421 2 492 05 971.
Slovenia.	080 1 457. If outside Slovenia +386 1 5305 357.
Spain.	900 314 195. If outside Spain +34 915 949 383.
Sweden.	+46 771 99 54 00.
Switzerland.	+41 62 788 85 31.
Tunisia.	79 399 007. If outside Tunisia +9714 331 1130.
Ukraine.	+380 44 494 2951.

Country	Phone number
United Arab Emirates (UAE).	800 4647. If outside UAE +9714 331 1130.
United Kingdom.	0800 521 786. If outside UK +44 1926 320 003.
US Diplomatic and Military vehicles in Europe.	If inside Germany 0800 526 7687. If outside Germany +49 89 74 3285 427.

Please have the following information to hand:

- Name.
- Location.
- Registration number or Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).
- A brief description of the incident.
- A contact telephone number.

If the vehicle has been involved in a road traffic accident, describe the extent of the damage and provide details of any third parties involved.

GENERAL CONDITIONS

Financial limitations may apply in some cases. Please refer to the owner section of **www.landrover.com** for further details.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Roadside assistance

The participating countries in Europe are: Andorra, Austria, Belgium, Croatia, Czech Republic, Denmark (excluding the Faeroe Islands), Estonia, Finland (excluding Aland), France, Germany, Gibraltar, Greece, Hungary, Italy, Latvia, Liechtenstein, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Monaco, Netherlands, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Republic of Ireland, San Marino, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain (including the Balearic Islands and Canary Islands), Sweden, Switzerland, and Turkey.

The participating countries in Middle East and North Africa (MENA) are: Bahrain, Egypt, Jordan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Morocco, Oman, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, Tunisia, and United Arab Emirates.

All calls to Land Rover Assistance are recorded to assist in confirming details of calls that may be incomplete or unclear. Recordings may be used for training purposes.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

DECLARATIONS OF CONFORMITY

The following information is correct at the time of print. The digital handbook can be viewed at: **www.ownerinfo.landrover.com** and is updated with the latest available information.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

E150388

SIEMENS VDO
Automotive

SiemensVDO Automotive AG „P.O. Box 10 09 43 „D-93009 Regensburg

Name Dagmar Kolar
Department SV C TS RBG EMC-Laboratory
Tel. +49(0)941/790-6699
Fax +49(0)941/790-136699
E-Mail dagmar.kolar@siemens.com
Internet www.siemensvdo.de
Our Ref. Doc_5WK49096.doc
Date. 03/08/2005

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer: Siemens VDO Automotive AG
Body & Chassis Electronics

Address: Dep. SV C BC P2 RF TG
Siemenstrasse 12
D-93049 Regensburg
Germany

Product type designation: 5WK4 9096

Intended use: Radio frequency receiver used in vehicle locking/unlocking systems

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to §3.1.a: *Applied standard(s):* EN 60950:2000

Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1.b: *Applied standard(s):* EN 301 489-1,-3: V1.4.1 (2002-08)

Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2: *Applied standard(s):* EN 300 220-1: V1.3.1 (2000-09)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:

CE

Siemens VDO Automotive AG

Regensburg, 2005-08-03

i.V. .....
Jean-Francois Tarabbia
Executive Vice President
Body and Chassis Electronics Operations

i.V. .....
Dr. Martin Fischer
Vice President
Wireless Products and Modules

SiemensVDO Automotive AG Body & Chassis Electronics
Helmut Matschi
Klaus Müller
Postal Address: SiemensVDO Automotive AG P.O. Box 10 09 43 D-93009 Regensburg
Office Address: Siemenstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Tel. +49(0)941/790-0

SiemensVDO Automotive AG „Chairman of the Supervisory Board: Edward G. Krubasik „Managing Board: Franz Wesseriq, Chairman „Members: Klaus Egger, Günter Hauptmann, Johann Löttner „Registered Office: München „Commercial Registry: München, HRB 132637

SIEMENS VDO
Automotive

SiemensVDO Automotive AG „P.O. Box 10 09 43 „D-93009 Regensburg

Name Dagmar Kolar
Department SV C TS RBG EMC Laboratory
Tel. +49(0)941/790-6699
Fax +49(0)941/790-1366999
E-Mail dagmar.kolar@siemens.com
Internet www.siemensvdo.de
Our Ref. Doc_S122780002.doc
Date. 09/11/2005

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer: Siemens VDO Automotive AG
Body & Chassis Electronics

Address: Siemensstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Germany

Product type designation: S122780002

Intended use: Radio frequency transmitter used Tire Pressure Monitoring system

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to §3.1.a: *Applied standard(s):* EN 60950: 2000

Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1.b: *Applied standard(s):* EN 301 489 -1,-3: V1.4.1 (2002-08)

Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2: *Applied standard(s):* EN 300 220 -1: V1.3.1 (2000-09)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:

CE

Siemens VDO Automotive AG

Regensburg, 2005-11-09

i.V. .....
Jean-Francois Tarabbia
Executive Vice President
Body and Chassis Electronics Operations

i.V. .....
Dr. Martin Fischer
Vice President
Wireless Products and Modules

SiemensVDO Automotive AG Body & Chassis Electronics
Helmut Matschi
Klaus Müller
Postal Address: SiemensVDO Automotive AG P.O. Box 10 09 43 D-93009 Regensburg
Office Address: Siemensstraße 12 D-93055 Regensburg Tel. +49(0)941/790-0

SiemensVDO Automotive AG „Chairman of the Supervisory Board: Edward G. Krubasik „Managing Board: Franz Wesseriq, Chairman „Members: Klaus Egger, Günter Hauptmann, Johann Löttner „Registered Office: München „Commercial Registry: München, HRB 132637

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

E150389

Lear Corporation
Electronics Systems Division
21557 Telegraph Road
Southfield, MI 48033-4248
USA
Phone (248) 447-1500

Date: February 6, 2009

INFORMATION TO BE INCLUDED IN THE END USER'S MANUAL

The following information must be included in the end product user's manual to ensure continued FCC and Industry Canada regulatory compliance. The ID numbers must be included in the manual if the device label is not readily accessible to the end user. The compliance paragraphs below must be included in the user's manual.

The following user's manual statements are provided by Lear Corporation to Jaguar Land Rover electronically after certification.

Key fobs

Land Rover, Range Rover,

****

FCC ID: KOBJTF10A (Range Rover, Land Rover)
FCC ID: KOBJTF10B (Jaguar)
IC: 3521A-JTF10A (Range Rover, Land Rover)
IC: 3521A-JTF10B (Jaguar)
Model #: AH42-15K601A (Range Rover)
Model #: AH22-15K601A (Land Rover)
Model #: AW93-15K601A (Jaguar)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

****

Lear Corporation
Electronics Systems Division
21557 Telegraph Road
Southfield, MI 48033-4248
USA
Phone (248) 447-1500

RKE Receiver

Land Rover, Range Rover, Jaguar

****

FCC ID: KOBJLR09A
IC: 3521-JLR09A
Model #: AH42-15K602-A

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

****

Passive Entry / Passive Start Module

Land Rover, Range Rover, Jaguar

****

FCC ID: KOBJBG10A
IC: 3521-JBG10A
Model #: AH22-19H440 (PEPS)
Model #: AH42-19H440 (Passive Start ONLY)

FCC ID: KOBJBG10B
IC: 3521-JBG10B
Model #: AH22-19H440 (PEPS)
Model #: AH42-19H440 (Passive Start ONLY)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

E150390

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive.	1999/5/EC
Manufacturer:	Lear Corporation
Type Designation / FCC ID:	KOBJBG10A
Model Numbers:	5E0770257, 5E0770357, 19H440, AH22-19H440, AH42-19H440, AH22-19H440-AD, AH42-19H440-AE
Description / Intended Use:	Remote Function Actuator (RFA), passive keyless entry and start system low frequency initiator
Trademarks.	Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar
Applied Standards.	European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC ETSI EN 60950 ETSI EN 300 330 CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03 AS/NZS 4268 FCC Regulations 47 CFR Part 15
Responsible Person:	Kevin Cotton Lear Corporation 21557 Telegraph Road Southfield, Michigan 48033 United States of America

Hereby, **Lear Corporation** declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of **Directive 1999/5/EC**, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to **Directive 1999/5/EC**

Signed. Kevin Cotton
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date. **27 March 2009**

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive.	1999/5/EC
Manufacturer.	Lear Corporation
Type Designation / FCC ID.	KOBJBG10A
Model Numbers:	5E0770237, 5E0770337, 19H440, AH22-19H440-AC, AH42-19H440-AD, AH22-19H440, AH42-19H440
Description / Intended Use:	Remote Function Actuator (RFA), passive keyless entry and start system low frequency initiator
Trademarks:	Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar
Applied Standards:	European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC ETSI EN 60950 ETSI EN 300 330 CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03 AS/NZS 4268 FCC Regulations 47 CFR Part 15
Responsible Person:	Kevin Cotton Lear Corporation 21557 Telegraph Road Southfield, Michigan 48033 United States of America

Hereby, **Lear Corporation** declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of **Directive 1999/5/EC**, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to **Directive 1999/5/EC**

Signed. Kevin Cotton
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date. **27 March 2009**

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

E150391

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive:	1999/5/EC
Manufacturer:	Lear Corporation
Type Designation:	5E0760127
Model Numbers:	5E0760127, 15K602, AH42-15K602-B, AH42-15K602-BC
Description / Intended Use:	RF Receiver (RFR), used in passive entry and passive start, remote keyless entry, and tire pressure monitoring systems
Trademarks:	Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar
Applied Standards:	European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC ETSI EN 60950 ETSI EN 300 220 CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03 AS/NZS 4268
Responsible Person:	Kevin Cotton Lear Corporation 21557 Telegraph Road Southfield, Michigan 48033 United States of America

Hereby, **Lear Corporation** declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of **Directive 1999/5/EC**, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to **Directive 1999/5/EC**.

Signed: Kevin Cotton
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date: **27 March 2009**

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive:	1999/5/EC
Manufacturer:	Lear Corporation
Type Designation:	15K601
Model Numbers:	5E0B50127, 5E0B60127, 15K601-BB, AH42-15K601B, AH22-15K601B, AH42-15K601-BC, AH22-15K601-BC
Description / Intended Use:	Passive Key (PK) / Customer Identification Device (CID), passive keyless entry system keyfob
Trademarks:	Land Rover / Range Rover
Applied Standards:	CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03 ETSI EN 60950 ETSI EN 300 220 ETSI EN 301 489 IEC EN 60950 AS/NZS 4268
Responsible Person:	Kevin Cotton Lear Corporation 21557 Telegraph Road Southfield, Michigan 48033 United States of America

Hereby, **Lear Corporation** declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of **Directive 1999/5/EC**, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to **Directive 1999/5/EC**.

Signed: Kevin Cotton
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date: **26 March 2009**

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

E150302

QuieTek

快特電波股份有限公司

低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申 請 者：Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商：Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱：RFA (Passive Start)
四、廠牌/型號：LEAR / 5E0770337
五、發射功率（電場強度）：125KHz ; 61.5dBuV/m(Average)
六、工作頻率：125KHz

七、發證日期：98 年 06 月 02 日
八、審驗合格標籤式樣：

CCAH09LP0570T1

說明：

1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼或印錄於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得廢止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 送審廠商應保留送審樣品供日後核對。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬取得本證明者，本證明持有人檢附同意書報請國家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。

備註：

1、本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 2.8節之規定。
2、本驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3、本器材所使用固定式天線廠牌/型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

QuieTek

快特電波股份有限公司

低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申 請 者：Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商：Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱：Range Rover FOB
四、廠牌/型號：Range Rover / 5E0B60227
五、發射功率（電場強度）：315MHz ; 84.195dBuV/m(Peak)
六、工作頻率：315MHz

七、發證日期：98 年 06 月 02 日
八、審驗合格標籤式樣：

CCAH09LP0550T5

說明：

1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼或印錄於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得廢止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 送審廠商應保留送審樣品供日後核對。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬取得本證明者，本證明持有人檢附同意書報請國家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。

備註：

1、本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 3.4.2節之規定。
2、本驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3、本器材所使用固定式天線廠牌/型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

E150393

©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

QuieTek

快特電波股份有限公司

低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申 請 者： Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商： Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱： Range Rover FOB
四、廠牌/型號： Range Rover / 5E0B50227
五、發射功率（電場強度）: 315MHz ; 84.195dBuV/m(Peak)
六、工作頻率： 315MHz

七、發證日期： 98 年 06 月 02 日
八、審驗合格標籤式樣：

CCAH09LP0551T7

說明：

1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼或印錄於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得廢止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 送審廠商應保留送審樣品供日後核對。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬取得本證明者，本證明持有人檢附同意書報請國家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。

備註：

1、本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 3.4.2節之規定。
2、本驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3、本器材所使用固定式天線廠牌/型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

QuieTek

快特電波股份有限公司

低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申 請 者： Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商： Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱： RFA (Passive Start & Start Module)
四、廠牌/型號： LEAR / 5E0770237
五、發射功率（電場強度）: 125KHz ; 63.3dBuV/m(Average)
六、工作頻率： 125KHz

七、發證日期： 98 年 06 月 02 日
八、審驗合格標籤式樣：

CCAH09LP0560T8

說明：

1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼或印錄於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得廢止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 送審廠商應保留送審樣品供日後核對。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬取得本證明者，本證明持有人檢附同意書報請國家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。

備註：

1、本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 2.8節之規定。
2、本驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3、本器材所使用固定式天線廠牌/型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

E150994

QuieTek

快特電波股份有限公司

低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申 請 者：Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商：Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱：Jaguar fob
四、廠牌/型號：JAGUAR / 5E0B4P2TT
五、發射功率（電場強度）：315MHz ; 83.225dBuV/m(Peak)
六、工作頻率：315MHz

七、審驗日期：98 年 07 月 01 日
八、審驗合格標籤式樣：

CCAH09LP0830T1

說明：

1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼或印錄於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得廢止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 送審廠商應保留送審樣品供日後核對。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬取得本證明者，依電信管制射頻器材審驗辦法第15條規定，得有人得經由網際網路申請同意他人於同廠牌同型號之電信管制射頻器材使用型式認證標籤，並於次日起 30 天內，應檢具「電信管制射頻器材審驗合格標籤或符合性聲明標籤同意使用備查表」送本會備查。

備註：

1、本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範(LP0002 3.4.2節)之規定。
2、驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3、本器材使用固定式天線，廠牌/型號為:Lear Corporation / N/A。

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2007

Continental

Continental Automotive GmbH – Postfach 100 953 – 93009 Regensburg

Kolar Dagmar
AQL RBG 42
Phone +49 (941) 790-6699
Fax +49 (941) 790-136699
dagmar.kolar@continental-corporation.com

Date	Your message dated	Our Reference	Your reference
July 29, 2008			

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer:	Continental Automotive GmbH
Address:	Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany
Product type designation:	S180 052 020 A
Intended use:	Tire Pressure System

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to §3.1.a:	*Applied standard(s):* EN 60950-1: 2006
Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1.b:	*Applied standard(s):* EN 301 489 -1: V1.6.1 (2005-09) EN 301 489 -3: V1.4.1 (2002-08)
Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2:	*Applied standard(s):* EN 300 220 -1: V2.1.1 (2006-04) EN 300 220 -2: V2.1.1 (2006-04)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:

CE

Continental Automotive GmbH

Regensburg, 2008-07-29

Andreas Wolf
Executive Vice President
Body &Security

Norbert Müller
Director Product Group 3
Body & Security

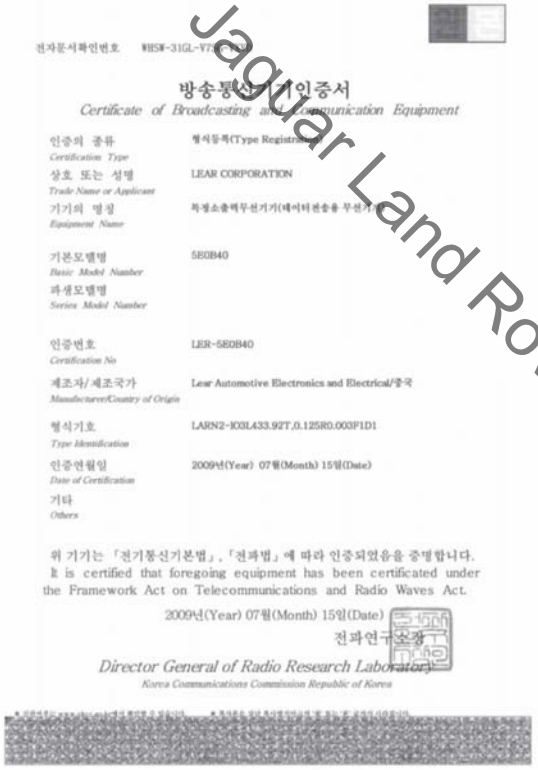
Continental Automotive GmbH
Siemensstr. 12
93055 Regensburg
Postfach 100 953
93009 Regensburg

Phone +49 941 790-0
Fax +49 941 790-4000
www.continental-corporation.com

Registered Office:
Hannover
Registered Court:
Amtsgericht Hannover
HRB 59424

General Managers:
Gerard Cordonnier,
Helmut Matschi,
Harald Stuhlmann

E150395



전자문서확인번호 WHSW-31GL-V7[illegible]

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

인증의 종류 *Certification Type*	형식등록(Type Registration)
상호 또는 성명 *Trade Name or Applicant*	LEAR CORPORATION
기기의 명칭 *Equipment Name*	특정소출력무선기기(데이터전송용 무선기기)
기본모델명 *Basic Model Number*	5E0B40
파생모델명 *Series Model Number*	
인증번호 *Certification No*	LER-5E0B40
제조자/제조국가 *Manufacturer/Country of Origin*	Lear Automotive Electronics and Electrical/중국
형식기호 *Type Identification*	LARN2-103L433.92T,0.125R0.003F1D1
인증연월일 *Date of Certification*	2009년(Year) 07월(Month) 15일(Date)
기타 *Others*	

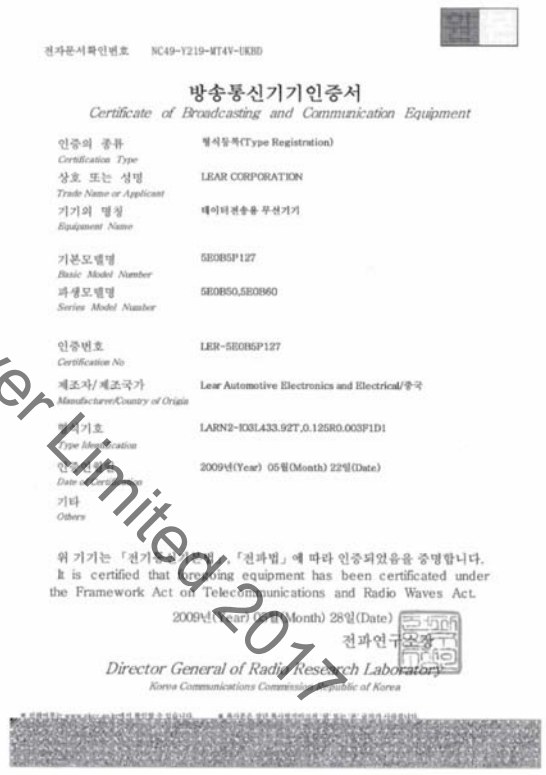
위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

2009년(Year) 07월(Month) 15일(Date)

전파연구소장

Director General of Radio Research Laboratory

Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea



전자문서확인번호 NC49-Y219-MT4V-UKBD

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

인증의 종류 *Certification Type*	형식등록(Type Registration)
상호 또는 성명 *Trade Name or Applicant*	LEAR CORPORATION
기기의 명칭 *Equipment Name*	데이터전송용 무선기기
기본모델명 *Basic Model Number*	5E0B5P127
파생모델명 *Series Model Number*	5E0B50,5E0B60
인증번호 *Certification No*	LER-5E0B5P127
제조자/제조국가 *Manufacturer/Country of Origin*	Lear Automotive Electronics and Electrical/중국
형식기호 *Type Identification*	LARN2-103L433.92T,0.125R0.003F1D1
인증연월일 *Date of Certification*	2009년(Year) 05월(Month) 22일(Date)
기타 *Others*	

위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

2009년(Year) 05월(Month) 28일(Date)

전파연구소장

Director General of Radio Research Laboratory

Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2012

9605513

전자문서확인번호 [illegible]

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

인증의 종류 *Certification Type*	형식등록(Type Registration)
상호 또는 성명 *Trade Name or Applicant*	LEAR CORPORATION
기기의 명칭 *Equipment Name*	비악 전계강도 무선기기
기본모델명 *Basic Model Number*	5E0770237
파생모델명 *Series Model Number*	
인증번호 *Certification No*	LER-5E0770237
제조자/제조국가 *Manufacturer/Country of Origin*	Lear Valls Automotive Electronics and Electrical/스페인
형식기호 *Type Identification*	LPD-I03L0.125TA1D
인증연월일 *Date of Certification*	2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)
기타 *Others*	

위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

전파연구소장

Director General of Radio Research Laboratory

Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

전자문서확인번호 JVC5-A5YQ-BF4C-1D8T

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

인증의 종류 *Certification Type*	형식등록(Type Registration)
상호 또는 성명 *Trade Name or Applicant*	LEAR CORPORATION
기기의 명칭 *Equipment Name*	비악 전계강도 무선기기
기본모델명 *Basic Model Number*	5E0770237
파생모델명 *Series Model Number*	5E0770337
인증번호 *Certification No*	LER-5E0770237
제조자/제조국가 *Manufacturer/Country of Origin*	Lear Valls Automotive Electronics and Electrical/스페인
형식기호 *Type Identification*	LPD-I03L0.125TA1D
인증연월일 *Date of Certification*	2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)
기타 *Others*	

위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 18일(Date)

전파연구소장

Director General of Radio Research Laboratory

Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

E150937

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

ICASA

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
Pinmill Farm, 164 Katherine Street, Sandton
Private Bag X10002, Sandton, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2009/302

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document (see overleaf), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name	:	**Jaguar Land Rover SA**
Street Address	:	**Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton**
Telephone Number	:	**012 842 3274**
Facsimile Number	:	**012 845 1005**
Registration Number	:	**2001/027269/07**

Description of Apparatus

Category	:	**Remote Function Actuator (RFA)**
Model	:	**KOBJBG10B**
Frequency Range	:	**119 – 135 kHz**
ITU Emission Code	:	**12KG1D**
Modulation	:	**BPSK**
Power Output	:	**+37.7 DbµA/m @ 3m**
Channel Spacing	:	-
Features	:	-

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

Philemon Molefe
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

0 9 JUN 2009

P Mashile (**Chairperson**), NA Buthi, TLV Makhakhe, R Nkuna, BB Ntombela, FK Sibande, Dr MM Soukwa
Prof JCW van Rooyen SC, MM Zokwe (**Councillors**), **BK Motlana (CEO)**

ICASA

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
Pinmill Farm, 164 Katherine Street, Sandton
Private Bag X10002, Sandton, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2009/303

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document (see overleaf), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name	:	**Jaguar Land Rover SA**
Street Address	:	**Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton**
Telephone Number	:	**012 842 3274**
Facsimile Number	:	**012 845 1005**
Registration Number	:	**2001/027269/07**

Description of Apparatus

Category	:	**Remote Function Actuator (RFA)**
Model	:	**KOBJBG10A**
Frequency Range	:	**119 – 135 kHz**
ITU Emission Code	:	**12KG1D**
Modulation	:	**BPSK**
Power Output	:	**+40.7 DbµA/m @ 3m**
Channel Spacing	:	-
Features	:	-

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

Philemon Molefe
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

0 9 JUN 2009

P Mashile (**Chairperson**), NA Buthi, TLV Makhakhe, R Nkuna, BB Ntombela, FK Sibande, Dr MM Soukwa
Prof JCW van Rooyen SC, MM Zokwe (**Councillors**), **BK Motlana (CEO)**

E150398



Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
Pinmill Farm, 164 Katherine Street, Sandton
Private Bag X10002, Sandton, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2009/304

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document (see overleaf), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name	:	**Jaguar Land Rover SA**
Street Address	:	**Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton**
Telephone Number	:	**012 842 3274**
Facsimile Number	:	**012 845 1005**
Registration Number	:	**2001/027269/07**

Description of Apparatus

Category	:	**Low Frequency Initiator FET Receiver**
Model	:	**5E0760127**
Frequency Range	:	**433.05 – 434.79 MHz**
ITU Emission Code	:	**739KK1D**
Modulation	:	**ASK, FSK**
Power Output	:	-
Channel Spacing	:	-
Features	:	-

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

Philemon Molefe
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

0 9 JUN 2009

P Mashile (Chairperson), NA Batyi, TLV Makhakhe, R Nkuna, BB Ntombela, FK Sibande, Dr MM Sucklwa,



Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
Pinmill Farm, 164 Katherine Street, Sandton
Private Bag X10002, Sandton, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2009/305

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document (see overleaf), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name	:	**Jaguar Land Rover SA**
Street Address	:	**Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton**
Telephone Number	:	**012 842 3274**
Facsimile Number	:	**012 845 1005**
Registration Number	:	**2001/027269/07**

Description of Apparatus

Category	:	**Key Fob Transmitter**
Model	:	**15K601**
Frequency Range	:	**433.05 MHz**
ITU Emission Code	:	**739KK1D**
Modulation	:	**ASK, FSK**
Power Output	:	**-14.6 dBm**
Channel Spacing	:	-
Features	:	-

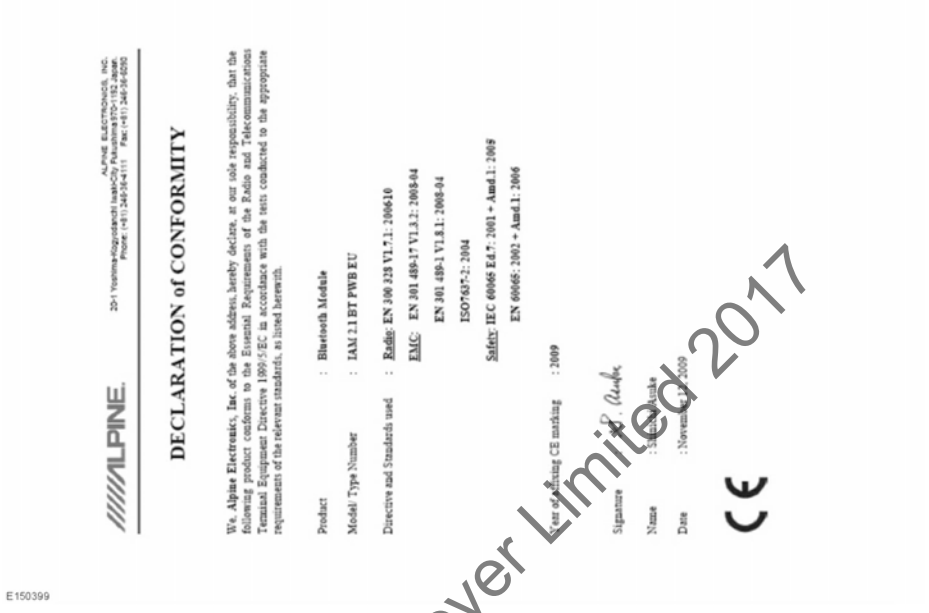
Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

Philemon Molefe
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

0 9 JUN 2009

P Mashile (Chairperson), NA Batyi, TLV Makhakhe, R Nkuna, BB Ntombela, FK Sibande, Dr MM Sucklwa,
Prof JCW van Rooyen SC, MM Zrikwe (Councillors), BK Motlana (CEO)

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017



ALPINE

DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

We, Alpine Electronics, Inc. of the above address, hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed herewith.

Product : Bluetooth Module

Model Type Number : IAM-2.1 BT PWB EU

Directive and Standards used : Radio: EN 300 328 V1.7.1: 2006/10

EMC: EN 301 489-17 V1.3.2: 2008-04

EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1: 2008-04

ISO7637-2: 2004

Safety: IEC 60065 Ed.7: 2001 + Amd.1: 2005

EN 60065: 2002 + Amd.1: 2006

Year of affixing CE marking : 2009

Signature

Name : Shinichi Tanake

Date : November 1, 2009

CE

E150399

The following information relates to Infotainment System Radio Type Approval Declarations.

The notices below apply to the following variants:

Model name: IMC1.0_ROW and ISC1.0

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Type approval

Česky [Czech]	Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. tímto prohlašuje, že tento "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Dansk [Danish]	Undertegnede Jaguar Land Rover Ltd.erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch [German]	Hiermit erklärt Jaguar Land Rover Ltd., dass sich das Gerät "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Eesti [Estonian]	Käesolevaga kinnitab Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. seadme "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
English	Hereby, Jaguar Land Rover Ltd., declares that this "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español [Spanish]	Por medio de la presente Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. declara que el "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Ελληνική [Greek]	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Jaguar Land Rover Ltd.ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Français [French]	Par la présente Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. déclare que l'appareil "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Italiano [Italian]	Con la presente Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. dichiara che questo "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviski [Latvian]	Ar šo Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. deklarē, ka "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių [Lithuanian]	Šiuo Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. deklaruoja, kad šis "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Nederlands [Dutch]	Hierbij verklaart Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. dat het toestel "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Malti [Maltese]	Hawnhekk, Jaguar Land Rover Ltd., jiddikjara li dan "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Magyar [Hungarian]	Alulírott,Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. nyilatkozom, hogy a "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Polski [Polish]	Niniejszym Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. oświadcza, że "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português [Portuguese]	Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. declara que este "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovensko [Slovenian]	Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. izjavlja, da je ta "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Slovensky [Slovak]	Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. týmto vyhlasuje, že "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Suomi [Finnish]	Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. vakuuttaa täten että [type of equipment = laitteen tyyppimerkintä] tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Svenska [Swedish]	Härmed intygar Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. att denna "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Íslenska [Icelandic]	Hér með lýsir Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. yfir því að "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Norsk [Norwegian]	Jaguar Land Rover Ltd. erklærer herved at utstyret "IMC1.0_ROW", "ISC1.0" er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

E182096

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

4x4i
4WD information.....187
vehicle dimensions.....188
4WD information drive assist.....189
4WD information low traction launch.....188
4WD information wade sensing.....189
4WD off-road features and information.....186
off-road information
terrain response information.....187
4x4i 4 wheel drive information.....188

A

About this handbook.....2
ACC
follow mode off.....171
forward alert.....173
forward alert sensitivity.....173
Access height (air suspension).....143
Accessories.....325
tow ball.....126
ACC radar beam limitations.....172
Active differential control.....156
Activity key
unlocking.....13
Adaptive cruise control.....168
adaptive cruise control gap change.....171
automatic switch off.....169
intelligent emergency braking.....174
malfunction.....173
queue assist.....171
Adaptive cruise control follow mode.....170
Adaptive cruise control limitations.....172
Adaptive cruise control override.....169
Adaptive driving beam.....86
Adaptive dynamics.....147
Adaptive front lighting system.....86
Adaptive headlamps.....86
Adaptive speed limiter warning lamp.....76, 80
AdBlue.....315
Advanced tow assist
trailer reverse.....116
AEB.....150
Age degradation (tyres).....363
Airbags
cover cleaning.....334
curtain.....62
deployment.....60, 62
disability modifications.....65
disabling.....63
front.....62
locations.....59
maintenance.....325
obstruction.....61
service information.....64
side.....62
warning lamp.....62, 76
Air conditioning
air quality sensor.....248
automatic recirculation.....248
front.....246
remote control batteries.....258
using the remote control.....257
Air conditioning (a/c)
fluid top up.....323
Air suspension
access height.....143
auto access height.....143
DSC fault safety override.....148
extended mode.....143
locked access height.....145
off-road height.....142
rear height adjust.....146
safety override lowering height.....148
Alarm.....325
automatic relocking and arming.....26
battery back-up sounder.....27
deactivating.....27
disabling the interior motion sensor alarm sensors.....27
passive arming.....27
security sensor fault.....29
tilt sensor.....27

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Index

Alarm sensors
interior motion sensor.....27
All terrain progress control (ATPC)
overview
settings.....176, 178
Amber exhaust fluid warning lamp.....77
Anchor points
ISOFIX and i-Size.....56
Anchor points (luggage).....109
Anti-lock braking system
emergency stop signal.....153
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) warning lamp.....77
Anti-theft system.....325
Anti-trap mechanism
sunroof blind.....102
Anti-trap protection
sunroof.....102
windows.....101
Approach lights.....85
ARLA 32.....315
Assistance 24.....412
Assistance contact numbers.....412
ATPC
using.....176, 178
Audio
AM/FM radio controls.....221
automatic station retune.....223
changing portable media device.....233
DAB radio
controls.....224
settings.....226
full screen view.....237
licensing.....217, 219
media controls.....213
portable media connections.....227
portable media controls.....230
portable media pairing.....233
portable media playing.....232
rear media touch screen control.....215
settings.....216
sound settings.....217
TV controls.....238
Audio settings.....216
AUS 32.....315
Auto access height.....143
Auto lamps
wiper detection.....85
Automatic locking.....21, 26
Automatic speed limiter
warning lamp.....78, 80
Automatic switch off of adaptive cruise control.....169
Automatic transmission.....137
gear shift warning lamp.....79
Autonomous emergency braking (AEB).....150
Auto program.....180
Auto start.....135
Auto stop.....135
Auto zoom (navigation).....288
Auxiliary device connection.....232
Auxiliary heater.....254
Auxiliary power sockets.....104

B

Battery
boost starting.....348
care.....345
charging.....348
connecting jump leads.....346
disconnection.....349
effects of disconnection.....349
maintenance.....345
monitoring system.....349
removing.....348
replacing.....348
using a starting aid.....348
warning lamp.....75
warning symbols.....345
Battery back-up sounder.....27
Blinds
rear window.....100
Blind spot assist
side collision avoidance.....194
Blind spot monitor
closing vehicle sensing.....192

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

displayed messages.....195
notification of overtaking vehicle.....191
sensor blockage.....195
Bluetooth
compatibility.....276
general information.....281
pairing
via the phone.....276
phone
icons.....278
safety.....275
portable media
pairing.....233
playing.....232
Bluetooth phone
call volume.....279
overview.....273
steering wheel controls.....278
Bonnet
closing.....327
opening.....327
Booster seats for larger children.....56
Boost starting.....348
Brakes
ABS warning lamp.....77
autonomous braking.....150
control with ABS.....149
electronic brake force distribution...150
emergency assist.....174
emergency brake assist.....149
emergency stop signal.....153
fluid check.....342
fluid specification.....343
fluid top up.....343
handbrake.....152
hill start assist.....153
important information.....149
parking brake warning lamp.....75
steep slope control.....149
warning lamp (amber).....77
warning lamp (red).....75
Brake temperature.....160
Bulbs
changing a bulb.....328

C

Cameras
hitch assist.....114
single rear view camera.....267
Capacities.....390
engine oil.....390
fuel tank.....390
washer reservoir.....390
Carpets and mats.....334
Car-wash.....331
CD player
portable media pairing.....233
portable media playing.....232
Cell phone
call volume.....279
icons.....278
overview.....273
steering wheel controls.....278
Changing a bulb.....328
Changing a fuse.....351
Changing a wheel
locking wheel nuts.....377
recommended process.....378
safety warnings.....374
spare wheel.....375
temporary spare wheel.....376
Charging the vehicle battery.....348
Chassis number.....387
Check engine warning lamp.....77
Checks before switching adaptive cruise control on.....169
Child safety
booster seats.....56
check list.....56
child seats.....49
ISOFIX and i-Size anchor points.....56
larger children on booster seats.....56
lock and window inhibitor.....49
positioning.....51
recommended child seats.....55
tether straps.....58

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

L

Index

Cleaning
after off-road driving....331
airbag covers....334
alloy wheels....331
automatic car wash....331
carpets and mats....334
engine compartment....331
exterior....330
glass....331
interior....332
leather....333
park assist sensors....331
parking aids sensors....331
polishing....332
rear screen....332
removing grease....332
removing stains....333
removing tar....332
seat belts....334
sensors and cameras....331
sunroof....332
using a car-wash....331
washer jets....335
wipers....334
Cleaning the wiper blades....334
Climate and comfort
fuel burning heater....254
remote control batteries....258
timed climate remote controls....258
using the remote control....257
Climate and comfort settings....248
Climate control
automatic recirculation....248
climate seats....253
front....246
fuel burning heater....254
heated seats....253
rear....249
remote control batteries....258
seat comfort....252
timed climate remote controls....258
using the remote control....257
Climate settings....248
Clock....66
Closing the bonnet....327
Closing vehicle sensing....192
Comfort program....181
Commandshift....137
Condensation (headlamps)....88
Configurable dynamics....183
Conformity declarations....415
Connecting jump leads....346
Connectivity
connecting a sim card....311
mobile data connectivity....311
status icons....312
wi-Fi connectivity....312
Controlling adaptive cruise control....168
Controls
adaptive cruise control....169
adaptive speed limiter....163
speed limiter....161
Controls cleaning....332
Convenience mode....15
Coolant
checking the level....340
specification....341
top up....341
Courtesy delay....85
Covers
refitting....327
removal....327
Critical warning messages....75
Cruise control....166
adaptive cruise control....168
adaptive cruise control emergency braking....174
adaptive cruise control gap change....171
adaptive cruise control malfunction....173
forward alert sensitivity....173
warning lamp....79
Cruise control buttons....168
Cruise control forward alert....173
Curtain airbags....62

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

D

DAB radio
settings....226
DAB radio controls....224
Data recording....385
Daytime running lamps....84
Declarations of conformity....415
DEF....315
consumption rate....389
DEF warning lamp....75, 77
Deployable side steps....20
Detachable tow ball....118
removing....119
Diesel
anti misfuel device active....320
fuel....314
glow plugs
warning lamp....78
misfuel device passive....320
sulphur content....315
water in fuel....318
Diesel engines....318
Diesel exhaust fluid (DEF)
consumption rate....389
Diesel particulate filter (DPF)....324
sulphur content....315
Differential control....156
Dimensions....393
Dipped beam
warning lamps....79
Direction indicators....83, 87
warning lamp....79
Disability modifications
airbags....65
Disabling the passenger airbag....63
Displays....334
Display settings
lower touch screen....212
touch screen....211
Door mirrors....94
blind spot assist....194
blind spot monitor....191
closing vehicle sensing....192
sensors....195
Door transceiver
assistance....98
erase all programming....98
programming....96
programming a single button....98
programming the garage door opener....96
Double locking....23
Downloading from the internet
InControl hotspot....306
DPF....324
Drive assist
4x4i 4 wheel drive information....189
Drive away locking....21
Driver exit
deactivating intelligent stop/start....136
Driver fatigue monitoring....198
Driver modes
comfort program....181
Driving
activating intelligent stop/start....135
active differential....156
adaptive cruise control....168
adaptive cruise control automatic switch-off....169
adaptive cruise control emergency braking....174
adaptive cruise control gap change....171
adaptive cruise control malfunction....173
after a collision....385
autonomous braking....150
before starting....385
blind spot assist....194
blind spot monitor....191
closing vehicle sensing....192
blind spot monitor messages....195
brake control with ABS....149
brakes important information....149
daily checks....324
deactivating intelligent stop/start....136

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Index

DSC active warning lamp.....77
DSC configurable modes.....183
electronic brake force distribution...150
emergency brake assist.....149
emergency stop signal.....153
follow mode.....170
forward alert.....173
forward alert warning lamp.....79
fuel filler information.....319
gear shift warning lamp.....79
hill start assist.....153
lane departure warning lamp (green).....80
lane departure warning lamp (red)....76
low oil pressure.....76
overriding ACC.....169
queue assist (adaptive cruise control).....171
rain sensor.....92
running-in.....323
sitting correctly.....32
steep slope control with ABS.....149
switching follow mode off.....171
using cruise control.....166
weekly checks.....324
Driving abroad
beam pattern.....85
headlamps.....85
Driving aids
cameras
proximity view.....199
touch screen menu.....199
lane departure warning.....195
traffic sign recognition.....198
Driving assist.....197
Driving behaviour.....198
Driving programs
auto.....180
dynamic program.....182
grass/gravel/snow.....181
mud/ruts.....181
override options.....184
sand.....181
system difficulties.....184
Driving Style
ECO data score.....71
Driving style
ECO efficiency for accelerator speed and brake.....71
Drowsiness monitoring.....198
Dynamic program.....182
Dynamic stability control (DSC).....155
configurable.....183
DSC active warning lamp.....77
DSC off warning lamp.....78
switching off.....155
switching on.....156

E

ECO data driving style
driving style.....71
Eco program
fuel saving.....181
Effects of battery disconnection.....349
Electric parking brake.....152
Electric seats.....31
head restraints.....39
position memory.....33
rear seats
adjusting the seatback.....35
restricted front seat travel.....32
Electric windows
operation.....100
Electronic air suspension.....141
Electronic brake force distribution.....150
Electronic data.....385
Email
InControl hotspot.....306
Emergency brake assist.....149, 174
Emergency key locking.....28
Emergency stop signal.....153
hazard warning lamps.....153
Engine
antifreeze level.....340
compartment opening.....327
coolant level.....340
diesel.....318

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

diesel fuel.....314
oil level.....338
petrol fuels.....313
running-in.....323
specifications.....389
switching off.....131
Engine compartment
fluid filler locations.....336
Engine compartment cleaning.....331
Engine covers
refitting.....327
removal.....327
Engine oil
capacity.....390
Engine performance data.....389
Engine pre-heater
antifreeze.....133
cold starting.....133
connecting to mains supply.....133
Engine starting.....131
failure to start.....133
Engine temperature warning lamp.....76
Entering the vehicle
activity key.....13
entry and exit mode.....43
global opening.....14
keyless entry.....12
passive entry.....12
unlocking mode.....12
Ethanol.....314
Event data recording.....385
Exhaust filter.....315, 324
Exhaust fluid
diesel.....315
Exiting the vehicle
arming the alarm.....28
closing mislock.....25
door locks and handles.....26
double locking.....23
emergency locking.....28
global closing.....26
interior locks.....26
keyless locking.....24
lock confirmation.....25
passive arming.....27
single locking.....23
Extended mode (air suspension).....143
Exterior cleaning.....330
Exterior lamps
bulb changing.....328
Exterior lighting
laser.....87
Exterior lights
overview.....82
Exterior mirrors
electric.....94
manual.....94
mirror dip when reversing.....95
External temperature
warning lamp.....78
Extinguisher.....329
Extra feature.....186
Extra feature 4x4i
4WD off-road features and
information.....186

F

Fatigue monitoring.....198
Fire extinguisher.....329
Flat spots.....362
Fluids
air conditioning (a/c) fluid.....323
brake
check.....342
specification.....343
top up.....343
capacities.....390
coolant
specification.....341
top up.....341
engine oil
check.....338
filler locations.....336
oil
top up.....340
specifications.....389
washer fluid.....344

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Index

check.....343
specification.....344
Fog lamps
warning lamps
front.....79
rear.....78
Following another vehicle.....170
Follow mode
gap change.....171
gap changing.....171
off.....81
Follow mode off.....171
Follow mode override.....169
Forward alert sensitivity.....173
Forward alert warning lamp.....79
Forward parking aids
forward traffic detection.....269
Forward vehicle guidance
object detection.....201
steering path.....201
Four wheel drive (4WD).....156
Front airbags.....62
Front climate control
automatic recirculation.....248
Front towing eye.....382
Fuel and refuelling.....319
anti misfuel device active.....320
consumption.....321
diesel.....314
diesel fuel sulphur content.....315
ethanol.....314
fuel filler.....319
fuel filler flap.....319
methanol.....314
methyl tertiary butyl ether (MTBE)...314
misfuel device passive.....320
octane rating.....313
petrol.....313
running out.....317
safety precautions.....313
tank capacity.....321
water in fuel.....318
Fuel burning heater.....254
Fuel can.....317
Fuel consumption.....321
combined cycles.....322
extra-urban cycle.....322
urban cycle.....322
Fuel filler flap.....319
Fuel filter information.....319
Fuel gauge.....66
Fuel saving
eco program.....181
Fuel system.....328
Fuel tank
capacity.....390
Full screen view for video.....237
Fuses
changing.....351
engine compartment fuse box.....352
loadspace fuse box.....355
locations.....350
luggage compartment.....355
passenger compartment fuse box...353

G

Garage door opener.....96
assistance.....98
erase all programming.....98
programming.....96
programming a single button.....98
Garage door transceiver.....96
Gearbox
automatic.....137
emergency park release.....383
gear shift warning lamp.....79
limp home mode.....139
Gesture tailgate.....19
Glass cleaning.....331
Global closing.....26
Global opening.....14
Glow plugs
warning lamp.....78
Gradient release control
ascent brake release.....159
Grass/gravel/snow.....181

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

H
Handbook symbols....2
Handbrake....152
Hands free tailgate opening....19
Hazard warning lamps
emergency stop signal....153
Headlamps....83
adaptive....86
adaptive driving beam....86
approach lights....85
beam pattern....85
bulb changing....328
condensation....88
courtesy delay....85
daytime running lamps....84
driving abroad....85
high beam assist....85
high beam assist warning lamp....79
high beam warning lamp....80
washers....93
Headlight
washers....93
Headlights
laser....87
Head restraint overview....38
Head restraints
electric seats....39
front seats....38
rear seats....40
Head restraint warnings....38
Head up display....71
Heated steering wheel....43
Heating and ventilation
air quality sensor....248
automatic recirculation....248
climate seats....253
front....246
heated seats....253
rear....249
High beam assist....85
Hill descent control....158
brake release control....159
brake temperature....160
warning lamp....79
Hill start assist....153
Hitch assist
cameras....114
Homelink....96
assistance....98
erase all programming....98
programming....96
programming a single button....98
programming the garage door opener....96
Homepage
internet....309
web browser....309
I
Ignition
rolling re-start....132
switching on....131
InControl
apps....307
connected navigation....291
overview....298
pro services....304
secure....308
wi-fi hotspot....306
Indicator lamps....73, 87
Indicators....87
Indicators warning lamp....79
Information messages....69, 78
Infotainment
automatic station retune....223
connecting a media device....228
DAB radio
settings....226
DAB radio controls....224
full screen view....237
headphones....241
importing/ripping media....234
licensing....219
lower touch screen
home menu....204
media controls....213
media player controls....235

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Index

portable media
changing....233
connecting multiple devices....232
connections....227
controls....230
pairing....233
playing....232
radio controls....221
rear media touch screen control....215
settings....216
sound settings....217
touch screen
care....208
extra features....209
home menu....202
my home screen....206
operating....207
TV controls....238
Instrument panel....66, 334
display units....70
fuel range....70
head up display....71
lamp test....74
menu....68
driving features....68
instrument display....68
trip computer....68
vehicle set-up....68
recommended tyre pressures....367
service indicator....71
trip computer....69
trip distance....70
tyre pressure check....367
warning lamps....74
warning messages....69
Instrument panel menu
navigation information....291
Intelligent emergency braking
adaptive cruise control....174
Intelligent stop/start....135
activating....135
deactivating....136
Intelligent stop/start inhibit lamp....80
Intelligent stop/start warning
lamp....79–80
Interior cleaning....332
airbag covers....334
carpets and mats....334
Interior lamps....89
bulb changing....328
intensity....90
interior mood lighting....90
stealth mode....90
types....89
Interior locking....26
Interior motion sensor
temporary disabling
alarm sensors....27
Internet
homepage....309
Internet browsing
InControl hotspot....306
Introduction
instructional videos....3
Intrusion sensor
alarm sensors....27
ISOFIX and i-Size anchor points....56

J

Jump starting
connecting a starting aid....348
connecting jump leads....346

K

Keyless entry....12
Keyless locking....24
Keyless start backup....132
Key transmitters....15
Kick gesture tailgate opening....19

L

Label locations....387
Lamps....83
auto lamps wiper detection....85
bulb changing....328
condensation....88
test....74
TPMS warning lamp....78

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

warning lamps....74
Lane departure warning....195
warning lamps....80
Lane departure warning lamp (green)...80
Lane departure warning lamp (red)....76
Lane drifting....197
Laser
lighting....87
Leather cleaning....333
Licensing
audio/video....217
Lighting
interior lamps intensity....90
interior lamps locations....89
interior mood lighting....90
stealth mode....90
Limitations
adaptive cruise control....172
Limiting vehicle speed....161
Limp home mode....139
Load carrying
luggage divider....111
securing a load....106
Load securing....109
Loadspace cover....107
Locked access height....145
Locking
automatic relocking....26
confirmation....25
door locks and handles....26
double locking....23
drive away....21
emergency locking....28
global closing....26
in an emergency....28
keyless....24
mislock....25
security sensor fault....29
single....23
transmitter effects on medical devices....15
with the emergency key....28
Locking wheel nuts....377
Lower touch screen
display settings....212
Low fuel warning lamp....78
Low oil pressure warning lamp....76
Low traction launch
4x4i 4 wheel drive information....188
Lubricants specifications....389
Luggage
loadspace area....106
Luggage compartment
anchor points....109
divider and rails....111
loadspace cover....107

M

Maintenance
after off-road driving....331
air conditioning (a/c)....323
brake fluid level....342
bulb changing....328
capacities....390
changing a fuse....351
checking tyre pressure after a repair....373
cleaning
alloy wheels....331
exterior....330
glass....331
interior....332
leather....333
rear screen....332
seat belts....334
sensors and cameras....331
the engine compartment....331
closing the bonnet....327
daily checks....324
engine compartment fuse box....352
engine coolant level....340
engine oil level....338
fuel system....328
fuse box (passenger compartment)....353
jump starting....348
label locations....387

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Index

loadspace fuse box....355
lubricants and fluid specifications....389
oil top up....340
paintwork repair....335
polishing....332
removing grease and tar....332
removing stains....333
running-in....323
smart key battery....22
sunroof wind deflector....332
tyre repair procedure....370
tyre repair system....369
using a starting aid....348
washer fluid level....343
weekly checks....324
Manual seats....30
head restraints....38
Map
auto zoom....288
split screen....288
updates....291
Massage seats....253
Media
automatic station retune....223
portable media
connecting a media device....228
importing/ripping media....234
radio controls....221
rear media
headphones....241
home screen....244
video media player controls....235
Media controls....213
side panel....203
Memory seats....33
Message centre display units....70
Methanol....314
Minor paintwork repairs....335
Mirrors
blind spot monitor....191–192, 195
dip when reversing....95
exterior mirrors....94
Misfuel device active....320
Misfuel device passive....320
Monitoring driver behaviour....198
Mpg....321
Mud/ruts....181

N

Navigation
address entry....285
adjusting the volume....289
alerts....290
approach mode....293
connected navigation....291
door to door routing....294
edit route....289
favourites....290
from the rear seats....288
fuel finder....291
fuel prices service....293
instrument panel view....291
main menu
search....286
map
auto zoom....288
split screen....288
updates....291
menu....285
my commute....292
online routing....293
online service....293
operating....282
overview....282
profiles....294
real time traffic flow....292
route planning web portal....294
safety cameras....293
satellite view....293
search....286
settings....289
share....294
side panel....203
view options....290
News
side panel....203

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

O
Obstructing the airbag.....61
Occupant safety
child seat tether straps.....58
cleaning seat belts.....334
recommended child seats.....55
seat belt checks.....47
seat belt pre-tensioners.....46
seat belt reminder warning.....48
seat belt safety.....46
seat belts warning lamp.....76
using seat belts.....44
Octane rating.....313
petrol.....313
Off-road driving
auto program.....180
cleaning after.....331
comfort program.....181
dynamic program.....182
grass/gravel/snow.....181
mud/ruts.....181
override options.....184
recovery.....383
sand program.....181
system difficulties.....184
Off-road features and information
4x4i extra feature.....186
Off-road height.....142
Off-road information
4x4i.....187
Oil
engine oil specification.....340
filler locations.....336
specification.....389
top up.....340
used engine oil.....326
Online service history (OSH).....399
Opening the bonnet.....327
OSH
online service history.....399
Oversteer.....155
Overview
exterior lights.....82
head restraints.....38
InControl mobile technology.....298
indicator lamps.....73
warning lamps.....73
Owner maintenance.....324
P
Paintwork
repair.....335
Pairing
via the phone.....276
Park assist
cleaning sensors and cameras.....331
limitations.....266
options.....262
selecting.....264
troubleshooting.....267
using.....264
Parking aid
limitations.....261
Parking aids
adjusting the volume.....261
cleaning sensors and cameras.....331
forward traffic detection.....269
reverse traffic detection (RTD).....271
single rear view camera.....267
system fault.....262
Parking brake.....152
warning lamp.....75
Parking features
park assist.....262
limitations.....266
selecting.....264
troubleshooting.....267
using.....264
using.....259
Park position emergency release.....383
Particle filter.....324
Parts.....325
Passenger compartment fuse box.....353
Passive alarm arming.....27
Passive entry.....12
Petrol
fuel types.....313

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Index

Petrol consumption.....321
Phone
  Bluetooth compatibility.....276
  call volume.....279
  compatibility list.....276
  contacts.....279
  icons.....278
  managing two calls.....277
  merge calls.....278
  overview.....273
  pairing via the phone.....276
  side panel.....203
  steering wheel controls.....278
Phone safety.....275
Polishing the bodywork.....332
Portable media
  Bluetooth wireless technology.....281
  changing device.....233
  connecting a media device.....228
  connecting multiple devices.....232
  connections.....227
  controls.....230
  importing/ripping media.....234
  pairing.....233
  playing.....232
Powered tailgate.....17
  opening height.....19
  resetting the memory.....19
Powered tow ball.....120
Power sockets.....104
Pregnancy
  using seat belts.....45
Pressure checking (tyres)
  checking after a repair.....373
Pressures
  tyres.....360
Progress control warning lamp.....76
Puncture repair system.....369
  instructions for use.....370
  repair procedure.....370
  safety.....369
Push button start backup.....132

Q

QR codes for smart phones
  instructional videos.....3
Queue assist
  adaptive cruise control.....171

R

Radio
  automatic station retune.....223
  DAB
    settings.....226
  DAB controls.....224
Radio frequency ID (RFID).....102
Radio frequency regulations.....396
Rain sensor.....92
Rear camera
  hitch assist.....114
Rear fog lamps warning lamp.....78
Rear height adjust (air suspension).....146
Rear media
  headphones.....241
  home screen.....244
  remote control
    batteries.....244
  remote control use.....243
  screens overview.....245
  touch screen control.....215
Rear screen cleaning.....332
Rear seat entertainment
  headphones.....241
  home screen.....244
  remote control.....243
  remote control batteries.....244
Rear seats
  adjusting the seatback.....35
  folding and raising.....35
Rear seat screens
  home menu.....244
  navigation.....288
  overview.....245
  rear climate.....249
Rear towing eye.....383
Rear window blind.....100
Recommended tyre pressures.....367

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Recording
event data....385
service data....385
Recovery
off-road....383
transmission park release....383
transporting....382
Red exhaust fluid warning lamp....75
Refuelling
diesel....314
diesel fuel sulphur content....315
ethanol....314
fuel filler flap....319
methanol....314
MTBE....314
octane rating....313
petrol....313
running out of fuel....317
safety precautions....313
Reminder (seat belt)....48
Remote control
batteries....244
care....22
rear media....243
single locking....23
smart key battery....22
system transmitters....395
Removing stains....333
Removing the spare wheel....375
Removing the vehicle battery....348
Repairing paintwork damage....335
Replacement tyres....362
Resetting the windows....329
Restarting the engine while moving...132
Restricted front seat travel....32
Reverse parking aids
adjusting the volume....261
parking aid system fault....262
reverse traffic detection (RTD)....271
using....259
Reverse trailer....115
Reversing
parking aid limitations....261
Roadside Assistance....412
Road sign recognition....198
Rolling re-start....132
Rolling roads....326
Running-in....323
Running out of fuel....317

S

Safety
child safety locks....49
cleaning seat belts....334
fuel and refuelling....313
seat belt checks....47
seat belt pre-tensioners....46
seat belt reminder warning....48
seat belts....46
seat belts warning lamp....76
seats for larger children....56
sitting correctly....32
TPMS pressure compensation....362
tyre care....359
tyre pressures....360
used engine oil....326
use seat belts during pregnancy....45
using seat belts....44
using the phone....275
Safety camera alert
adjusting the volume....289
Safety in the garage
battery precautions....326
electrical components....326
engine fans....326
exhaust gases....326
hot components....326
jacking....326
Sand program....181
Satellite navigation
address entry....285
alerts....290
approach mode....293
connected navigation....291
door to door routing....294
edit route....289
favourites....290

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Index

fuel finder....291
fuel prices service....293
instrument panel view....291
map
auto zoom....288
split screen....288
updates....291
menu....285
my commute....292
online routing....293
online service....293
operating....282
overview....282
profiles....294
real time traffic flow....292
route planning web portal....294
safety cameras....293
satellite view....293
search....286
settings....289
share....294
view options....290
Screen wash
check....343
specification....389
topping up....344
Seat belts....44, 334
adjusting....44
checks....47
pre-tensioners....46
reminder warning....48
safety....46
use during pregnancy....45
warning lamp....76
Seats
adjusting the seatback....35
child restraint check list....56
child seat positioning....51
child seats....49
child seat tether straps....58
cleaning seat belts....334
climate seats....253
comfort and adjustment....252
electric front....31
electric front head restraints....39
front head restraints....38
heated....253
manual front....30
position memory....33
rear head restraints....40
rear seat folding and raising....35
rear seat screens overview....245
recommended child seats....55
remote seats
settings....254
restricted front seat travel....32
seat belts warning lamp....76
seat massage....253
sitting correctly....32
Securing luggage....106, 109
Security
alarm....325
tilt sensor....27
automatic perimeter alarm....27
automatic relocking and arming....26
battery back-up sounder....27
closing mislock....25
deactivating the alarm....27
lock confirmation....25
locking with the emergency key....28
single locking....23
Security sensors
fault....29
Sensors
blockage....195
Sequential shift....137
Service
arduous operating conditions....401
arranging a service....399
end of life vehicle (elv)....403
fluid replacement....401
online service history (OSH)....399
replacement service record....401
service content....400
service interval plan....402
service record....401

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

service requirements.....400
Service interval indicator.....71
Service position
wipers service position.....328
Servicing
airbags.....64
data recording.....385
Settings
general.....211
guidance
navigation system.....289
system.....211
web browser.....310
Settings menu.....68
display units.....70
Setting the heating and ventilation.....248
Side airbags.....62
Side lamps warning lamp.....80
Side steps.....20
Sign recognition.....198
Silencing the alarm.....27
Sim card
connecting.....311
Sitting correctly.....32
Smart key
approach lights.....85
battery changing.....22
care.....22
single locking.....23
transmitters.....395
Smartphone
InControl app.....307
Smart phone video
QR codes.....3
Snow chains.....364
Solar attenuating glass.....102
Sound settings.....217
Spare wheel.....375
using wheel chocks.....376
Specifications
capacities.....390
dimensions.....393
engine.....389
ethanol.....314
fluids.....389
fuel tank capacity.....321
label locations.....387
lubricants.....389
methanol.....314
MTBE.....314
weight.....391
Speed-dependent wipers.....93
Speed limiter
adaptive speed limiter.....163
automatic speed limiter.....161
intelligent speed limiter.....161
overview.....161
Speedometer.....66
Split screen map.....288
SRS.....59
airbag warning lamp.....76
Stability control
4wd.....156
active differential.....156
DSC.....155
configurable.....183
switching on.....156
four wheel drive (4WD).....156
switching off.....155
Starting after a collision.....385
Starting the engine.....131, 135
engine pre-heater.....133
failure to start.....133
push button start backup.....132
Status icons
touch screen.....206
Stealth mode.....90
Steering column
lock.....15
vehicle recovery.....15
Steering correction.....197
Steering wheel
adjusting.....42
AUTO position.....43
heated.....43

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Index

Steering wheel buttons
adaptive cruise control.....168
Stolen vehicle
InControl secure.....308
Stop/start
activating.....135
deactivating.....136
Stopping the engine.....135
Storage compartments.....103
cup holders.....103
front cubby box.....103
rear armrest.....103
Storage compartments areas
glove box.....103
Sun blind.....100
Sunroof
anti-trap protection.....102
reset.....328
Sunroof blind
anti-trap mechanism.....102
Sunroof blind reset.....328
Supplementary restraint system (SRS)
airbag deployment.....62
airbag locations.....59
airbags maintenance.....325
airbag warning lamp.....62, 76
curtain airbags.....62
disabling passenger airbag.....63
front airbags.....62
side airbags.....62
Surround camera.....115–116
Surround cameras.....199
forward vehicle guidance.....201
touch screen menu.....199
Suspension.....141
access height.....143
adaptive dynamics.....147
electronic air suspension.....141
extended mode.....143
height adjustment.....141
locked access height.....145
off-road height.....142
rear height adjust.....146
safety override lowering height.....148
Switch cleaning.....332
Switching adaptive cruise control on and off.....169
Switching off the engine.....131
Switching on the ignition.....131

T

Tachometer.....66
Tailgate
gesture.....19
opening and closing.....15, 17
powered opening height.....19
resetting the powered tailgate memory.....19
Tailgate hands free opening.....19
Technical specifications
brake fluid.....389
capacities.....390
DEF consumption rate.....389
diesel exhaust fluid (DEF) consumption rate.....389
dimensions.....393
engine.....389
engine coolant.....389
engine oil.....389
engine performance.....389
radio frequency regulations.....396
washer fluid.....389
weights.....391
Telephone
Bluetooth compatibility.....276
Bluetooth wireless technology.....281
call volume.....279
contacts.....279
icons.....278
managing two calls.....277
merge calls.....278
overview.....273
pairing
via the phone.....276
steering wheel controls.....278
Telephone safety.....275

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Television
controls....238
Terrain response....180
Terrain response information
4x4i....187
Tilt sensor....27
Timed climate....255
additional remote controls....258
remote control batteries....258
touch screen controls....255
using the remote control....257
Timed climate control....254
Tinted front screen....102
Toll road payment....102
Touch screen....334
changing portable media device....233
connecting multiple portable media devices....232
DAB radio controls....224
display settings....211
eco-data....181
editing screens....207
editing shortcuts....207
editing widgets....207
extra features....209
forward vehicle guidance....201
fuel burning heater....254
fuel economy facts....181
general settings....211
heated seats....253
home menu....202
inhibited display....237
lower home menu....204
massage seats....253
my home screen....206
operating....207
portable media controls....230
portable media connections....227
portable media pairing....233
portable media playing....232
seat settings....254
side panel....203
status icons....206
surround cameras....199
system settings....211
timed climate controls....255
touch screen care....208
TV controls....238
valet mode....209
deselecting....210
video player controls....235
Tow ball
detachable....118–119
options....113
powered tow ball....120
Tow ball accessories....126
Tow bar
mounting points....126
Towing
a trailer....125
calculating weight....124
checks
breakaway cable....124
lights....124
nose weight limit....124
tow ball....124
detachable tow ball....118–119
essential checks....124
hitch assist....114
powered tow ball....120
stability assist....114
tow assist....115–116
tow ball accessories....126
tow ball options....113
tow bar dimensions....126
tow bar mounting points....126
trailer electrical connections....122
trailer hitch....119
trailer sway....114
weights....113
Towing eyes
front....382
rear....383
Tracking your vehicle
InControl secure....308

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Index

Traction control
switching off....155
switching on....156
Traffic sign recognition....198
Trailer
electrical connections....122
sway....114
towing weights....113
Trailer bulb check....120
Trailer direction indicators warning lamp....80
Trailer rear view....115–116
Trailer reverse....116
Transmission
automatic....137
emergency park release....383
gear shift warning lamp....79
limp home mode....139
Transmission park release....383
Transmitters
smart key....395
Transporting the vehicle....382
Trip computer....69
average speed....69
fuel consumption....69
fuel range....70
reset....69
trip distance....70
Turning adaptive cruise control follow mode off....81
TV
controls....238
Tyre pressure checking after a repair....373
Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)....366
full size replacements....368
tyre care....359
valves....361
warning lamp....78
Tyre pressures....367
Tyre repair system
checking pressures....373
repair procedure....370
safety information....369
using....370
Tyres
age degradation....363
changing....368
flat spots....362
full size replacements....368
important information....376
Indian regulations....365
pressure check....367
pressures....360
recommended tyre pressure look-up....367
repair procedure....370
repair system....369
repair system use....370
replacements....362
snow chains....364
speed ratings....359
temporary use spare....368
TPMS....366
warning lamp....78
TPMS pressure compensation....362
tyre care....359
tyre repair safety....369
tyre wall markings....358
use of spare tyre....376
valves....361
vehicle loading....367
wall markings....358
winter....363

U

Under bonnet covers....327
Understeer....155
Unlocking....26
activity key....13
all doors....9
driver's door....9
entry and exit mode....43
global opening....9, 14
keyless entry....12
mode....9

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

multi point entry.....9, 12
opening the tailgate.....15, 17
passive entry.....12
single point entry.....9, 12
transmitter effects on medical devices.....15
USB devices
connecting multiple devices.....232
Used engine oil.....326
Using cruise control.....166
Using the spare tyre
important information.....376
Using wheel chocks.....376

V

Valet mode.....209
deselecting.....210
Vehicle alarm.....325
Vehicle battery
battery monitoring system.....349
connecting jump leads.....346
effects of disconnection.....349
removing.....348
replacing.....348
warning symbols.....345
Vehicle battery care.....345
Vehicle cleaning
after driving off-road.....331
airbag covers.....334
alloy wheels.....331
automatic car wash.....331
carpets and mats.....334
engine compartment.....331
interior.....332
rear screen.....332
sunroof.....332
washer jets.....335
Vehicle data recording.....385
Vehicle dimensions.....188
Vehicle loading tyre pressures.....367
Vehicle location
InControl secure.....308
Vehicle recovery
front towing eye.....382
off-road.....383
rear towing eye.....383
steering column lock.....15
transmission park release.....383
transporting the vehicle.....382
Vehicle testing on rolling roads.....326
Video media player
controls.....235
full screen view.....237
inhibited display.....237
rear media touch screen control.....215
VIN number.....387
Voice control.....296
settings
command list.....297
operating guide.....297
preferences.....297
voicetags.....297
voice training.....297
tutorial.....296
voicetags.....297

W

Wade sensing
4x4i 4 wheel drive information.....189
Warning lamp
AdBlue.....75, 77
Warning lamps.....73–74, 78–79
ABS.....77
adaptive cruise control follow mode.....78, 81
adaptive speed limiter.....76, 80
airbags.....62, 76
automatic speed limiter.....78, 80
battery charge.....75
brake.....75, 77
check engine.....77
critical warning message.....75
cruise control.....79
diesel glow plugs.....78
dipped beam.....79
DSC active.....77
engine temperature.....76
external temperature.....78

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

Index

forward alert.....79
gear shift warning lamp.....79
HDC.....79
headlamp high beam.....80
high beam assist.....79
indicators.....79
intelligent stop/start (green).....79
intelligent stop/start (white).....80
lamp test.....74
lane departure (green).....80
lane departure (red).....76
lane departure warning.....80
low fuel.....78
low oil pressure.....76
parking brake.....75
progress control system.....76
rear fog lamps.....78
seat belt.....76
side lights.....80
trailer direction indicators.....80
tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....78
Warning messages.....69
Warnings
head restraints.....38
Warranty
accessories fitted to a new vehicle.....408
accident damage repair.....408
aluminium body repairs.....408
corrosion protection warranty.....407
data protection statement.....405
emission control system warranty.....408
manufacturer's warranty.....406
manufacturer's warranty terms.....406
other exclusions.....411
owner's responsibilities.....405
paint surface warranty.....406
parts and accessories warranty.....407
quality checks.....405
safety-related defects (australia only).....399
warranty and consumer law.....406
warranty cover when touring.....406
what is not covered by scheduled maintenance items?.....410
what is not covered by the manufacturer's warranty?.....408
what is not covered by the paint surface warranty and corrosion protection warranty?.....410
Warranty exclusions
other exclusions.....411
what is not covered by scheduled maintenance items?.....410
what is not covered by the manufacturer's warranty?.....408
what is not covered by the paint surface warranty and corrosion protection warranty?.....410
Warranty information
owner's responsibilities.....405
warranty and consumer law.....406
warranty cover when touring.....406
Warranty terms
accessories fitted to a new vehicle.....408
accident damage repair.....408
aluminium body repairs.....408
corrosion protection warranty.....407
emission control system warranty.....408
manufacturer's warranty.....406
manufacturer's warranty terms.....406
paint surface warranty.....406
parts and accessories warranty.....407
Washer jets.....335
Washer reservoir
capacity.....390
Washers.....91
fluid specification.....344
fluid top up.....344
headlamps.....93
headlight.....93
Washing
automatic car wash.....331
removing grease.....332

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017

removing stains.....333
removing tar.....332
soft top.....332
Water in fuel.....318
Weather
side panel.....203
Web browser
homepage.....309
settings.....310
Web browsing
InControl hotspot.....306
Weights
gross vehicle weights.....391
roof load.....391
roof rack weight.....391
tow ball/hitch.....113
towing.....113
vehicle weights.....391
Wheel changing
important information.....376
locking wheel nuts.....377
recommended process.....378
safety warnings.....374
spare wheel.....375
temporary spare wheel.....376
tilt sensor.....378
use of spare tyre.....376
Wheel chocks use.....376
Wheels and tyres
age degradation.....363
changing a tyre.....368
checking the pressures after a repair.....373
flat spots.....362
full size replacements.....368
Indian regulations.....365
pressures.....360
puncture repair.....369
puncture repair safety.....369
repair procedure.....370
repair system.....369
repair system use.....370
replacements.....362
snow chains.....364
temporary use spare.....368
TPMS.....366
TPMS pressure compensation.....362
TPMS warning lamp.....78
tyre care.....359
tyre speed ratings.....359
tyre wall markings.....358
valves.....361
winter tyres.....363
Wheel spin.....155
White auto stop/start lamp.....80
Wi-Fi
InControl hotspot.....306
Wi-Fi connection icons.....312
Windows
anti-trap protection.....101
operation.....100
reset.....329
solar attenuating.....102
sunroof blind reset.....328
sunroof reset.....328
Winter tyres.....363
Wipers.....91
service position.....328
Wipers and washers.....91
drip wipe.....93
fluid level.....343
rain sensor.....92
speed-dependent mode.....93
Wireless technology
Bluetooth.....281

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2017